

CWS-AR  
Library Copy

2011256  
Lane  
1977

**DRAFT**

# **CAPTIVE WILDLIFE;**

**Proceedings of a Seminar  
Held at  
Aleksan National Wildlife Area,  
Delta, B.C., Jan. 18-19, 1977.**

Dartmouth Env. Can. Lib./Bib.  
  
39 077 512

**REPORT**

201.256  
CWS-AR  
Lane  
1977

**Compiled by E.D. Lane  
Canadian Wildlife Service  
Edmonton**

**CAPTIVE WILDLIFE;**

Proceedings of a Seminar held at  
Aleksan National Wildlife Area,  
Delta, B.C. January 18 - 19, 1977

**DRAFT**

Compiled by

E.D. Lane

Canadian Wildlife Service

Edmonton



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
1. INTRODUCTION	1
2. MINUTES	3
<u>January 18</u>	3
<u>January 19</u>	7
3. POLICY STATEMENT OF PHILOSOPHY	10
<u>Introduction</u>	10
<u>Statement</u>	10
 APPENDICES	
1. Memorandum Discussing the Proposed Program For the Captive Wildlife Seminar	15
2. Paper Concerning Federal Mandates as Related to Captive Wildlife Presented by R.W. Prach, Canadian Wildlife Service	19
3. Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora - Canada, July 4 - Dec. 31, 1975	29
4. Documents From the Swiss Veterinary Service Concerning Criteria For Housing Animals in Captivity	57
5. Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora - Washington, D.C. - March 3, 1973	67
6. Paper Concerning Captive Wildlife in British Columbia, Presented by Wallace Macgregor, B.C. Fish & Wildlife Branch	89
7. British Columbia Wildlife Act Regulations Cumulated to October 15, 1975	97
8. Regulations For Raptorial Birds in British Columbia - July 1974, by D.R. Halladay & I.J.M. Robertson, B.C. Fish & Wildlife Branch	103



9.	Interim Guidelines For Use by Wardens When Inspecting Facilities Used to House Animals, Department of Fish & Game, California	111
10.	California Regulations on Importation, Transportation and Possession of Restricted Live Wild Animals and Other Live Birds, Mammals, Fish and Reptiles	151
11.	Paper Presented on Alberta's Approach in Philosophy and Regulation Form Related to Possession of Wildlife	173
12.	Paper on Captive Wildlife in Saskatchewan, Presented by P.C. Naftel	193
13.	Paper on Captive Wildlife in Manitoba, by R.C. Goulden and N.W. Squires	211
14.	Paper on Captive Wildlife in the Yukon Territory	233
15.	Parks Canada Regulations and Policies Concerning Captive Wildlife	243

## 1. INTRODUCTION

During the 13th meeting of the Western Wildlife Directors' Committee it was recommended that a seminar be held to address several administrative and technical questions regarding captive wildlife. Accordingly, this seminar was held at the Aleksan National Wildlife Area, Delta B.C. on January 18 and 19. These questions, as suggested by the Directors' Committee, were discussed:

1. What reasons for holding wildlife in captivity does the committee wish to endorse?
2. Do we discourage wildlife in captivity or devise rigid purposes for captive wildlife?
3. Should captive wildlife remain crown property?
4. Who is eligible to capture and retain wildlife? What differences are there regarding public non-profit holders and private profit motivated holders?
5. What about endangered species? Do we want some in captivity for experimental breeding and propagation?
6. What standards do we want for captive wildlife facilities?
  - Do we need a set of standards agreed upon in Western Canada?
  - What about developing a schedule of cage enclosure sizes for specific types of wildlife - do we have the expertise?
7. What principle features of captive wildlife legislation are common to Western Canada agencies? What differences in philosophy exist? Can these be resolved?
8. Do we wish to regulate zoos, monkeys and exotic wildlife?

9. What do we do about developing demands for trade in wildlife?
10. What diseases should we be worried about?
11. Should movements of wildlife beyond provincial borders be regulated between participating states?
12. Where does Health of Animals fit?
13. When will the Game Export Act be amended to include live animals? What effect will such amendment have on the movement of captive wildlife within Canada?
14. What records are required?
15. What: (a) Management requirements exist in the captive wildlife field?  
(b) Research
16. What to do with problem wildlife? (e.g. bear, coyotes, wolves, bison, deer).

Those invited to attend included representatives from the four western provinces, the Yukon and Northwest Territories, Parks Canada and the Canadian Wildlife Service.

The two main objectives of this workshop were to exchange information on the specific questions listed above and to gain some insight into possible methods of making the administration of regulations and legislation consistent among the various jurisdictions.

## 2. MINUTES (Agenda - App. 1)

Attendees: British Columbia Fish & Wildlife - W. Hazledine  
 V. Gibault  
 R. Halladay  
 W. Macgregor

Alberta Fish & Wildlife - D. Neave  
 R. Adams

Saskatchewan Fish & Wildlife - P. Naftel

Parks Canada - K. Baker

Canadian Wildlife Service  
 - Pacific Region - G. Staines  
 N. Perrot  
 G. Dick

- Western & Northern Region - D. Lane  
 R. Prach

- Headquarters, Ottawa - E. Broughton

Chairman: G. Staines

Secretary: D. Lane

January 18

Mr. G. Staines opened the workshop, welcoming the participants to the first multijurisdictional meeting to be held in the Canadian Wildlife Service, Pacific Region headquarters.

Mr. R.W. Prach presented the first paper "Captive Wildlife and the Canadian Wildlife Service" (App. 2) which discussed aspects of federal mandates (i.e., migratory birds and endangered species) relevant to the seminar. In the ensuing discussion, it was decided to postpone, until the second day, those topics requiring more time such as transport, especially of exotics and their progeny, and endangered species considerations. Information regarding international aspects of captive,

endangered species is appended (App. 3, 4, and 5).

The second paper was presented by W.G. Macgregor of British Columbia (App. 6). The reasons for holding wildlife captive were brought forward along with the problem of ownership (see Policy Statement of Philosophy - Section 3). Mr. Macgregor discussed the British Columbia Permit Regulations (App. 7) and, because British Columbia pays particular attention to raptors (Falconry), separate regulations pertaining to these birds have been developed (App. 8). Due to California's more extensive experience with captured wildlife, problems related to those in Canadian jurisdictions were outlined by Mr. Macgregor. Appendix 9 and 10 list the California Regulations.

According to the paper presented, Alberta is currently drafting legislation on captive wildlife and is ahead of other western Canadian jurisdictions in the development of this legislation (App. 11). A discussion followed concerning control of exotics, control necessary for exportation (and importation) and control of pets (other than dogs and cats, etc.). Alberta indicated that they have developed a gentleman's agreement with veterinarians and zoos in the province to help enforce regulations. This appeared to be a successful strategy.

In general, it was concluded that captive wildlife regulations are a policy matter rather than a legislative one (some exceptions) and the need to legislate basic regulations is being attempted, especially in Alberta.

The possibility of Federal-Provincial conflict exists and should be examined in future regulations (i.e. Alberta's proposed regulation #9 - App. 11). It was felt that such conflicts would not prevent good management of captive wildlife, but may require some negotiation and

informational exchanges between various jurisdictions.

The amount of public liability insurance required by holders of captive wildlife was discussed and it was agreed that this decision should be left to the operators of zoos, zoological gardens, etc.

Mr. P.C. Naftel presented a paper entitled, "Captive Wildlife in Saskatchewan" (App. 12). When discussing research it was felt that rather than a precise definition, each jurisdiction would apply its own definition dependent upon the existing informational needs and the probable motivation of the "researcher(s)". If related concern is the need for public information programs.

Mr. Naftel's paper raised the problem of disease control in captive wildlife. Dr. Broughton stated that some work in this field is being done and the Canadian Wildlife Service will provide general guidelines.

Mr. T. Traeger, a guest from England, discussed the English Protection of Birds Act. He cited problems faced in England which may well occur in Canadian regulations unless care is taken. These include:

- problems of precise identification of a species (loose definition and incorrect identification can lead to loop holes in regulations)
- minor drafting errors in wording of an act has caused difficulty
- inspectors are usually customs agents rather than biologists, therefore lack experience (in the United States biologists are often hired to prevent this from occurring).

- he urged the development of stringent guidelines for import, export and holding of captive wildlife
- jurisdictional problems in the United Kingdom related to the issuance of permits
- legislation stating that endangered and decreasing species or parts thereof (including plants in some cases) cannot be legally possessed does not include a "grandfather clause", sometimes making it illegal to hold specimens collected hundreds of years ago.

Mr. Traeger was thanked for his input on English problems as no doubt they will occur in Canada.

Manitoba, the Yukon and Northwest Territories were unable to attend; however, Manitoba and the Yukon sent papers pertaining to the position of their jurisdictions. Gordon Staines read the Manitoba paper, "Captive Wildlife in Manitoba" by R.C. Goulden and W.W. Squires (App. 13). Their suggestion for a common statement of philosophy was adopted and Dr. D. Lane was directed to prepare this statement. Discussion on the disposal of surplus animals followed this paper and is included in the Policy Statement of Philosophy - Section 3.

D. Lane read the Yukon statement, "Captive Wildlife in the Yukon Territory" (App. 14). During the discussion on ownership which followed, those at the meeting agreed that ultimate ownership should remain with the Crown; however, by permit, the holder may be given the essentials of ownership.

Mr. K. Baker, representing Parks Canada, attended the seminar as an observer and, therefore, was not asked in advance, to present a paper.

During the discussions at the meeting, it became apparent that Parks Canada has an interest in captive animals (i.e. Elk Island Park) and, therefore, were asked to prepare a submission (App. 15). Drugs, salt licks, dangerous animals, pests, surplus animals, collection permits and reintroductions of native species are areas covered in the Parks Canada regulations and policies.

January 19

Topics suggested for further discussion:

1. Transport
2. Ownership
3. Falconry
4. Control of Pets (and petshops)
5. Disease Control
6. Surplus and Nuisance Animals
7. Holding Standards
8. Information Program

Most of these topics are covered in the Policy Statement of Philosophy; however, the discussions were more detailed and warrant additional notes in these minutes.

Transport between provinces (territories) - The notification to all provinces (territories) where transport was from, to or through was suggested by British Columbia. In further discussion it was agreed that:

1. An export permit with a health certificate should be required.



2. An import permit be required.
3. There should be notification of any jurisdictions through which the animal will pass on route.

In correspondence Saskatchewan suggested that this notification be the responsibility of the permittee. The order in which permits should be issued: import permit first, export permit and health certificate (by licensed veterinarian) secondly and finally travel notice by permittee if applicable.

The Northwest Territories were not at this meeting; however, through subsequent correspondence, they expressed the opinion that this process was too long and that an import permit should not be required.

Disease control was discussed as a part of the transport problem. Alberta is attempting to develop a list of diseases including the tests for them. The Canadian Wildlife Service will propose general guidelines.

Pet shops - Is the keeping of wildlife, both native and exotic, is discouraged (see Policy Statement of Philosophy - Section 3) limitations on what can be sold in pet shops should be introduced. In Alberta, at present, the sale of only certain animals is allowed and further constraints may well be necessary. Permits to sell wildlife as pets should be discouraged even if permits to keep them are allowed. The meeting endorsed an amendment to the Game Export Act to include live animals.

Information programs - It was suggested that a program of information on captive wildlife policy be prepared to inform the public about the programs of the various jurisdictions. It was further suggested that it was an appropriate program for the Western Wildlife Directors' Committee to

coordinate.

The timing of such a public release could coincide with "Wildlife in Canada" week.

Falconry - As is usually the case, this topic arouses considerable controversy and a wide range of opinion on philosophy both within and between jurisdictions. The practical question involved here appears to be the cost and difficulty of maintaining holding standards. "The cost of administration is higher than the value of the sport".

### 3. POLICY STATEMENT OF PHILOSOPHY

#### Introduction

At the suggestion of Manitoba, a policy statement is hereby given which, it is hoped, will be a step toward some uniformity in the regulation of captive wildlife between the various jurisdictions.

Understandably, the various jurisdictions have different approaches to the problem of administering captive wildlife; however, if a common policy based on a common philosophy can be agreed to by all, future regulation and legislation in these jurisdictions will be similar in intent.

Disease control is not specifically mentioned in the seven point policy statement as it is more a matter of technology than philosophy; however, it was agreed at the seminar that some uniformity in diagnosis and treatment is required, consequently the Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa, will prepare the background material.

In correspondence subsequent to the seminar, the Yukon has delineated the problem of properly marking captive animals. This facet of captive animal administration was not adequately addressed in the January meeting and it is suggested that discussion be held and some consensus decided in the future. Perhaps the Yukon would prepare a short paper on the topic for circulation and comment.

#### Statement

The following is a policy statement on the philosophy concerning captive wildlife that will provide the foundation for the regulations and legislation set by each individual jurisdiction in Western Canada. No

attempt is made in this statement to present legislation to any jurisdiction but rather so supply a unifying framework for individual regulations.

The prime underlying philosophy of any regulation will be a consideration of the health and well-being of humans, wildlife and the environment.

1. Wildlife is defined as any non-domesticated animal; as this applies to captive wildlife it usually is restricted to vertebrate animals.
2. The ultimate ownership of such wildlife, including exotics, in any jurisdiction remains with the crown in the residing jurisdiction.

This does not preclude the jurisdictions from giving permit to capture, hold, sell, butcher for meat (as in wildlife ranching) or transport.

It does, however, give the crown the right to withhold permits, and where permits are granted, to regulate, inspect, and where jurisdictional regulations are violated, to confiscate animals and permits. In short, the crown holds the ultimate legislative and ownership responsibility for its wildlife, including those in captivity.

3. Animals will be captured and held by the most humane methods possible. Minimum standards for humane treatment will be developed and animals will be maintained in accordance with such standards. Responsible jurisdictions may apply more strict requirements as they deem necessary and at their discretion.
4. The disposal, by the crown or a crown permittee of surplus animals shall be carried out in a humane manner. Wherever possible surplus animals should be returned to the wild. Where this is not advisable, or feasible such as in cases of surplus exotics or animals too tame

to fend for themselves, they will be donated to public non-profit organizations first, universities or other educational programs second, or finally to profit making, but fully licenced operations. Where destruction of the animal becomes necessary, humane methods will be employed.

5. Transport of animals between jurisdictions shall involve an export permit granted by the exporting jurisdiction only after evidence of permission to import is given by the importing jurisdiction. If travel is from one area to another and through a third jurisdiction the latter will be notified by the permittee of the transport. Specific regulations regarding health of the transported animals and routes to be taken in transport will be developed by individual jurisdictions as they see fit. Transport shall be in a manner that is most humane to the animals involved, specific regulations will be the responsibility of the various jurisdictions.
6. Exotic animals entering a jurisdiction should come under especially stringent regulations as they may harm humans due to their natural behaviour patterns (i.e. biting, clawing, poison) or harm native ecosystems upon escape or release. Regulations developed by the various jurisdictions should be designed to prevent such potential damage.
7. Wild animals, as a rule, do not make good pets. Therefore, it is the policy of all jurisdictions to discourage the keeping of wildlife as pets, including exotic wildlife, except as specifically prescribed under regulations. Permits to sell wildlife as pets either through pet shops or individuals, should be discouraged, even if permits to

keep them are allowed. Specific regulations on this topic should be developed by individual jurisdictions.



APPENDIX 1

Memorandum Discussing the Proposed  
Program For the  
Captive Wildlife Seminar





Environment Canada Environnement Canada

MEMORANDUM NOTE DE SERVICE

DATE December 2, 1976

FROM: Head, Co-operative Studies  
 Canadian Wildlife Service  
 Western & Northern Region  
 Edmonton

Our file Notre référence

WWDC

G. Couldwell J.B. Fitzgerald  
 R. Goulden G.H. Staines  
 G. Kerr D.C. Surrendi  
 D. Robinson D. Hocking  
 N. Simmons R. Prach

Your file Votre référence

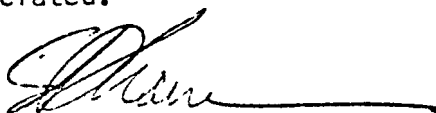
SUBJECT: CAPTIVE WILDLIFE SEMINAR  
 SUJET:

Referring to Dr. Stephen's memo of October 27, I would like to solicit your comments on the following proposed program for the Captive Wildlife Seminar.

January 18 (Tuesday) 9:00 AM	- Welcome - G. Staines
9:15	- C.W.S. Involvement - R. Prach
9:45	- B.C.
10:15	- <u>Coffee</u>
10:30	- Alberta
11:00	- Saskatchewan
11:30 - 1:00 PM	<u>Lunch</u>
1:00 PM	- Manitoba
1:30	- Yukon Territory
2:00	- N.W.T.
2:30	- <u>Coffee</u>
3:00 - 4:00	- Definition of details of topic's for further discussion (on 19th)
January 19 (Wednesday)	Discussion on topics of mutual concern.
	(All day) with final wrap-up and conclusions.

In order to expedite the production of proceedings and to ease my task as secretary, I am requesting that each Province and Territory send me a copy of their formal paper in advance of the meetings, preferably by January 7.

... u y h a e w i l l b e a . r e c i a t e d .



E.D. Lane

CC: W.C. Turnbull, Parks Calgary  
 R.P. Malis, Parks Winnipeg



APPENDIX 2

Paper Concerning Federal Mandates  
as Related to Captive Wildlife

Presented by

R.W. Prach, Canadian Wildlife Service



CAPTIVE WILDLIFE AND THE  
CANADIAN WILDLIFE SERVICE

by

R.W. Prach

A report prepared for the  
CAPTIVE WILDLIFE SEMINAR

Delta, B.C.

Jan. 18-19, 1977

Sponsored by  
The Western Wildlife Directors' Committee

CAPTIVE WILDLIFE AND THE  
CANADIAN WILDLIFE SERVICE

by

R.W. Prach

I would like to preface my discussion on the subject of this seminar - Captive Wildlife - with a brief overview of current federal mandates relative to the topic.

- 1) Migratory Birds Convention Act and Regulations: Based upon the Migratory Birds Convention of 1916 between Canada and the U.S. and signed onto law in 1917, this act places the responsibility for protection and conservation of certain specified migratory birds with the federal government. The Department of Fisheries and the Environment administers the act through the offices of the Canadian Wildlife Service. The Service controls the killing, capture, possession, transport and release of the scheduled native species through a system of permits. The individual permits issued are:
  - a) the Migratory Hunting Permit which, I am sure, you are all familiar.
  - b) scientific permits which set out the conditions under which an individual may kill, capture, release or retain migratory birds, their eggs or their nests for scientific or educational purposes.
  - c) avicultural permits which allow individuals to possess migratory birds for a variety of specific reasons.
  - d) damage permits which allow the scaring or killing of specified migratory birds that are causing damage to crops or other property.

- e) airport permits which give airport managers the authority to kill birds on airports that are considered a danger to airport operations.
  - f) taxidermist permits that allow taxidermists to work on and possess legally taken migratory birds and, finally,
  - g) an eiderdown permit which permits collection, possession, transportation and selling of eiderdown.
- 2) Export and Import Permits Act: Administered by the Department of Industry, Trade and Commerce this act places restrictions on domestic stock only. However, this act was used as enabling legislation for the following convention.
- 3) Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora signed by Canada in July 1974. The convention is a mechanism for regulating the international trade of rare or endangered plants and animals. The restrictions imposed by the convention affect zoological gardens, pet dealers, private collectors, the fashion industry as well as tourists and other persons who purchase curios and artifacts made from the by-products of these species.

A species may be listed in one of three Convention appendices, depending on the degree to which it is considered endangered. Appendix I includes species near the brink of extinction. Trade in these will be permitted only under exceptional circumstances and will require both an export permit from the originating country and an import permit from the receiving country. Thus, for example,



it will become very difficult for someone to trade in illegally obtained peregrine falcons. (These endangered birds command high prices on the black market because of the demand from some wealthy falconers.)

Appendix II animals and plants are considered as threatened and, unless special care is exercised, could become endangered. Appendix II species may only be imported if they are covered by export permits from the originating state.

Appendix III species may not be endangered on a world-wide scale, but are considered rare or subject to control within a participating jurisdiction. Each jurisdiction must develop its own Appendix III. Permit requirements for Appendix III species are the same as for Appendix II.

- 4) International Agreement on Polar Bears: This agreement administered by CWS calls for cooperation among arctic nations in the research and management of polar bears which, in their movement, cross international boundaries. It prohibits hunting of bears in international waters and the use of aircraft and other motorized vehicles in the capture or killing of polar bears.
- 5) Schedule C of the Customs Tariff administered by the Department of National Revenue is a list of prohibited goods which prohibits the importations of the following animals into Canada:
  - a) any mongoose including the common mongoose (Herpestes griseus).
  - b) any bird of the starling family (Sturnidae) except the European starling (Sturnus vulgaris).

c) any non-game bird except for:

- domestic birds kept for food purposes.
- a kind intended solely for exhibitions in a public zoological park.
- a kind intended solely to be kept in confinement in a cage or to be used for purposes of public entertainment.

6) Animal Contagious Diseases Act: This act administered by the Canada Department of Agriculture controls the importation of animals capable of transmitting certain specified diseases to man or animals of interest to man. Every animal imported into Canada must have an import permit issued by the Department of Agriculture and must have a Certificate of Health issued in the country of origin certifying that the animal is free of infectious or contagious diseases. Animals destined for importation into Canada can be quarantined both in the country of origin prior to export and in Canada after being imported.

The Canadian Wildlife Service's policy on captive migratory birds is currently undergoing review. We recognize that there are legitimate reasons for capturing and keeping migratory birds in captivity - reasons not by coincidence directly related to our mandate respecting migratory birds. The mandate imposes certain responsibilities in CWS. The primary responsibility is to ensure that no species of migratory birds becomes endangered or extinct. A second major responsibility is to provide Canadians with access to the migratory bird resource and valuable outdoor recreational experiences related to migratory birds to the extent that these activities do not interfere with

---

Note: The Game Export Act: Administered by the Canadian Wildlife Service and implemented by the provinces defines game as "carcass" or any part thereof is currently under review.

the primary responsibility. The final responsibility resulting from this stewardship is to foster basic and applied research in wildlife management so that the above responsibilities can be fulfilled.

We believe that certain species of migratory birds could be kept in captivity as part of determined effort to prevent the extinction of a rare species and to re-establish viable wild populations of such species.

Public education through zoos, animal parks and the like constitutes another legitimate reason for retaining captive migratory birds. Of course these facilities must conform to set standards - standards based upon physical, environmental and psychological requirements of the various animals. We also recognize that effective management of migratory birds, particularly certain desirable hunted species, may require the propagation and release of these species. We would, however, be derelict in our duty if we did not thoroughly investigate the effect of such management efforts on the migratory bird resource in its entirety. And, last of all, we recognize the necessity of keeping various species of migratory birds in captivity as part of research efforts that will better enable us to fulfill our responsibilities under the Migratory Birds Convention Act or lead to a better understanding of ecological relationships.

Historically the Canadian Wildlife Service has permitted private individuals to keep native migratory birds in captivity. We recognize the beneficial aspects of this practise in the encouragement of interest in conservation; however, it can, and does, lead to a variety of problems. Such birds can and have been a source of diseases such as fowl cholera or duck virus enteritis to free flying birds. Some of these birds were held in unsuitable conditions in the past. Such problems can only be averted or

alleviated by stricter control of the type of facilities required and the manner in which the birds are maintained or dispersed. It is CWS policy to restrict the release to the wild of birds held under avicultural permit.

The question of control of exotic avifauna is an interesting one. Many exotic species have become so well established or re-established as required, that they are welcome and considered by many to be native. This is especially true of game birds such as the ring-necked pheasant and the various partridges. On the other hand other non-game introductions, more successful than the above, are still vilified almost universally. I refer, of course, to our beloved English sparrow (Passer domesticus), common starling and rock dove (Columba livia).

The English sparrow was introduced from England into North America in Brooklyn, New York, in 1850. Later releases took place in Quebec City, Quebec and Halifax, Nova Scotia. the species has extended its range across Canada reaching British Columbia by 1890 and is now widely established in Canada. The common starling was introduced in New York City in 1890 and 1891. The species spread across Canada reaching British Columbia in 1947. It is now firmly established in all provinces. The rock dove was introduced into Canada in 1906. It, too, is well established throughout Canada.

These three species exemplify our concerns over exotic species that compete with and replace more desirable native species. Although current legislation described above, particularly Schedule three of the Customs Tariff Act and Section 33 of the Migratory Birds Convention Act and Regulations, afford some measure of protection for migratory birds more comprehensive legislation is required. Parliament currently has two bills before it, Bill 231 - an act respecting trafficking in exotic pets and

Bill 234 - an act respecting importation of exotic pets - that would go a long way in guarding against the indiscriminate or accidental release of exotics. These bills, if passed, will severely restrict the importation and trafficking in all species of exotic wildlife.

I would like to direct my closing remarks to the topic of migratory birds as problem wildlife. In general, birds make a valuable contribution to society by providing subsistence and cultural benefits to natives and outdoor recreational opportunities to hunters and naturalists. However, a wide range of problems result from conflicts between the biological and ecological requirements of birds and many human activities. Of immediate concern are the problems of crop damage and bird hazards to aircraft. A few species can be controlled by forced dispersion from vulnerable areas; unfortunately, the majority of species are not amenable to these techniques. Most of the current problem management techniques (e.g. mass destruction) are inapplicable to economically desirable and esthetically pleasing avian species. We need to develop new management methods and techniques to control problems associated with migratory birds that are biologically and socially acceptable.

APPENDIX 3

Convention on  
International Trade in Endangered Species  
of Wild Fauna and Flora  
- Canada, July 4 - Dec. 31, 1975



CANADA

Annual Report for the Period July 4 - December 31, 1975.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species  
of Wild Fauna and Flora.

Canada, at over 3.85 million square miles, is the second largest country in the world today. It is governed by a central federal government, ten provincial governments and two territorial governments, all of which have managerial jurisdiction over specific natural resources that occur within their managerial boundaries. Sometimes these jurisdictions overlap making the issue debatable and often obscure. Our major cities are scattered over the length and breadth of Canada from St. John's Newfoundland in the east, to Victoria, British Columbia, over 4,000 miles to the west; and from Toronto, Ontario in the south, to Yellowknife, Northwest Territories, 1,500 miles to the north. All major cities are served by international air carriers and, where applicable, by marine transportation services. Because of the great distances between major population centres, it is not feasible or practicable to limit ports of entry/exit to a chosen few.

In accordance with the British North America Act, all wild natural resources, with the exception of migratory birds, fish, marine mammals and wildlife on national lands, are under the jurisdiction of the province in which they occur. The exceptions are federally managed. The management of wild natural resources occurring in the two territories has been delegated by the federal government to the appropriate jurisdictions. Thus the management



of Canadian natural resources falls under thirteen jurisdictions which must be, and is reflected in the organization to manage the Convention in Canada.

As the regulation of international trade is a federal responsibility, the administration of the Convention must be federal. However, as Canadian natural resources are included in the Appendices, all provinces and territories must be included in the managerial process. This is reflected in the Canadian Convention organization.

On May 16, 1974, the federal Cabinet agreed that Canada should become a signatory to the Convention and should proceed to ratification following the establishment of operating procedures for the implementation of control measures envisaged by the Convention. The Department of the Environment was designated as the Management Authority and Scientific Authority for Canada as specified under the terms of the Convention. The Department of Industry, Trade and Commerce was designated as the Competent Authority to perform those functions which involve the regulation of trade through export and import control measures - the Export and Import Permits Act. Subsequently, the Department of the Environment designated the Canadian Wildlife Service as the Management Authority and Scientific Authority for purposes of the Convention in Canada.

On April 10, 1975, the Canadian Ambassador in Berne, Switzerland, deposited Canadian Instruments of Ratification for the Convention with the Depository Government - Switzerland. Thus Canada was obliged to implement the Convention, in Canada, on or before July 10, 1975.

With the making of appropriate Orders-in-Council and the establishment of General Import Permits and General Export Permits, in accordance with the provisions of the Export and Import Permits Act, the Convention became applicable in Canada on July 3, 1975.

Order-in-Council PC 1975-1510 of July 3, 1975, amended the Import Control List to include all specimens of species designated by the Convention as subject to international trade regulation.

Order-in-Council PC 1975-1531 of July 3, 1975, amended the Export Control List to include all specimens of species designated by the Convention as subject to international trade regulation and also species that Canada has designated as subject to Convention controls.

General Export Permit No. Ex. 14 of July 4, 1975, authorized the export of Convention specimens listed in Appendices I, II and III of the Export Control List when an appropriate permit is issued by:

- a) a provincial or territorial government authority in respect of specimens under the jurisdiction of that province or territory; or
- b) the Canadian Wildlife Service of the Department of the Environment for specimens under federal jurisdiction.

General Export Permit No. Ex. 15 of July 4, 1975, authorized the Canadian Wildlife Service of the Department of the Environment to:

- a) issue certificates to scientists and scientific institutions for the non-commercial loan, donation or exchange between scientists or scientific institutions of herbarium specimens, other preserved, dried or embedded museum specimens and live plant material; and
- b) issue certificates for the export of specimens that form part of a travelling zoo, circus or other travelling exhibit;

of specimens listed in Appendices I, II and III of the Export Control List.

General Import Permit No. 17 of July 4, 1975, authorized the import into Canada of specimens listed in Appendix I of the Import Control List provided a permit issued by the Canadian Wildlife Service of the Department of the Environment was presented to the Collector of Customs at the Canadian port of entry. Specimens listed in Appendix II of the Import Control List are permitted entry to Canada upon presentation to the Collector of Customs at the Canadian port of entry of:

- a) an export permit, a re-export permit or certificate issued by the exporting State; and
- b) in case of a specimen introduced from the sea, a permit by the Canadian Wildlife Service in the form prescribed by the Convention.

General Import Permit No. 18 of July 4, 1975, authorized the import into Canada, without permit, of specimens listed in the Appendices of the Import Control List that are personal or household effects except:

- a) specimens included in Appendix I of the Import Control List that are acquired by the owner outside of Canada; and
- b) specimens included in Appendix II of the Import Control List acquired by the owner outside of Canada by removal from the wild in a State where export of such specimens requires the prior grant of an export permit from that State.

This General Import Permit also authorized the import into Canada by scientists and scientific institutions material for non-commercial purposes provided that such scientists and scientific institutions are registered with the Canadian Wildlife Service of the Department of the Environment and an appropriate certificate is presented to the Collector of Customs at the Canadian port of entry. Similarly, specimens that form part of a travelling zoo, circus or other travelling exhibit were permitted entry on presentation to the Collector of Customs at the port of entry of a Certificate issued by the Canadian Wildlife Service.

The Administrator, as Head of the Canadian Management Authority, is responsible for the application of the Convention in Canada through appropriate federal, provincial and territorial agencies. The federal Scientific Authority is chaired by a Canadian Wildlife Service scientist and is composed of scientists from various federal jurisdictions such as National Museums and the Fisheries and Marine Research organization plus representatives from all provinces and territories. This Scientific Authority, the Federal Scientific Authority, is responsible for advising the

Administrator on the status of Canadian, and foreign, endangered species, for developing criteria against which applications to import Appendix I species may be judged, for designating Canadian Appendix III species and for reviewing proposed changes to Appendices I and II. The federal organization is reflected in similar provincial and territorial Management and Scientific Authorities to handle species originating within their specific jurisdictions.

As is reflected in the legislation through which the Convention is applied, i.e., as authorized by General Export Permits Nos. Ex. 14 and Ex. 15 and General Import Permits Nos. 17 and 18 all import permits, export permits for species under federal jurisdiction, scientific certificates (Article VII, Section 6), and transit certificates (Article VII, Section 7) are issued by the Administrator. Export permits for species originating in, and under the jurisdiction of, a province or territory are issued by the Management Authority of the applicable jurisdiction in accordance with guidelines provided by the Administrator.

The knowledge of newly introduced legislation always takes time to reach those people concerned. To compensate for this, importers of species listed in the Appendices to the Import Control List were permitted to import specimens without the benefit of necessary permits for about the first three months of the application of the Convention, but such importers were informed, by Customs, of the new legislation.

As very few nations had ratified the Convention, considerable discretion had to be applied concerning the requirement of export permits or export certificates for specimens entering Canada

from nations that were not party to the Convention and subsequently not issuing appropriate permits or certificates. However, no specimens listed in Appendix I of the Convention were admitted for primarily commercial purposes. As more nations ratify the Convention this problem should resolve itself.

Because of the basic subject matter to be handled, namely over 800 different species of animals and plants as well as their respective derivatives, it was decided that some form of basic instruction should be given to Customs Officers at ports of entry. Obviously, as it would not be feasible to cover all 800 species in such instructions, it was decided that training seminars should reflect the major Convention specimens being imported for commercial purposes - spotted cat and otter skins. The decision to concentrate on skins was based on the fact that the recognition of a skin, or part of a skin, could lead to recognition of the species as a live animal. Another reason was that spotted cat and otter skins are often imitated by "look-alikes" in the fur trade. "Look-alikes" can be made from cloth or plastic-type material or by shearing, dying and stencilling inexpensive furs to make them look like more expensive specimens. Accordingly, a videotaped seminar dealing with fur recognition, to be used in conjunction with a handbook, was developed. The seminar was presented at all major Canadian ports of entry between May and December 1975. Also, to assist Customs to correctly identify specimens being imported into Canada, arrangements were made with a number of knowledgeable people, located in or near ports of entry, to provide an identification service on an if and when required basis.

Canadian legislation does not provide for a re-export, as a re-export is considered as an export. Thus figures are not available for the re-export category as requested by the International Secretariat. Whether or not legislation provides for a re-export category of export, it is debatable as to when an item is an export of a re-export. For instance, if a skin is imported as a whole skin, manufactured into purses and then exported within a reasonably short period of time, the transaction could be termed import/re-export. On the other hand, if non-indigenous live animals are imported for breeding purposes in a zoo, are the offspring forever after re-exports or exports? Both transactions could presumably be technically termed re-exports as the specimens did not initially originate within the exporting State. This matter must be discussed and a solution and definition agreed upon by all participating States.

There has been reaction by federal, provincial and territorial governments to the word "endangered" in the title of the Convention. Canada has suggested that "designated" would be more applicable as not all species included in the Appendices are endangered. In fact, until the 1973 Washington Conference, "endangered" had not been used in drafts of the Convention or in Recommendation 99(3) of the 1972 Stockholm Conference on the Human Environment, which led to the present Convention. It is appreciated that "endangered" has heart searing connotations but it does not reflect Appendices II or III which form the bulk of Convention regulated species. It is strongly recommended that this matter receive attention at the first Meeting of the Parties.

Canada does not recognize Article VII, Section 4 which refers to Appendix I species bred in captivity being considered as Appendix II species. An endangered species is an endangered species whether bred in captivity or not. It becomes illogical if a pregnant cheetah taken from the wild gives birth in captivity to have the mother considered as an Appendix I species and the cub as a II. If a species is easily bred in captivity there is no, or very little, justification for considering the species as endangered and a worthy candidate for Appendix I. In Canada, an Appendix I species remains an Appendix I species whether captive bred or not. However, permits for Appendix I species propagated in captivity are more readily considered, if there is documented evidence of captive breeding, than for species taken from the wild.

Canadian exports, including re-exports, are shown in Annexe I for living species and in Annexe III for dead species, parts and derivatives.

Due to certain internal problems, it is not possible to provide statistics of specimens entering Canada, apart from details of import permits issued for Convention Appendix I species. Details of import permits issued are shown in Annexe II for living species and Annexe IV for dead species, parts and derivatives

Details of Temporary Entry/Transit Certificates issued are included in Annexe V and for Scientific certificates in Annexe VI.

Furing the period under review, July 4 to December 31, 1975, no charges were laid for violations concerning the import or export of species listed in the Convention appendices.



Infractions that were identified were the result of a lack of understanding or knowledge of the Convention and the requirements of Canadian legislation. Warnings were given in all cases.

The most serious problem arising from the application of the Convention is lack of international identification material - photographs, literature, etc., - and the very serious difficulty of identifying subspecies such as Felis pardalis mearnsi from F.p. mitis and other subspecies of this cat included in Appendix II. The actual location of origination is seldom known by the importer and, if the specimen has been illegally obtained, most certainly no exact location or origination will be indicated.

Living SpeciesAnnexe I

Exporting State - Canada

Appendix	Species	Number	Destination State	Sex	Size	Remarks
I	<i>Pongo pygmaeus pygmaeus</i>	2	West Germany	2.0	Young	Captive bred
I	<i>Panthera onca</i>	1	Zaire	0.1	Sub-adult	Captive bred
II	<i>Panthera tigris altaica</i>	5	Japan	1.4	Adult	Captive bred
II	<i>Dendrolagus inustus</i>	2	U.S.A.	0.2	Young	Captive bred
III	<i>Ursus (Thalarctos) maritimus</i>	1	Japan	1.0	Young	Captive bred
III	<i>Ursus (Thalarctos) maritimus</i>	1	U.S.A.	1.0	Adult	
I	<i>Macaca silenus</i>	1	U.S.A.	1.0	Adult	Captive bred
II	<i>Tapirus terrestris</i>	3	U.S.A.	1.2	Adult	
I	<i>Lemur macaco macaco</i>	2	United Kingdom	2.0	Adult	Captive bred
I	<i>Gorilla gorilla gorilla</i>	1	U.S.A.	0.1	Adult	
II	<i>Gallicolumba luzonica</i>	4	U.S.A.	2.2	Adult	
I	<i>Elephas maximus</i>	1	U.S.A.	0.1	Adult	

Importing State - Canada

Appendix	Species	Number	State of origin	Sex	Size	Remarks
I	Tapirus indicus	3	Denmark	1.2	Young	Zoo use
I	Panthera pardus japonensis	3	West Germany	2.1	Young	Zoo use
I	Leucopsar rothschildi	3	U.S.A.	1.2		Zoo use

Exporting State - Canada

Appendix	Species	Type of Specimen	Number	Destination State	Remarks
II	<i>Felis pardalis</i>	Coats	7	Switzerland	Re-export
I	<i>Grus americana</i>	Addled eggs	5	U.S.A.	For research
III	<i>Balaenidae</i> spp.	Old whalebone carvings	7	West Germany	
III	<i>Balaenidae</i> spp.	Old whalebone carvings	25	Belgium	
III	<i>Odobenus rosmarus</i>	Tusk carvings	2	West Germany	
III	<i>Monodon monocerus</i>	Tusks	38	United Kingdom	
III	<i>Monodon monocerus</i>	Carved tusks	7	Belgium	
I	<i>Lutra longicaudis</i>	Coat	1	Switzerland	Re-export
---	<i>Felis geoffroyi</i>	Coats/jackets	31	Switzerland	Not on Convention Re-export

Importing State - Canada

Appendix	Species	Type of Specimen	Number	State of Origin	Remarks
I	<i>Grus americana</i>	Eggshells	5	U.S.A.	Re-import
I	<i>Grus americana</i>	Frozen specimen	1	U.S.A.	Re-import
I	<i>Panthera pardus</i>	Skin	1	West Germany	Pre-Convention
I	<i>Rupicapra rupicapra ornata</i>	Mounted head	1	New Zealand	Pre-Convention
I	<i>Panthera onca</i>	Skins	6	United Kingdom	Re-import
II	<i>Felis pardalis</i>	Skins	273	United Kingdom	Re-import
II	<i>Felis wiedii</i>	Skins	551	United Kingdom	Re-import
III	Balaenidae spp.	Old whalebone carvings	7	West Germany	Re-import
III	<i>Odobenus rosmarus</i>	Tusk carvings	2	West Germany	Re-import

State of Transit - Canada

Appendix	Species	State of Origin	Destination State	Remarks
	NIL			

State of Issue - Canada

Appendix	Species	Number	Remarks
I, II, III	All species	28	Museum scientists - for the non-commercial loan, donation or exchange between scientists or scientific institutions of herbarium specimens, other preserved, dried or embedded museum specimens and live plant material.

NATIONS SIGNATORY TO ENDANGERED SPECIES TRADE CONVENTION

<u>Country</u>	<u>Date Signed</u>	<u>Date Ratified</u>
Argentina	3 Mar. 73	
Australia	21 Sept. 73	29 Jul. 76
Bangladesh	7 Aug. 73	
Belgium	3 Mar. 73	
Bolivia	23 Dec. 74	
Brazil	3 Mar. 73	6 Aug. 75
Canada	2 Jul. 74	10 Apr. 75
Chile	16 Sept. 74	14 Feb. 75
Columbia	4 Jun. 73	
Costa Rica	3 Mar. 73	30 Jun. 75
Cyprus	3 Mar. 73	18 Oct. 74
Denmark	3 Mar. 73	
Ecuador	12 Dec. 74	11 Feb. 75
Egypt	7 Jun. 74	
Finland	10 May 76	10 May 76
France	3 Mar. 73	
Germany (D.R.) (East)	9 Oct. 75	9 Oct. 75
Germany (F.R.) (West)	3 Mar. 73	22 Mar. 76
Ghana	16 Dec. 74	14 Nov. 75
Guatemala	3 Mar. 73	



<u>Country</u>	<u>Date Signed</u>	<u>Date Ratified</u>
India	9 Jul. 74	20 Jul. 76
Iran	3 Mar. 73	8 Aug. 76
Ireland	1 Nov. 74	
Israel	5 Mar. 73	
Italy	3 Mar. 73	
Japan	30 Apr. 73	
Kenya	30 Apr. 73	
Khmer Rep.	7 Dec. 73	
Kuwait	9 Apr. 74	
Lesotho	17 Jul. 74	
Luxembourg	3 Mar. 73	
Malagasy Rep. (Madagascar)	4 Apr. 73	20 Aug. 75
Mauritius	3 Mar. 73	28 Apr. 75
Morocco	9 Mar. 73	16 Oct. 75
Nepal	18 Jun. 75	18 Jun. 75
Netherlands	30 Dec. 74	
Niger	5 Mar. 73	8 Sept. 75
Nigeria	11 Feb. 74	9 May 74
Norway	23 Dec. 74	27 Jul. 76
Pakistan	20 Apr. 76	20 Apr. 76

<u>Country</u>	<u>Date Signed</u>	<u>Date Ratified</u>
Panama	3 Mar. 73	
Papua New Guinea	12 Dec. 75	12 Dec. 75
Paraguay	30 Apr. 73	15 Nov. 76
Peru	30 Dec. 74	27 Jun. 75
Philippines	3 Mar. 73	
Poland	8 Oct. 73	
Portugal	6 Dec. 74	
Rep. of China (Taiwan)	27 Apr. 73	
Rep. of Vietnam (South)	3 Mar. 73	
Rep. of South Africa	3 Mar. 73	15 Jul. 75
Sudan	27 Apr. 73	
Sweden	3 Apr. 73	20 Aug. 74
Switzerland	2 Apr. 73	9 Jul. 74
Tanzania	30 Apr. 73	
Thailand	3 Mar. 73	
Togo	7 Mar. 73	
Tunisia	21 Mar. 73	10 Jul. 74
Union of Soviet Socialist Reps.	29 Mar. 74	9 Sept. 76
United Arab Emirates	21 Nov. 74	21 Nov. 74

<u>Country</u>	<u>Date Signed</u>	<u>Date Ratified</u>
*United Kingdom	3 Mar. 73	2 Aug. 76
United States of America	3 Mar. 73	14 Jan. 74
Uruguay	9 Jan. 74	2 Apr. 75
Venezuela	3 Mar. 73	
Zaire	20 Jul. 76	20 Jul. 76

\*The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, the Bailiwick of Guernsey, the Bailiwick of Jersey, the Isle of Man, Belize, Bermuda, British Indian Ocean Territory, British Virgin Islands, Falkland Islands, Gibraltar, Gilbert Islands, Hong Kong, Montserrat, Pitcairn, Saint Helena and Dependencies (Tristan da Cunha, Ascension Islands), Tuvalu.

Permit Requirements

Convention on International Trade in Endangered  
Species of Wild Fauna and Flora

Appendix I species are rare or endangered and trade will not be permitted for primarily commercial purposes. Before trade is commenced, the importer must be in possession of a Convention export permit issued by the government of the exporting nation and an import permit issued by the Canadian Wildlife Service, Department of Fisheries and the Environment, Ottawa, Ontario, K1A 0E7, Canada.

Appendix II species are not presently rare or endangered but could become so if trade is not regulated. The species being traded must be covered by appropriate Convention export permits issued by the government of the exporting nations before entry to Canada will be permitted.

Appendix III species are not endangered but are managed within the listing nation. Permit requirements for Appendix III are as for Appendix II species, and are applicable between Canada and the listing nation.

A species includes the living animal or plant as well as their readily recognizable parts and derivatives.

Species being traded must be listed, on permits, by their scientific names. In accordance with the Customs Act, the importer must correctly identify goods being imported or exported, and this is best done by the use of scientific names.

Canadian application to import or to export endangered species permits may be obtained from the Canadian Wildlife Service in Ottawa or any provincial or territorial Wildlife Branch headquarters.

Exigibilité de permis

Convention sur le commerce international des espèces  
de faune et de flore sauvages menacées d'extinction

Les espèces inscrites à l'Annexe I sont rares ou menacées d'extinction et l'échange à des fins d'abord commerciales n'en sera pas permis. Ainsi, tout importateur devra détenir préalablement à la transaction tant un permis d'exportation aux termes de la Convention émis par le pays exportateur qu'un permis d'importation émis par le Service canadien de la faune, Ministère des Pêches et de l'Environnement, Ottawa (Ontario), K1A 0E7, Canada.

Les espèces inscrites à l'Annexe II ne sont actuellement ni rares ni menacées d'extinction mais risquent de le devenir si leur commerce n'est pas réglementé. Les spécimens importés au Canada doivent faire l'objet du permis d'exportation approprié du gouvernement de l'Etat exportateur pour que l'entrée en soit permise au Canada.

Les espèces nommées à l'Annexe III ne sont pas menacées d'extinction mais font l'objet de la part des Etats qui les y ont inscrites d'une gestion spéciale dans les Etats concernés. Les exigences relatives au permis sont les mêmes pour les espèces de l'Annexe III que pour celles de l'Annexe II et s'appliquent aux échanges entre le Canada et l'Etat qui en fait l'inscription. Le mot espèce désigne tout animal ou plante vivant de même que toute partie ou tout tiré de celui-ci qui soit facilement identifiable.

L'énoncé de l'espèce en cause au permis ne se fait que par son nom scientifique. Conformément à la Loi sur les douanes, l'importateur doit identifier correctement la marchandise à importer ou exporter à quoi l'emploi de la nomenclature scientifique se prête le mieux.

Les formules de demande de permis d'importation ou d'exportation s'obtiennent du Service canadien de la faune, à Ottawa, ou du siège de l'organisme homologue de tout gouvernement provincial ou territorial.

APPLICATION TO IMPORT ENDANGERED SPECIES

1. Application: This application shall be made in six copies and in accordance with, and subject to, the Import Permit Regulations, copies of which may be obtained from the Export and Import Permits Division of the Department of Industry, Trade and Commerce. All copies shall be signed by the applicant and where the applicant is a corporation, the name of the corporation shall be given and the application signed by an officer or agent thereof authorized to do so for it. All details of the application will be treated as confidential and will be communicated only to persons legally entitled thereto.
2. Status of Applicant: Permits to import endangered species are granted only to applicants who are residents of Canada. In the case of a corporation, this means a corporation having its head office in Canada or operating a branch office in Canada.
3. Information to be Furnished: An applicant shall furnish all information required in the application form, and, without restricting the generality of the foregoing, shall in particular describe the species or specimens concerned in sufficient detail, using generic names, as to disclose their true identity and, in so doing, avoid the use of trade names or general terms that do not adequately describe the species or specimens. In addition, the applicant shall furnish an export permit from the exporting State, or an approval-in-principle that an export permit will be issued by the exporting State, which shall be attached to the application. The applicant shall also furnish such other information as may be required by or on behalf of the Administrator, Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species.
4. Mailing Applications: When all required information has been furnished in the application to import endangered species, the form, together with any other such information as required, shall be mailed to the Administrator, Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species, Canadian Wildlife Service, Department of Fisheries and the Environment, Ottawa, Ontario, K1A 0E7, Canada.
5. Alterations: When an application for a permit to import endangered species has been approved and signed by or on behalf of the Administrator, the application form, with all information appearing therein, becomes a valid permit to import endangered species and shall not, thereafter, be altered.
6. Distribution of Copies: The Administrator will, if approved, return copies 4, 5, and 6 to the applicant. The applicant shall retain copy 4 (white), present copy 5 (yellow) to Canadian Customs at the Canadian port of entry, and present copy 6 (green) to Customs of the exporting State at the port of exit.
7. Penalties: Any import or attempted import of any species or specimens included in Appendix I of the Import Control List, made otherwise than in accordance with a valid permit to import endangered species is an offence and subject to penalties up to a maximum fine of twenty-five thousand dollars or to a maximum term of five years imprisonment or both.
8. The issuing Management Authority may suspend, cancel or reinstate any import permit granted under General Import Permit No. 17 made in accordance with the Import Regulations, Export and Import Permits Act.



**APPLICATION FOR PERMIT TO IMPORT ENDANGERED SPECIES**

**DEMANDE DE LICENCE POUR IMPORTER DES ESPÈCES MENACÉES D'EXTINCTION**

Importer (name, address, telephone) / Importateur (nom, adresse, téléphone)		Applicant's reference no. / N° de référence du requérant		Date	
Supplier (name, address) / Fournisseur (nom, adresse)		Permit, if issued, to be sent to: / Licence, s'il y a lieu, à envoyer à:		Importer <input type="checkbox"/> Importateur / Applicant <input type="checkbox"/> Requérant	
		Canadian Port of Entry / Port d'entrée canadien			
Applicant (if other than importer) / Requérant (si autre que l'importateur)		Approximate date of entry / Date d'arrivée approximative			
		Goods imported from (country) / Marchandises importées de (pays)			
		Purpose for which the goods are imported / Fins auxquelles les marchandises sont importées			
The undersigned hereby certifies that all information given in this application is true and correct / Le soussigné certifie que tous les renseignements donnés dans cette formule de demande sont exacts		Signature			

Appendix / Annexe	Marks / Marques	Description (scientific name, type, etc.) / Description (nom scientifique, genre, etc.)	Quantity / Quantité	Sex / Sexe	Size and Age / Taille et âge
Living Specimens / Spécimens vivants					
Prepared specimens, parts, by-products / Spécimens préparés, parties, sous-produits					

**For Department Use Only — À l'usage du ministère seulement**

<b>PERMIT</b> 1 The import of goods described above is permitted subject to all conditions described herein in accordance with the Export and Import Permits Act and any regulations made thereunder 2 This permit is valid only for use of the applicant or indicated importer 3 Import Customs documents must agree with this permit		<b>LICENCE</b> 1 L'importation des marchandises décrites ci-dessus est autorisée sous réserve des conditions indiquées aux présentes conformément à la Loi et au règlement sur les licences d'exportation et d'importation 2 Cette licence ne peut être utilisée que par le demandeur ou l'importateur indiqué 3 Les documents douaniers d'importation doivent être conformes à cette licence		Permit Number / N° de la licence	
				Date of issue / Date d'émission	
Canadian Management Authority — Autorisation de la gestion canadienne				Expiry Date / Date d'expiration	
Checked by Collector of Customs against copy received for Department / Vérifié par le Receveur de la douane avec l'exemplaire reçu du ministère		Date Stamp of Port of Validation / Timbre à date du bureau de validation		File Number / Dossier n°	

APPLICATION TO EXPORT ENDANGERED SPECIES

1. Application: This application shall be made in seven copies and in accordance with, and subject to, the Export Permit Regulations, copies of which may be obtained from the Export and Import Permits Division of the Department of Industry, Trade and Commerce. All copies shall be signed by the applicant and where the applicant is a corporation, the name of the corporation shall be given and the application signed by an officer or agent thereof authorized to do so for it. All details of the application will be treated as confidential and will be communicated only to persons legally entitled thereto.
2. Status of Applicant: Permits to export endangered species are granted only to applicants who are residents of Canada. In the case of a corporation, this means a corporation having its head office in Canada or operating a branch office in Canada.
3. Information to be Furnished: An applicant shall furnish all information required in the application form, and, without restricting the generality of the foregoing, shall in particular describe the species or specimens concerned in sufficient detail, using generic names, as to disclose their true identity and, in so doing, avoid the use of trade names or general terms that do not adequately describe the species or specimens. In addition, for Appendix I species the applicant shall furnish an import permit from the importing State, or an approval-in-principle that an import permit will be issued by the importing State, which shall be attached to the application. The applicant shall also furnish such other information as may be required by or on behalf of the Administrator, Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species, or, by or on behalf of the Management Authority of the province or territory in which the species or specimens originated.
4. Mailing Application: When all required information has been furnished in the application to export endangered species, the form, together with any other such information as required, shall be mailed to the office from which the application form was obtained.
5. Alterations: When an application for a permit to export endangered species has been approved and signed by or on behalf of the Management Authority, the application form, with all information appearing therein, becomes a valid permit to export endangered species and shall not, thereafter, be altered.
6. Distribution of Copies: The Management Authority to which the application was submitted will, if approved, return copies 5, 6 and 7 to the applicant. The applicant shall retain copy 5 (white), present copy 6 (yellow) to Canadian Customs at the Canadian port of exit, and present copy 7 (green) to Customs of the importing State at the port of entry.
7. Penalties: Any exportation or attempted exportation of any species or specimens included in Appendices I, II or III of the Export Control List, made otherwise than in accordance with a valid permit to export endangered species is an offence and subject to penalties up to a maximum fine of twenty-five thousand dollars or to a maximum term of five years imprisonment or both.
8. The issuing Management Authority may suspend, cancel or reinstate any export permit granted under General Export Permit No. EX 14 made in accordance with the Export Regulations, Export and Import Permits Act.



**APPLICATION FOR PERMIT TO EXPORT ENDANGERED SPECIES**

**DEMANDE DE LICENCE POUR EXPORTER DES ESPÈCES MENACÉES D'EXTINCTION**

Exporter (name, address, telephone) / <i>Exportateur (nom, adresse, téléphone)</i>		Applicant's reference no. / <i>N° de référence du requérant</i>		Date	
Consignee at final destination (name, address) / <i>Destinataire à l'ultime destination (nom, adresse)</i>		Permit, if issued, to be sent to: / <i>Licence, s'il y a lieu, à envoyer à:</i> Exporter <input type="checkbox"/> <i>Exportateur</i> Applicant <input type="checkbox"/> <i>Requérant</i>			
Applicant (if other than exporter) / <i>Requérant (si autre que l'exportateur)</i>		Exporting Province/Territory / <i>Province/Territoire exportateur</i>		Country of final destination / <i>Pays de destination finale</i>	
The undersigned hereby certifies that all information given in this application is true and correct. / <i>Le soussigné certifie que tous les renseignements donnés dans cette formule de demande sont exacts.</i>		Canadian port where Customs export entry will be presented / <i>Port canadien où sera présentée la déclaration d'exportation</i>		Signature	

Appendix / <i>Annexe</i>	Marks / <i>Marques</i>	Description (scientific name, type, etc.) / <i>Description (nom scientifique, genre, etc.)</i>	Quantity / <i>Quantité</i>	Sex / <i>Sexe</i>	Size and Age / <i>Taille et âge</i>
Living Specimens / <i>Spécimens vivants</i>					
Prepared specimens, parts, by-products / <i>Spécimens préparés, parties, sous-produits</i>					

**For Departmental Use Only — À l'usage du ministère seulement**

Signature and stamp of issuing authority / <i>Signature et tampon des autorités délivrant la licence</i>	Customs stamp of importing country / <i>Tampon de la douane du pays importateur</i>	Permit No. / <i>N° de la licence</i>	
		Date of issue / <i>Date d'émission</i>	
Checked by Collector of Customs against copy received for Department / <i>Vérité par le Receveur de la douane avec l'exemplaire reçu du ministère</i>	Date stamp of port of validation / <i>Timbre à date du bureau de validation</i>	Expiry Date / <i>Date d'expiration</i>	
		File No. / <i>Dossier n°</i>	

APPENDIX 4

Documents From the Swiss Veterinary Service  
Concerning  
Criteria For Housing Animals  
in Captivity





## MEMORANDUM

## NOTE DE SERVICE

Dr. N.S. Novakowski,  
Chairman, Scientific Authority,  
Convention on International Trade  
in Endangered Species.

Administrator,  
Convention on International Trade  
in Endangered Species.

SECURITY-CLASSIFICATION - DE SÉCURITÉ
OUR FILE--N/RÉFÉRENCE 9083-47
YOUR FILE--V/RÉFÉRENCE
DATE October 15, 1976

SUBJECT  
OBJET

Criteria for Housing Wild Animals in Captivity.

Attached is a copy of documents recently received from the Swiss Veterinary Service concerning criteria for housing wild animals.

The Swiss requirements may be of assistance to you in developing similar criteria for Canada.

*J. B. Heppes*  
John B. Heppes,  
Administrator,  
Convention on International  
Trade in Endangered Species.

Encl.

Number of Animals	Species	Outdoor Enclosure		Indoor Enclosure		Additional area per additional adult animal	Notes
		Area	Volume	Area	Volume		
2	spiny echinida	-	-	10 m <sup>2</sup>	-	1 m <sup>2</sup>	To be kept singly or in pairs  For Bennet's wallabies, a smaller stall area is sufficient
2	long-eared opossum	-	-	12 m <sup>2</sup>	24 m <sup>3</sup>	1 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	cuscus tree kangaroo	-	-	16 m <sup>2</sup>	40 m <sup>3</sup>	3 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	wombat Tasmanian devil	40 m <sup>2</sup>	-	6 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	
2-5	small kangaroos	40 m <sup>2</sup>	-	20 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	
2-10	wallabies	400 m <sup>2</sup>	-	4 m <sup>2</sup> per animal	-	20 m <sup>2</sup>	
2-6	large kangaroos	400 m <sup>2</sup>	-	5 m <sup>2</sup> per animal	-	30 m <sup>2</sup>	
2-20	Indian flying foxes small flying foxes	-	-	20 m <sup>2</sup>	50 m <sup>3</sup>	-	
2-20	large flying foxes	-	-	30 m <sup>2</sup>	90 m <sup>3</sup>	-	
2	tupaia	-	-	2 m <sup>2</sup>	3 m <sup>3</sup>	-	
2	fork-masked dwarf lemurs, loris, potto, angwantibo	-	-	3 m <sup>2</sup>	4.5 m <sup>3</sup>	0.5 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	tarsier, small galagos, ring-tailed lemurs, hapalemurs, aye-aye, marmoset, Goeldi tamarin ( <u>Callimico goeldii</u> )	-	-	4 m <sup>2</sup>	8 m <sup>3</sup>	0.5 m <sup>2</sup>	
2-4	giant galago douroucouli	-	-	6 m <sup>2</sup>	15 m <sup>3</sup>	1 m <sup>2</sup>	
2-4	saimiri	8 m <sup>2</sup>	20 m <sup>3</sup>	8 m <sup>2</sup>	20 m <sup>3</sup>	1 m <sup>2</sup>	
2-4	true makis, sakis	16 m <sup>2</sup>	40 m <sup>3</sup>	16 m <sup>2</sup>	40 m <sup>3</sup>	2 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	capuchins, woolly monkeys, red-faced spider-monkeys	16 m <sup>2</sup>	40 m <sup>3</sup>	16 m <sup>2</sup>	40 m <sup>3</sup>	2 m <sup>2</sup>	

Number of Animals	Species	Outdoor Enclosure		Indoor Enclosure		Additional area per additional adult animal	Notes
		Area	Volume	Area	Volume		
2	vari, indri, sifaka, macaques, mangabeys, baboons, patas, cerco-pithecoïd monkeys, langurs	20 m <sup>2</sup>	50 m <sup>3</sup>	20 m <sup>2</sup>	50 m <sup>3</sup>	2.5 m <sup>2</sup>	For Barbary monkey, <u>Macaca arctoides</u> and <u>Macaca fuscata</u> , no indoor enclosure is necessary. Shelter suffices.
2-4	guerezas, gibbons	30 m <sup>2</sup>	90 m <sup>3</sup>	30 m <sup>2</sup>	90 m <sup>3</sup>	3.5 m <sup>2</sup>	Gibbons to be kept in family groups only
2	anthropoid apes	40 m <sup>2</sup>	120 m <sup>3</sup>	40 m <sup>2</sup>	120 m <sup>3</sup>	8 m <sup>2</sup>	In addition, individually subdividable sleeping boxes (1 m <sup>2</sup> per animal)
2	small and medium-sized mangolins	-	-	8 m <sup>2</sup>	20 m <sup>3</sup>	1 m <sup>2</sup>	For procaviids, additionally outdoor enclosures or slide windows providing direct insolation
2	small and medium-sized armadillos	-	-	10 m <sup>2</sup>	-	1 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	tamandua	-	-	16 m <sup>2</sup>	40 m <sup>3</sup>	2 m <sup>2</sup>	
2-5	sloths, procaviids	-	-	-	-	-	
2	giant pangolin	-	-	20 m <sup>2</sup>	50 m <sup>3</sup>	2.5 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	giant armadillo	-	-	40 m <sup>2</sup>	-	4 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	aardvark	40 m <sup>2</sup>	-	20 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	
2	great anteater	150 m <sup>2</sup>	-	20 m <sup>2</sup>	-	outdoor 10 m <sup>2</sup> indoor 5 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	squirrels	8 m <sup>2</sup>	20 m <sup>3</sup>	-	-	1 m <sup>2</sup>	For tropical forms, adequate indoor cages Basin at least 1 m <sup>3</sup>
2	coypu	10 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	1 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	giant squirrel, coendú pacarana	-	-	16 m <sup>2</sup>	40 m <sup>3</sup>	2 m <sup>2</sup>	

Number of Animals	Species	Outdoor Enclosure		Indoor Enclosure		Additional area per additional adult animal	Notes
		Area	Volume	Area	Volume		
2	beaver, porcupines, mara, field hare / white hare	40 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	4 m <sup>2</sup>	For beaver, basin of at least 6 m <sup>3</sup>  For paca and viscacha, outdoor enclosures may be dispensed with  With a basin of at least 2 m <sup>3</sup>
2-10	prairie dogs	40 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	2 m <sup>2</sup>	
2-5	pikas	20 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	1 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	jumping hares, agouti, paca, viscacha	20 m <sup>2</sup>	-	20 m <sup>2</sup>	-	1 m <sup>2</sup>	
2-10	marmots	150 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	10 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	capibara	150 m <sup>2</sup>	-	20 m <sup>2</sup>	-	10 m <sup>2</sup>	
1	weasel	4 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	-	62  For <u>Amblonyx</u> and wild mink a basin of at least 1 m <sup>3</sup> for <u>Amblonyx</u> and mongooses a heatable indoor space  Alternatively indoor or outdoor enclosures. If outdoor enclosures are planned for species that are sensitive to cold, the addition of heatable indoor space with a minimum area of 2 m <sup>2</sup> per animal is necessary.  Indoor space only for species sensitive to cold otherwise insulated sleeping box  For species sensitive to cold, barrier enclosure instead of indoor space. For each animal an individual sleeping box (for common lynx a little box)
2	nolecats, wild mink, <u>Amblonyx</u>	10 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	2 m <sup>2</sup>	
2-6	mongooses	-	-	-	-	1 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	kinkajou, bassarisk, arbicole viverrids, arbicole martens	16 m <sup>2</sup>	40 m <sup>3</sup>	16 m <sup>2</sup>	40 m <sup>3</sup>	1 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	skunks, coati, raccoon, fennec, binturong, civet, lesser cats	20 m <sup>2</sup>	50 m <sup>3</sup>	6 m <sup>2</sup>	15 m <sup>3</sup>	2 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	lynxes, medium-sized cats, clouded leopard	30 m <sup>2</sup>	90 m <sup>3</sup>	10 m <sup>2</sup>	20 m <sup>3</sup>	3 m <sup>3</sup>	

Number of Animals	Species	Outdoor Enclosure		Indoor Enclosure		Additional area per additional adult animal	Notes
		Area	Volume	Area	Volume		
2	panda ( <i>Ailurus fulgens</i> ), badgers, otter, arctic fox, corsac, long-eared fox, bush dog, raccoon dog	40 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	4 m <sup>2</sup>	For otter, a basin of at least 6 m <sup>3</sup> ; for tropical otter and for bush dog, heatable indoor space
2	puma, snow leopard, leopard, jaguar	50 m <sup>2</sup>	150 m <sup>3</sup>	16 m <sup>2</sup>	32 m <sup>3</sup>	6 m <sup>2</sup>	see lynxes
2	lion, tiger	100 m <sup>2</sup>	300 m <sup>3</sup>	24 m <sup>2</sup>	48 m <sup>3</sup>	10 m <sup>2</sup>	see lynxes
2	jackals, Asiatic cuons, giant otter, red fox	150 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	10 m <sup>2</sup>	For giant otter, heatable indoor space and a basin of at least 24 m <sup>3</sup>
2	giant panda, terrestrial bears, glutton, hyaenas	200 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	20 m <sup>2</sup>	Individual boxes of 6 m <sup>2</sup> for bears, 2.5 m <sup>2</sup> for hyaenas
2	polar bear, large canidae, cheetah	400 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	20 m <sup>2</sup>	Polar bear: basin of at least 200 m <sup>3</sup> . Individual boxes of 6 m <sup>2</sup> for polar bear, 2.5 m <sup>2</sup> for cheetah. For cheetah, separate enclosures for males and females
2	chevrotain	-	-	4 m <sup>2</sup>	-	-	To be separated from the public by glass panes
2-4	peccari, small deer	150 m <sup>2</sup>	-	3 m <sup>2</sup> per animal	-	10 m <sup>2</sup>	
2	giant duiker			15 m <sup>2</sup> per animal			Individual box, bathing facilities
2	tapir			10 m <sup>2</sup> per animal			Individual box, basin of 12 m <sup>2</sup>
1	pygmy hippopotamus	40 m <sup>2</sup>	-	2 m <sup>2</sup> per animal	-	-	
2	pygmy antelopes, small & medium-sized duikers			4 m <sup>2</sup> per animal			
2	wild boars	200 m <sup>2</sup>	-		-	20 m <sup>2</sup>	For European wild boar, shelter suffices



Number of Animals	Species	Outdoor Enclosure		Indoor Enclosure		Additional area per additional adult animal	Notes
		Area	Volume	Area	Volume		
2	okapi	400 m <sup>2</sup>	-	15 m <sup>2</sup> per animal	-		Individual boxes
2	elephants	500 m <sup>2</sup>	-	20 m <sup>2</sup> per animal	-	50 m <sup>2</sup>	Cows to be kept on tether; bulls in individual boxes of 30 m <sup>2</sup> , exchange stall basin of 24 m <sup>2</sup> outdoors, bathing or shower facilities indoors
	hippopotamus		-	20 m <sup>2</sup> per animal			Basin of 24 m <sup>3</sup> outdoors and indoors
2-6	llamas			1 m <sup>2</sup> per animal		20 m <sup>2</sup>	Individual boxes larger
2-5	carrels			2 m <sup>2</sup> per animal			Individual boxes 8 m <sup>2</sup> 64
2-10	gazelles, black bucks			1-6 m <sup>2</sup> per animal			Indoors distribution in stalls according to the particular needs of each species
2-6	medium-sized antelopes						Shelter
2-4	chamois, mountain goats						Shelter
2-15	Tyrrhenian mouflon						Shelter
2-10	wild sheep, wild goats						
2-8	medium-sized deer	1000 m <sup>2</sup>	-			20-40 m <sup>2</sup>	Shelter; for species sensitive to cold; stalls protected from frost
2-6	large deer			25 m <sup>2</sup> per animal		60 m <sup>2</sup>	Veranda of 80 - 120 m <sup>2</sup>
	giraffes						
	large antelopes			10 m <sup>2</sup> per animal		20-40 m <sup>2</sup>	Individual boxes
	wild cattle						
2-4	zebras, African wild asses, Asiatic wild asses					40 m <sup>2</sup>	Individual boxes

\*Translator's Note: "to be kept on tether" for German "in Anbindehaltung" is only a wild guess.

Number of Animals	Species	Outdoor Enclosure		Indoor Enclosure		Additional area per additional adult animal	Notes
		Area	Volume	Area	Volume		
2	rhinoceroses			30 m <sup>2</sup> per animal			Individual boxes, except for white rhinoceros; basin of 12 m <sup>3</sup> outdoors and indoors Individual boxes or shelter Shelter; to be kept in schools
2-7	Przewalski's horse	3000 m <sup>2</sup>	-	10 m <sup>2</sup> per animal		100 m <sup>2</sup>	
	milu (Père David's deer)	20,000 m <sup>2</sup>	-				
		Basins		Reserve Basins		Additional volume per additional adult animal	Circulation performance of the filtering plant: total volume in 6 hours
		Volume	Depth	Volume	Depth		
2	sea otter seals Asiatic river dolphins	100 m <sup>3</sup>	up to 2 m			50 m <sup>3</sup>	
2-4	South American river dolphins	200 m <sup>3</sup>	2 - 3 m	+		50 m <sup>3</sup>	
2	polar bears, sea cows	200 m <sup>3</sup>	1.5-2.5 m			50 m <sup>3</sup>	
2-5	sea lions sea bears	500 m <sup>3</sup>	3 m 3 m	+		100 m <sup>3</sup>	
2-3	dolphins		3.5 m	+			
2	sea elephant, walrus	500 m <sup>3</sup>	3 m	+		200 m <sup>3</sup>	
1	killer whale, beluga (white whale)	500 m <sup>3</sup>	3.5 m	+		500 m <sup>3</sup>	

August 6, 1976

Commission/Do/ms/820.10



APPENDIX 5

Convention on International Trade  
in Endangered Species  
of Wild Fauna and Flora  
- Washington, D.C. - March 3, 1973



Plenipotentiary Conference to conclude an international convention on trade in certain species of wildlife

Printed September 1973

**Convention on international trade in endangered species of wild fauna and flora**  
signed March 3, 1973, Washington, D.C.

The Contracting States,

**Recognizing** that wild fauna and flora in their many beautiful and varied forms are an irreplaceable part of the natural systems of the earth which must be protected for this and the generations to come;

**Conscious** of the ever-growing value of wild fauna and flora from aesthetic, scientific, cultural, recreational and economic points of view;

**Recognizing** that peoples and States are and should be the best protectors of their own wild fauna and flora;

**Recognizing**, in addition, that international cooperation is essential for the protection of certain species of wild fauna and flora against over-exploitation through international trade;

**Convinced** of the urgency of taking appropriate measures to this end;

**Have agreed** as follows:

**Article I**

**Definitions**

For the purpose of the present Convention, unless the context otherwise requires:

- (a) "Species" means any species, subspecies, or geographically separate population thereof;
- (b) "Specimen" means:
  - (i) any animal or plant, whether alive or dead;
  - (ii) in the case of an animal: for species included in Appendices I and II, any readily recognizable part or derivative thereof; and for species included in Appendix III, any readily recognizable part or derivative thereof specified in Appendix III in relation to the species; and
  - (iii) in the case of a plant: for species included in Appendix I, any readily recognizable part or derivative thereof; and for species included in Appendices II and III, any readily recognizable part or derivative thereof specified in Appendices II and III in relation to the species;
- (c) "Trade" means export, re-export, import and introduction from the sea;
- (d) "Re-export" means export of any specimen that has previously been imported;
- (e) "Introduction from the sea" means transportation into a State of specimens of any species which were taken in the marine environment not under the jurisdiction of any State;
- (f) "Scientific Authority" means a national scientific authority designated in accordance with Article IX;
- (g) "Management Authority" means a national management authority designated in accordance with Article IX;
- (h) "Party" means a State for which the present Convention has entered into force.

**Article II**

**Fundamental principles**

1. Appendix I shall include all species threatened with extinction which are or may be affected by trade. Trade in specimens of these species must be subject to particularly strict regulation in order not to endanger further their survival and must only be authorized in exceptional circumstances.

2. Appendix II shall include:

- (a) all species which although not necessarily now threatened with extinction may become so unless trade in specimens of such species is subject to strict regulation in order to avoid utilization incompatible with their survival; and
- (b) other species which must be subject to regulation in order that trade in specimens of certain species referred to in sub-paragraph (a) of this paragraph may be brought under effective control.

3. Appendix III shall include all species which any Party identifies as being subject to regulation within its jurisdiction for the purpose of preventing or restricting exploitation, and as needing the cooperation of other parties in the control of trade.

4. The Parties shall not allow trade in specimens of species included in Appendices I, II and III except in accordance with the provisions of the present Convention.

**Article III**

**Regulation of trade in specimens of species included in Appendix I**

1. All trade in specimens of species included in Appendix I shall be in accordance with the provisions of this Article.

2. The export of any specimen of a species included in Appendix I shall require the prior grant and presentation of an export permit. An export permit shall only be granted when the following conditions have been met:

- (a) a Scientific Authority of the State of export has advised that such export will not be detrimental to the survival of that species;
- (b) a Management Authority of the State of export is satisfied that the specimen was not obtained in contravention of the laws of that State for the protection of fauna and flora;
- (c) a Management Authority of the State of export is satisfied that any living specimen will be so prepared and shipped as to minimize the risk of injury, damage to health or cruel treatment; and
- (d) a Management Authority of the State of export is satisfied that an import permit has been granted for the specimen.

3. The import of any specimen of a species included in Appendix I shall require the prior grant and presentation of an import permit and either an export permit or a re-export certificate. An import permit shall only be granted when the following conditions have been met:



- (a) a Scientific Authority of the State of import has advised that the import will be for purposes which are not detrimental to the survival of the species involved;
- (b) a Scientific Authority of the State of import is satisfied that the proposed recipient of a living specimen is suitably equipped to house and care for it; and
- (c) a Management Authority of the State of import is satisfied that the specimen is not to be used for primarily commercial purposes.

4. The re-export of any specimen of a species included in Appendix I shall require the prior grant and presentation of a re-export certificate. A re-export certificate shall only be granted when the following conditions have been met:

- (a) a Management Authority of the State of re-export is satisfied that the specimen was imported into that State in accordance with the provisions of the present Convention;
- (b) a Management Authority of the State of re-export is satisfied that any living specimen will be so prepared and shipped as to minimize the risk of injury, damage to health or cruel treatment; and
- (c) a Management Authority of the State of re-export is satisfied that an import permit has been granted for any living specimen.

5. The introduction from the sea of any specimen of a species included in Appendix I shall require the prior grant of a certificate from a Management Authority of the State of introduction. A certificate shall only be granted when the following conditions have been met:

- (a) a Scientific Authority of the State of introduction advises that the introduction will not be detrimental to the survival of the species involved;
- (b) a Management Authority of the State of introduction is satisfied that the proposed recipient of a living specimen is suitably equipped to house and care for it; and
- (c) a Management Authority of the State of introduction is satisfied that the specimen is not to be used for primarily commercial purposes.

#### **Article IV**

##### **Regulation of trade in specimens of species included in Appendix II**

1. All trade in specimens of species included in Appendix II shall be in accordance with the provisions of this Article.

2. The export of any specimen of a species included in Appendix II shall require the prior grant and presentation of an export permit. An export permit shall only be granted when the following conditions have been met:

- (a) a Scientific Authority of the State of export has advised that such export will not be detrimental to the survival of that species;
- (b) a Management Authority of the State of export is satisfied that the specimen was not obtained in contravention of the laws of that State for the protection of fauna and flora; and
- (c) a Management Authority of the State of export is satisfied that any living specimen will be so prepared and shipped

as to minimize the risk of injury, damage to health or cruel treatment.

3. A Scientific Authority in each Party shall monitor both the export permits granted by that State for specimens of species included in Appendix II and the actual exports of such specimens. Whenever a Scientific Authority determines that the export of specimens of any such species should be limited in order to maintain that species throughout its range at a level consistent with its role in the ecosystems in which it occurs and well above the level at which that species might become eligible for inclusion in Appendix I, the Scientific Authority shall advise the appropriate Management Authority of suitable measures to be taken to limit the grant of export permits for specimens of that species.

4. The import of any specimen of a species included in Appendix II shall require the prior presentation of either an export permit or a re-export certificate.

5. The re-export of any specimen of a species included in Appendix II shall require the prior grant and presentation of a re-export certificate. A re-export certificate shall only be granted when the following conditions have been met:

- (a) a Management Authority of the State of re-export is satisfied that the specimen was imported into that State in accordance with the provisions of the present Convention; and
- (b) a Management Authority of the State of re-export is satisfied that any living specimen will be so prepared and shipped as to minimize the risk of injury, damage to health or cruel treatment.

6. The introduction from the sea of any specimen of a species included in Appendix II shall require the prior grant of a certificate from a Management Authority of the State of introduction. A certificate shall only be granted when the following conditions have been met:

- (a) a Scientific Authority of the State of introduction advises that the introduction will not be detrimental to the survival of the species involved; and
- (b) a Management Authority of the State of introduction is satisfied that any living specimen will be so handled as to minimize the risk of injury, damage to health or cruel treatment.

7. Certificates referred to in paragraph 6 of this Article may be granted on the advice of a Scientific Authority, in consultation with other national scientific authorities or, when appropriate, international scientific authorities, in respect of periods not exceeding one year for total numbers of specimens to be introduced in such periods.

#### **Article V**

##### **Regulation of trade in specimens of species included in Appendix III**

1. All trade in specimens of species included in Appendix III shall be in accordance with the provisions of this Article.

2. The export of any specimen of a species included in Appendix III from any State which has included that species in Appendix III shall require the prior grant and presentation of an export permit. An export permit shall only be granted when the following conditions have been met:

(a) a Management Authority of the State of export is satisfied that the specimen was not obtained in contravention of the laws of that State for the protection of fauna and flora; and

(b) a Management Authority of the State of export is satisfied that any living specimen will be so prepared and shipped as to minimize the risk of injury, damage to health or cruel treatment.

3. The import of any specimen of a species included in Appendix III shall require, except in circumstances to which paragraph 4 of this Article applies, the prior presentation of a certificate of origin and, where the import is from a State which has included that species in Appendix III, an export permit.

4. In the case of re-export, a certificate granted by the Management Authority of the State of re-export that the specimen was processed in that State or is being re-exported shall be accepted by the State of import as evidence that the provisions of the present Convention have been complied with in respect of the specimen concerned.

#### **Article VI**

##### **Permits and certificates**

1. Permits and certificates granted under the provisions of Articles III, IV, and V shall be in accordance with the provisions of this Article.

2. An export permit shall contain the information specified in the model set forth in Appendix IV, and may only be used for export within a period of six months from the date on which it was granted.

3. Each permit or certificate shall contain the title of the present Convention, the name and any identifying stamp of the Management Authority granting it and a control number assigned by the Management Authority.

4. Any copies of a permit or certificate issued by a Management Authority shall be clearly marked as copies only and no such copy may be used in place of the original, except to the extent endorsed thereon.

5. A separate permit or certificate shall be required for each consignment of specimens.

6. A Management Authority of the State of import of any specimen shall cancel and retain the export permit or re-export certificate and any corresponding import permit presented in respect of the import of that specimen.

7. Where appropriate and feasible a Management Authority may affix a mark upon any specimen to assist in identifying the specimen. For these purposes "mark" means any indelible imprint, lead seal or other suitable means of identifying a specimen, designed in such a way as to render its imitation by unauthorized persons as difficult as possible.

#### **Article VII**

##### **Exemptions and other special provisions relating to trade**

1. The provisions of Articles III, IV and V shall not apply to the transit or trans-shipment of specimens through or in the territory of a Party while the specimens remain in Customs control.

2. Where a Management Authority of the State of export or re-export is satisfied that a specimen was acquired before the provisions of the present Convention applied to that specimen, the provisions of Articles III, IV and V shall not apply to that specimen where the Management Authority issues a certificate to that effect.

3. The provisions of Articles III, IV and V shall not apply to specimens that are personal or household effects. This exemption shall not apply where:

(a) in the case of specimens of a species included in Appendix I, they were acquired by the owner outside his State of usual residence, and are being imported into that State; or  
(b) in the case of specimens of species included in Appendix II:

(i) they were acquired by the owner outside his State of usual residence and in a State where removal from the wild occurred;

(ii) they are being imported into the owner's State of usual residence; and

(iii) the State where removal from the wild occurred requires the prior grant of export permits before any export of such specimens;

unless a Management Authority is satisfied that the specimens were acquired before the provisions of the present Convention applied to such specimens.

4. Specimens of an animal species included in Appendix I bred in captivity for commercial purposes, or of a plant species included in Appendix I artificially propagated for commercial purposes, shall be deemed to be specimens of species included in Appendix II.

5. Where a Management Authority of the State of export is satisfied that any specimen of an animal species was bred in captivity or any specimen of a plant species was artificially propagated, or is a part of such an animal or plant or was derived therefrom, a certificate by that Management Authority to that effect shall be accepted in lieu of any of the permits or certificates required under the provisions of Articles III, IV or V.

6. The provisions of Articles III, IV and V shall not apply to the non-commercial loan, donation or exchange between scientists or scientific institutions registered by a Management Authority of their State, of herbarium specimens, other preserved, dried or embedded museum specimens, and live plant material which carry a label issued or approved by a Management Authority.

7. A Management Authority of any State may waive the requirements of Articles III, IV and V and allow the movement without permits or certificates of specimens which form part of a travelling zoo, circus, menagerie, plant exhibition or other travelling exhibition provided that:

(a) the exporter or importer registers full details of such



specimens with that Management Authority;  
 (b) the specimens are in either of the categories specified in paragraphs 2 or 5 of this Article; and  
 (c) the Management Authority is satisfied that any living specimen will be so transported and cared for as to minimize the risk of injury, damage to health or cruel treatment.

#### **Article VIII**

##### **Measures to be taken by the Parties**

1. The Parties shall take appropriate measures to enforce the provisions of the present Convention and to prohibit trade in specimens in violation thereof. These shall include measures:

- (a) to penalize trade in, or possession of, such specimens, or both; and
- (b) to provide for the confiscation or return to the State of export of such specimens.

2. In addition to the measures taken under paragraph 1 of this Article, a Party may, when it deems it necessary, provide for any method of internal reimbursement for expenses incurred as a result of the confiscation of a specimen traded in violation of the measures taken in the application of the provisions of the present Convention.

3. As far as possible, the Parties shall ensure that specimens shall pass through any formalities required for trade with a minimum of delay. To facilitate such passage, a Party may designate ports of exit and ports of entry at which specimens must be presented for clearance. The Parties shall ensure further that all living specimens, during any period of transit, holding or shipment, are properly cared for so as to minimize the risk of injury, damage to health or cruel treatment.

4. Where a living specimen is confiscated as a result of measures referred to in paragraph 1 of this Article:

- (a) the specimen shall be entrusted to a Management Authority of the State of confiscation;
- (b) the Management Authority shall, after consultation with the State of export, return the specimen to that State at the expense of that State, or to a rescue centre or such other place as the Management Authority deems appropriate and consistent with the purposes of the present Convention; and
- (c) the Management Authority may obtain the advice of a Scientific Authority, or may, whenever it considers it desirable, consult the Secretariat in order to facilitate the decision under sub-paragraph (b) of this paragraph, including the choice of a rescue centre or other place.

5. A rescue centre as referred to in paragraph 4 of this Article means an institution designated by a Management Authority to look after the welfare of living specimens, particularly those that have been confiscated.

6. Each Party shall maintain records of trade in specimens of species included in Appendices I, II and III which shall cover:

- (a) the names and addresses of exporters and importers; and
- (b) the number and type of permits and certificates granted; the States with which such trade occurred; the numbers or

quantities and types of specimens, names of species as included in Appendices I, II and III and, where applicable, the size and sex of the specimens in question.

7. Each Party shall prepare periodic reports on its implementation of the present Convention and shall transmit to the Secretariat:

- (a) an annual report containing a summary of the information specified in sub-paragraph (b) of paragraph 6 of this Article; and
- (b) a biennial report on legislative, regulatory and administrative measures taken to enforce the provisions of the present Convention.

8. The information referred to in paragraph 7 of this Article shall be available to the public where this is not inconsistent with the law of the Party concerned.

#### **Article IX**

##### **Management and Scientific Authorities**

1. Each Party shall designate for the purposes of the present Convention:

- (a) one or more Management Authorities competent to grant permits or certificates on behalf of that Party; and
- (b) one or more Scientific Authorities.

2. A State depositing an instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession shall at that time inform the Depository Government of the name and address of the Management Authority authorized to communicate with other Parties and with the Secretariat.

3. Any changes in the designations or authorizations under the provisions of this Article shall be communicated by the Party concerned to the Secretariat for transmission to all other Parties.

4. Any Management Authority referred to in paragraph 2 of this Article shall if so requested by the Secretariat or the Management Authority of another Party, communicate to it impression of stamps, seals or other devices used to authenticate permits or certificates.

#### **Article X**

##### **Trade with States not party to the convention**

Where export or re-export is to, or import is from, a State not a party to the present Convention, comparable documentation issued by the competent authorities in that State which substantially conforms with the requirements of the present Convention for permits and certificates may be accepted in lieu thereof by any Party.

#### **Article XI**

##### **Conference of the Parties**

1. The Secretariat shall call a meeting of the Conference of the Parties not later than two years after the entry into force of the present Convention.

2. Thereafter the Secretariat shall convene regular meetings at least once every two years, unless the Conference decides otherwise, and extraordinary meetings at any time on the written request of at least one-third of the Parties.

3. At meetings, whether regular or extraordinary, the Parties shall review the implementation of the present Convention and may:

- (a) make such provisions as may be necessary to enable the Secretariat to carry out its duties;
- (b) consider and adopt amendments to Appendices I and II in accordance with Article XV;
- (c) review the progress made towards the restoration and conservation of the species included in Appendices I, II and III;
- (d) receive and consider any reports presented by the Secretariat or by any Party; and
- (e) where appropriate, make recommendations for improving the effectiveness of the present Convention.

4. At each regular meeting, the Parties may determine the time and venue of the next regular meeting to be held in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 2 of this Article.

5. At any meeting, the Parties may determine and adopt rules of procedure for the meeting.

6. The United Nations, its Specialized Agencies and the International Atomic Energy Agency, as well as any State not a Party to the present Convention, may be represented at meetings of the Conference by observers, who shall have the right to participate but not to vote.

7. Any body or agency technically qualified in protection, conservation or management of wild fauna and flora, in the following categories, which has informed the Secretariat of its desire to be represented at meetings of the Conference by observers, shall be admitted unless at least one-third of the Parties present object:

- (a) international agencies or bodies, either governmental or non-governmental, and national governmental agencies and bodies; and
- (b) national non-governmental agencies or bodies which have been approved for this purpose by the State in which they are located. Once admitted, these observers shall have the right to participate but not to vote.

## Article XII

### The Secretariat

1. Upon entry into force of the present Convention, a Secretariat shall be provided by the Executive Director of the United Nations Environment Programme. To the extent and in the manner he considers appropriate, he may be assisted by suitable inter-governmental or non-governmental international or national agencies and bodies technically qualified in protection, conservation and management of wild fauna and flora.

2. The functions of the Secretariat shall be:

- (a) to arrange for and service meetings of the Parties;
- (b) to perform the functions entrusted to it under the provisions of Articles XV and XVI of the present Convention;
- (c) to undertake scientific and technical studies in accordance with programmes authorized by the Conference of the Parties as will contribute to the implementation of the present Convention, including studies concerning standards for appropriate preparation and shipment of living speci-

mens and the means of identifying specimens;

(d) to study the reports of Parties and to request from Parties such further information with respect thereto as it deems necessary to ensure implementation of the present Convention;

(e) to invite the attention of the Parties to any matter pertaining to the aims of the present Convention;

(f) to publish periodically and distribute to the Parties current editions of Appendices I, II and III together with any information which will facilitate identification of specimens of species included in those Appendices.

(g) to prepare annual reports to the Parties on its work and on the implementation of the present Convention and such other reports as meetings of the Parties may request;

(h) to make recommendations for the implementation of the aims and provisions of the present Convention, including the exchange of information of a scientific or technical nature;

(i) to perform any other function as may be entrusted to it by the Parties.

## Article XIII

### International measures

1. When the Secretariat in the light of information received is satisfied that any species included in Appendices I or II is being affected adversely by trade in specimens of that species or that the provisions of the present Convention are not being effectively implemented, it shall communicate such information to the authorized Management Authority of the Party or Parties concerned.

2. When any Party receives a communication as indicated in paragraph 1 of this Article, it shall, as soon as possible, inform the Secretariat of any relevant facts insofar as its laws permit and, where appropriate, propose remedial action. Where the Party considers that an inquiry is desirable, such inquiry may be carried out by one or more persons expressly authorized by the Party.

3. The information provided by the Party or resulting from any inquiry as specified in paragraph 2 of this Article shall be reviewed by the next Conference of the Parties which may make whatever recommendations it deems appropriate.

## Article XIV

### Effect on domestic legislation and international conventions

1. The provisions of the present Convention shall in no way affect the right of Parties to adopt:

- (a) stricter domestic measures regarding the conditions for trade, taking possession, or transport of specimens of species included in Appendices I, II and III, or the complete prohibition thereof; or
- (b) domestic measures restricting or prohibiting trade, taking possession, or transport of species not included in Appendices I, II or III.

2. The provisions of the present Convention shall in no way affect the provisions of any domestic measures or the

obligations of Parties deriving from any treaty, convention, or international agreement relating to other aspects of trade, taking possession, or transport of specimens which is in force or subsequently may enter into force for any Party including any measure pertaining to the Customs, public health, veterinary or plant quarantine fields.

3. The provisions of the present Convention shall in no way affect the provisions of, or the obligations deriving from, any treaty, convention or international agreement concluded or which may be concluded between States creating a union or regional trade agreement establishing or maintaining a common external customs control and removing customs control between the parties thereto insofar as they relate to trade among the States members of that union or agreement.

4. A State party to the present Convention, which is also a party to any other treaty, convention or international agreement which is in force at the time of the coming into force of the present Convention and under the provisions of which protection is afforded to marine species included in Appendix II, shall be relieved of the obligations imposed on it under the provisions of the present Convention with respect to trade in specimens of species included in Appendix II that are taken by ships registered in that State and in accordance with the provisions of such other treaty, convention or international agreement.

5. Notwithstanding the provisions of Articles III, IV and V, any export of a specimen taken in accordance with paragraph 4 of this Article shall only require a certificate from a Management Authority of the State of introduction to the effect that the specimen was taken in accordance with the provisions of the other treaty, convention or international agreement in question.

6. Nothing in the present Convention shall prejudice the codification and development of the law of the sea by the United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea convened pursuant to Resolution 2750 C (XXV) of the General Assembly of the United Nations nor the present or future claims and legal views of any State concerning the law of the sea and the nature and extent of coastal and flag State jurisdiction.

## Article XV

### Amendments to Appendices I and II

1. The following provisions shall apply in relation to amendments to Appendices I and II at meetings of the Conference of the Parties:

(a) Any Party may propose an amendment to Appendix I or II for consideration at the next meeting. The text of the proposed amendment shall be communicated to the Secretariat at least 150 days before the meeting. The Secretariat shall consult the other Parties and interested bodies on the amendment in accordance with the provisions of sub-paragraphs (b) and (c) of paragraph 2 of this Article and shall communicate the response to all Parties not later than 30 days before the meeting.

(b) Amendments shall be adopted by a two-thirds majority of Parties present and voting. For these purposes "Parties

present and voting" means Parties present and casting an affirmative or negative vote. Parties abstaining from voting shall not be counted among the two-thirds required for adopting an amendment.

(c) Amendments adopted at a meeting shall enter into force 90 days after that meeting for all Parties except those which make a reservation in accordance with paragraph 3 of this Article.

2. The following provisions shall apply in relation to amendments to Appendices I and II between meetings of the Conference of the Parties:

(a) Any Party may propose an amendment to Appendix I or II for consideration between meetings by the postal procedures set forth in this paragraph.

(b) For marine species, the Secretariat shall, upon receiving the text of the proposed amendment, immediately communicate it to the Parties. It shall also consult inter-governmental bodies having a function in relation to those species especially with a view to obtaining scientific data these bodies may be able to provide and to ensuring coordination with any conservation measures enforced by such bodies. The Secretariat shall communicate the views expressed and data provided by these bodies and its own findings and recommendations to the Parties as soon as possible.

(c) For species other than marine species, the Secretariat shall, upon receiving the text of the proposed amendment, immediately communicate it to the Parties, and, as soon as possible thereafter, its own recommendations.

(d) Any Party may, within 60 days of the date on which the Secretariat communicated its recommendations to the Parties under sub-paragraphs (b) or (c) of this paragraph, transmit to the Secretariat any comments on the proposed amendment together with any relevant scientific data and information.

(e) The Secretariat shall communicate the replies received together with its own recommendations to the Parties as soon as possible.

(f) If no objection to the proposed amendment is received by the Secretariat within 30 days of the date the replies and recommendations were communicated under the provisions of sub-paragraph (e) of this paragraph, the amendment shall enter into force 90 days later for all Parties except those which make a reservation in accordance with paragraph 3 of this Article.

(g) If an objection by any Party is received by the Secretariat, the proposed amendment shall be submitted to a postal vote in accordance with the provisions of sub-paragraphs (h), (i) and (j) of this paragraph.

(h) The Secretariat shall notify the Parties that notification of objection has been received.

(i) Unless the Secretariat receives the votes for, against or in abstention from at least one-half of the Parties within 60 days of the date of notification under sub-paragraph (h) of this paragraph, the proposed amendment shall be referred to the next meeting of the Conference for further consideration.

(j) Provided that votes are received from one-half of the Parties, the amendment shall be adopted by a two-thirds majority of Parties casting an affirmative or negative vote.

(k) The Secretariat shall notify all Parties of the result of the vote.

(l) If the proposed amendment is adopted it shall enter into force 90 days after the date of the notification by the Secretariat of its acceptance for all Parties except those which make a reservation in accordance with paragraph 3 of this Article.

3. During the period of 90 days provided for by sub-paragraph (c) of paragraph 1 or sub-paragraph (l) of paragraph 2 of this Article any Party may by notification in writing to the Depositary Government make a reservation with respect to the amendment. Until such reservation is withdrawn the Party shall be treated as a State not a party to the present Convention with respect to trade in the species concerned.

#### **Article XVI**

##### **Appendix III and amendments thereto**

1. Any party may at any time submit to the Secretariat a list of species which it identifies as being subject to regulation within its jurisdiction for the purpose mentioned in paragraph 3 of Article II. Appendix III shall include the names of the Parties submitting the species for inclusion therein, the scientific names of the species so submitted, and any parts or derivatives of the animals or plants concerned that are specified in relation to the species for the purposes of sub-paragraph (b) of Article I.

2. Each list submitted under the provisions of paragraph 1 of this Article shall be communicated to the Parties by the Secretariat as soon as possible after receiving it. The list shall take effect as part of Appendix III 90 days after the date of such communication. At any time after the communication of such list, any Party may by notification in writing to the Depositary Government enter a reservation with respect to any species or any parts or derivatives, and until such reservation is withdrawn, the State shall be treated as a State not a Party to the present Convention with respect to trade in the species or part or derivative concerned.

3. A Party which has submitted a species for inclusion in Appendix III may withdraw it at any time by notification to the Secretariat which shall communicate the withdrawal to all Parties. The withdrawal shall take effect 30 days after the date of such communication.

4. Any Party submitting a list under the provisions of paragraph 1 of this Article shall submit to the Secretariat a copy of all domestic laws and regulations applicable to the protection of such species, together with any interpretations which the Party may deem appropriate or the Secretariat may request. The Party shall, for as long as the species in question is included in Appendix III, submit any amendments of such laws and regulations or any new interpretations as they are adopted.

#### **Article XVII**

##### **Amendment of the Convention**

1. An extraordinary meeting of the Conference of the Parties shall be convened by the Secretariat on the written

request of at least one-third of the Parties to consider and adopt amendments to the present Convention. Such amendments shall be adopted by a two-thirds majority of Parties present and voting. For these purposes "Parties present and voting" means Parties present and casting an affirmative or negative vote. Parties abstaining from voting shall not be counted among the two-thirds required for adopting an amendment.

2. The text of any proposed amendment shall be communicated by the Secretariat to all Parties at least 90 days before the meeting.

3. An amendment shall enter into force for the Parties which have accepted it 60 days after two-thirds of the Parties have deposited an instrument of acceptance of the amendment with the Depositary Government. Thereafter, the amendment shall enter into force for any other Party 60 days after that Party deposits its instrument of acceptance of the amendment.

#### **Article XVIII**

##### **Resolution of disputes**

1. Any dispute which may arise between two or more Parties with respect to the interpretation or application of the provisions of the present Convention shall be subject to negotiation between the Parties involved in the dispute.

2. If the dispute cannot be resolved in accordance with paragraph 1 of this Article, the Parties may, by mutual consent, submit the dispute to arbitration, in particular that of the Permanent Court of Arbitration at The Hague, and the Parties submitting the dispute shall be bound by the arbitral decision.

#### **Article XIX**

##### **Signature**

The present Convention shall be open for signature at Washington until 30th April 1973 and thereafter at Berne until 31st December 1974.

#### **Article XX**

##### **Ratification, acceptance, approval**

The present Convention shall be subject to ratification, acceptance or approval. Instruments of ratification, acceptance or approval shall be deposited with the Government of the Swiss Confederation which shall be the Depositary Government.

#### **Article XXI**

##### **Accession**

The present Convention shall be open indefinitely for accession. Instruments of accession shall be deposited with the Depositary Government.

**Article XXII****Entry into force**

1. The present Convention shall enter into force 90 days after the date of deposit of the tenth instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, with the Depository Government.

2. For each State which ratifies, accepts or approves the present Convention or accedes thereto after the deposit of the tenth instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, the present Convention shall enter into force 90 days after the deposit by such State of its instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession.

**Article XXIII****Reservations**

1. The provisions of the present Convention shall not be subject to general reservations. Specific reservations may be entered in accordance with the provisions of this Article and Articles XV and XVI.

2. Any State may, on depositing its instrument of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, enter a specific reservation with regard to:

- (a) any species included in Appendix I, II or III; or
- (b) any parts or derivatives specified in relation to a species included in Appendix III.

3. Until a Party withdraws its reservation entered under the provisions of this Article, it shall be treated as a State not a party to the present Convention with respect to trade in the particular species or parts or derivatives specified in such reservation.

**Article XXIV****Denunciation**

Any Party may denounce the present Convention by written notification to the Depository Government at any time. The denunciation shall take effect twelve months after the Depository Government has received the notification.

**Article XXV****Depository**

1. The original of the present Convention, in the Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish languages, each version being equally authentic, shall be deposited with the Depository Government, which shall transmit certified copies thereof to all States that have signed it or deposited instruments of accession to it.

2. The Depository Government shall inform all signatory and acceding States and the Secretariat of signatures, deposit of instruments of ratification, acceptance, approval or accession, entry into force of the present Convention, amendments thereto, entry and withdrawal of reservations and notifications of denunciation.

3. As soon as the present Convention enters into force, a certified copy thereof shall be transmitted by the Depository Government to the Secretariat of the United Nations for

registration and publication in accordance with Article 102 of the Charter of the United Nations.

**In witness whereof** the undersigned Plenipotentiaries, being duly authorized to that effect, have signed the present Convention.

**Done at Washington** this third day of March, One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-three.

**Appendix I****Interpretation:**

1. Species included in this Appendix are referred to:

- (a) by the name of the species; or
- (b) as being all of the species included in a higher taxon or designated part thereof.

2. The abbreviation "spp." is used to denote all species of a higher taxon.

3. Other references to taxa higher than species are for the purposes of information or classification only.

4. An asterisk (\*) placed against the name of a species or higher taxon indicates that one or more geographically separate populations, subspecies or species of that taxon are included in Appendix II and that these populations, subspecies or species are excluded from Appendix I.

5. The symbol (†) followed by a number placed against the name of a species or higher taxon indicates the exclusion from that species or taxon of designated geographically separate populations, subspecies or species as follows:

†101 *Lemur catta*

†102 Australian population

6. The symbol (§) followed by a number placed against the name of a species denotes that only a designated geographically separate population or subspecies of that species is included in this Appendix, as follows:

‡201 Italian population only

7. The symbol (\$) placed against the name of a species or higher taxon indicates that the species concerned are protected in accordance with the International Whaling Commission's schedule of 1972.

**Fauna****Mammalia****Marsupialia****Macropodidae**

*Macropus parma*

*Onychogalea frenata*

*O. lunata*

*Lagorchestes hirsutus*

*Lagostrophus fasciatus*

*Caloprymnus campestris*

*Bettongia penicillata*

*B. lesueur*

*B. tropica*

**Phalangeridae**

*Wylula squamicaudata*

**Burramyidae**

*Burramys parvus*

- Vombatidae**  
*Lasiorhinus gillespiei*
- Peramelidae**  
*Perameles bougainville*  
*Chaeropus ecaudatus*  
*Macrotis lagotis*  
*M. leucura*
- Dasyuridae**  
*Planigale tenuirostris*  
*P. subtilissima*  
*Sminthopsis psammophila*  
*S. longicaudata*  
*Antechinomys laniger*  
*Myrmecobius fasciatus rufus*
- Thylacinidae**  
*Thylacinus cynocephalus*
- Primates**
- Lemuridae**  
*Lemur* spp. \*†101  
*Lepilemur* spp.  
*Haplemur* spp.  
*Allocebus* spp.  
*Cheirogaleus* spp.  
*Mirocebus* spp.  
*Phaner* spp.
- Indriidae**  
*Indri* spp.  
*Propithecus* spp.  
*Avahi* spp.
- Daubentonidae**  
*Daubentonia madagascariensis*
- Callithricidae**  
*Leontopithecus (Leontideus)* spp.  
*Callimico goeldii*
- Cebidae**  
*Saimiri oerstedii*  
*Chiropotes albinasus*  
*Cacajao* spp.  
*Alouatta palliata (villosa)*  
*Ateles geoffroyi frontatus*  
*A. g. panamensis*  
*Brachyteles arachnoides*
- Cercopithecoidea**  
*Cercocebus galeritus galeritus*  
*Macaca silenus*  
*Colobus badius rufomitratus*  
*C. b. kirkii*  
*Presbytis geei*  
*P. pileatus*  
*P. entellus*  
*Nasalis larvatus*  
*Simias concolor*  
*Pygathrix nemaeus*
- Hylobatidae**  
*Hylobates* spp.  
*Symphalangus syndactylus*
- Pongidae**  
*Pongo pygmaeus pygmaeus*  
*P. p. abelii*  
*Gorilla gorilla*
- Edentata**
- Dasypodidae**  
*Priddontes giganteus (= maximus)*
- Pholidota**
- Manidae**  
*Manis temmincki*
- Lagomorpha**
- Leporidae**  
*Romerolagus diazi*  
*Caprolagus hispidus*
- Rodentia**
- Sciuridae**  
*Cynomys mexicanus*
- Castoridae**  
*Castor fiber birulaia*  
*Castor canadensis mexicanus*
- Muridae**  
*Zyromys pedunculatus*  
*Leporillus conditor*  
*Pseudomys novaehollandiae*  
*P. praeconis*  
*P. shortridgei*  
*P. fumeus*  
*P. occidentalis*  
*P. fieldi*  
*Notomys aquilo*  
*Xeromys myoides*
- Chinchillidae**  
*Chinchilla brevicaudata boliviana*
- Cetacea**
- Platanistidae**  
*Platanista gangetica*
- Eschrichtidae**  
*Eschrichtius robustus (glaucus)* §
- Balaenopteridae**  
*Balaenoptera musculus* §  
*Megaptera novaeangliae* §
- Balaenidae**  
*Balaena mysticetus* §  
*Eubalaena* spp. §
- Carnivora**
- Canidae**  
*Canis lupus monstabilis*  
*Vulpes velox hebes*
- Viverridae**  
*Prionodon pardicolor*
- Ursidae**  
*Ursus americanus emmonsii*  
*U. arctos pruinosus*  
*U. arctos* \*†201  
*U. a. nelsoni*
- Mustelidae**  
*Mustela nigripes*  
*Lutra longicaudis (platensis / annectens)*

*L. felina*  
*L. provocax*  
*Pteronura brasiliensis*  
*Aonyx microdon*  
*Enhydra lutris nereis*  
Hyaenidae  
*Hyaena brunnea*  
Felidae  
*Felis planiceps*  
*F. nigripes*  
*F. concolor coryi*  
*F. c. costaricensis*  
*F. c. cougar*  
*F. temmincki*  
*Felis bengalensis bengalensis*  
*F. yagouaroundi cacomitli*  
*F. y. fossata*  
*F. y. panamensis*  
*F. y. tolteca*  
*F. pardalis mearnsi*  
*F. p. mitis*  
*F. wiedii nicaraguae*  
*F. w. salvinia*  
*F. tigrina oncella*  
*F. marmorata*  
*F. jacobita*  
*F. (Lynx) rufa escuinapae*  
*Neofelis nebulosa*  
*Panthera tigris\**  
*P. pardus*  
*P. uncia*  
*P. onca*  
*Acinonyx jubatus*

## Pinnipedia

Phocidae  
*Monachus spp.*  
*Mirounga angustirostris*

## Proboscidea

Elephantidae  
*Elephas maximus*

## Sirenia

Dugongidae  
*Dugong dugon* \*†102

Trichechidae  
*Trichechus manatus*  
*T. inunguis*

## Perissodactylia

Equidae  
*Equus przewalskii*  
*E. hemionus hemionus*  
*E. h. khur*  
*E. zebra zebra*

Tapiridae  
*Tapirus pinchaque*  
*T. bairdii*  
*T. indicus*

## Rhinocerotidae

*Rhinoceros unicornis*  
*R. sondaicus*  
*Didermocerus sumatrensis*  
*Ceratotherium simum cottoni*

## Artiodactyla

## Suidae

*Sus salvanius*  
*Babirusa babirusa*

## Camelidae

*Vicugna vicugna*  
*Camelus bactrianus*

## Cervidae

*Moschus moschiferus moschiferus*  
*Axis (Hyelaphus) porcinus annamiticus*  
*A. (Hyelaphus) calamianensis*  
*A. (Hyelaphus) kuhlii*  
*Cervus duvauceli*  
*C. eldi*  
*C. elaphus hanglu*  
*Hippocamelus bisulcus*  
*H. antisiensis*  
*Blastoceros dichotomus*  
*Ozotoceros bezoarticus*  
*Pudu pudu*

## Antilocapridae

*Antilocapra americana sonoriensis*  
*A. a. peninsularis*

## Bovidae

*Bubalus (Anoa) mindorensis*  
*B. (Anoa) depressicornis*  
*B. (Anoa) quarlesi*  
*Bos gaurus*  
*B. (grunniens) mutus*  
*Novibos (Bos) sauveli*  
*Bison bison athabascae*  
*Kobus leche*  
*Hippotragus niger variani*  
*Oryx leucoryx*  
*Damaliscus dorcas dorcas*  
*Saiga tatarica mongolica*  
*Nemorhaedus goral*  
*Capricornis sumatraensis*  
*Rupicapra rupicapra ornata*  
*Capra falconeri jerdoni*  
*C. f. megaceros*  
*C. f. chiltanensis*  
*Ovis orientalis ophion*  
*O. ammon hodgsoni*  
*O. vignei*

## Aves

## Tinamiformes

Tinamidae  
*Tinamus solitarius*

## Podicipediformes

Podicipedidae  
*Podilymbus gigas*

## Procellariiformes

## Diomedidae

*Diomedea albatrus*

## Pelecaniformes

## Sulidae

*Sula abbotti*

## Fregatidae

*Fregata andrewsi*

## Ciconiiformes

## Ciconiidae

*Ciconia ciconia boyciana*

## Threskiornithidae

*Nipponia nippon*

## Anseriformes

## Anatidae

*Anas aucklandica nesiotis**Anas oustaleti**Anas laysanensis**Anas diazi**Cairina scutulata**Rhodonessa caryophyllacea**Branta canadensis leucopareia**Branta sandvicensis*

## Falconiformes

## Cathartidae

*Vultur gryphus**Gymnogyps californianus*

## Accipitridae

*Pithecophaga jefferyi**Harpia harpyja**Haliaetus l. leucocephalus**Haliaetus heliaca adalberti**Halicetus albicilla groenlandicus*

## Falconidae

*Falco peregrinus anatum**Falco peregrinus tundrius**Falco peregrinus peregrinus**Falco peregrinus babylicus*

## Galliformes

## Megapodiidae

*Macrocephalon maleo*

## Craidae

*Crax blumenbachii**Pipile p. pipile**Pipile jacutinga**Mitu mitu mitu**Oreophasis derbianus*

## Trogonidae

*Trogon cupido attwateri*

## Phasianidae

*Colinus virginianus ridgwayi**Tragopan blythii**Tragopan caboti**Tragopan melanocephalus**Lophophorus sclateri**Lophophorus lhuysii**Lophophorus impejanus**Crossoptilon mantchuricum**Crossoptilon crossoptilon**Lophura swinhoii**Lophura imperialis**Lophura edwardsii**Syrmaticus ellioti**Syrmaticus humiae**Syrmaticus mikado**Polyplectron emphanum**Tetraogallus tibetanus**Tetraogallus caspius**Cyrtonyx montezumae merriami*

## Gruiformes

## Gruidae

*Grus japonensis**Grus leucogeranus**Grus americana**Grus canadensis pulla**Grus canadensis nesiotis**Grus nigricollis**Grus vipio**Grus monacha*

## Rallidae

*Tricholimnas sylvestris*

## Rhynochetidae

*Rhynochetos jubatus*

## Otididae

*Eupodotis bengalensis*

## Charadriiformes

## Scolopacidae

*Numenius borealis**Tringa guttifer*

## Laridae

*Larus relictus*

## Columbiformes

## Columbidae

*Ducula mindorensis*

## Psittaciformes

## Psittacidae

*Strigops habroptilus**Rhynchopsitta pachyrhyncha**Amazona leucocephala**Amazona vittata**Amazona guildingii**Amazona versicolor**Amazona imperialis**Amazona rhodocorytha**Amazona petrei petrei**Amazona vinacea**Pyrrhura cruentata**Anodorhynchus glaucus**Anodorhynchus leari**Cyanopsitta spixii**Pionopsitta pileata*



*Aratinga guaruba*  
*Psittacula krameri echo*  
*Psephotus pulcherrimus*  
*Psephotus chrysopterygius*  
*Neophema chrysogaster*  
*Neophema splendida*  
*Cyanoramphus novaezelandiae*  
*Cyanoramphus auriceps forbesi*  
*Geopsittacus occidentalis*  
*Psittacus erithacus princeps*

Apodiformes

Trochilidae  
*Ramphodon dohrnii*

Trogoniformes

Trogonidae  
*Pharomachrus mocinno mocinno*  
*Pharomachrus mocinno costaricensis*

Strigiformes

Strigidae  
*Otus gurneyi*

Coraciiformes

Bucerotidae  
*Rhinoplax vigil*

Piciformes

Picidae  
*Dryocopus javensis richardsii*  
*Campephilus imperialis*

Passeriformes

Cotingidae  
*Cotinga maculata*  
*Xipholena atro-purpurea*

Pittidae  
*Pitta kochi*

Atrichornithidae  
*Atrichornis clamosa*

Muscicapidae  
*Picathartes gymnocephalus*  
*Picathartes oreas*  
*Psophodes nigrogularis*  
*Amytornis goyderi*  
*Dasyornis brachypterus longirostris*  
*Dasyornis broadbenti littoralis*

Sturnidae  
*Leucopsar rothschildi*

Meliphagidae  
*Meliphaga cassidix*

Zosteropidae  
*Zosterops albogularis*

Fringillidae  
*Spinus cucullatus*

**Amphibia**

## Urodela

## Cryptobranchidae

*Andrias* (= *Megalobatrachus*) *daavidianus japonicus*  
*Andrias* (= *Megalobatrachus*) *daavidianus daavidianus*

## Salientia

## Bufonidae

*Bufo superciliaris*  
*Bufo periglenes*  
*Nectophrynoides* spp.

## Atelopodidae

*Atelopus varius zeteki*

**Reptilia**

## Crocodylia

## Alligatoridae

*Alligator mississippiensis*  
*Alligator sinensis*  
*Melanosuchus niger*  
*Caiman crocodilus apaporiensis*  
*Caiman latirostris*

## Crocodylidae

*Tomistoma schlegelii*  
*Osteolaemus tetraspis tetraspis*  
*Osteolaemus tetraspis osborni*  
*Crocodylus cataphractus*  
*Crocodylus siamensis*  
*Crocodylus palustris palustris*  
*Crocodylus palustris kimbula*  
*Crocodylus novaeguineae mindorensis*  
*Crocodylus intermedius*  
*Crocodylus rhombifer*  
*Crocodylus moreletii*  
*Crocodylus niloticus*

## Gavialidae

*Gavialis gangeticus*

## Testudinata

## Emydidae

*Batagur baska*  
*Geoclemmys* (= *Damonia*) *hamiltonii*  
*Geoemyda* (= *Nicoria*) *tricarinata*  
*Kachuga tecta tecta*  
*Morenia ocellata*  
*Terrapene coahuila*

## Testudinidae

*Geochelone* (= *Testudo*) *elephantopus*  
*Geochelone* (= *Testudo*) *geometrica*  
*Geochelone* (= *Testudo*) *radiata*  
*Geochelone* (= *Testudo*) *yniphora*

## Cheloniidae

*Eretmochelys imbricata imbricata*  
*Lepidochelys kempii*

## Trionychidae

*Lissemys punctata punctata*  
*Trionyx ater*  
*Trionyx nigricans*  
*Trionyx gangeticus*  
*Trionyx hurum*

**Chelidae***Pseudemydura umbrina***Lacertilia****Varanidae***Varanus komodoensis*  
*Varanus flavescens*  
*Varanus bengalensis*  
*Varanus griseus***Serpentes****Boidae***Epicrates inornatus inornatus*  
*Epicrates subflavus*  
*Python molurus molurus***Rhynchocephalia****Sphenodontidae***Sphenodon punctatus***Pisces****Acipenseriformes****Acipenseridae***Acipenser brevirostrum*  
*Acipenser oxyrinchus***Osteoglossiformes****Osteoglossidae***Scleropages formosus***Salmoniformes****Salmonidae***Coregonus alpenae***Cypriniformes****Catostomidae***Chasmistes cujus***Cyprinidae***Probarbus jullieni***Siluriformes****Schilbeidae***Pangasianodon gigas***Perciformes****Percidae***Stizostedion vitreum glaucum***Mollusca****Naiadoida****Unionidae***Conradilla caelata*  
*Dromus dromas*  
*Epioblasma (= Dysnomia) florentina curtisi**Epioblasma (= Dysnomia) florentina florentina*  
*Epioblasma (= Dysnomia) sampsoni*  
*Epioblasma (= Dysnomia) sulcata perobliqua*  
*Epioblasma (= Dysnomia) torulosa gubernaculum*  
*Epioblasma (= Dysnomia) torulosa torulosa*  
*Epioblasma (= Dysnomia) turgidula*  
*Epioblasma (= Dysnomia) walkeri*  
*Fusconaia cuneolus*  
*Fusconaia edgariana*  
*Lampsilis higginsii*  
*Lampsilis orbiculata orbiculata*  
*Lampsilis satura*  
*Lampsilis virescens*  
*Plethobasis cicatricosus*  
*Plethobasis cooperianus*  
*Pleurobema plenum*  
*Potamilus (= Proptera) capax*  
*Quadrula intermedia*  
*Quadrula sparsa*  
*Toxolasma (= Carunculina) cylindrella*  
*Unio (Megalonaias?) nickliniana*  
*Unio (Lampsilis?) tampicoensis tecomatensis*  
*Villosa (= Micromya) trabalis***Flora****Araceae***Alocasia sanderiana*  
*Alocasia zebrina***Caryocaraceae***Caryocar costaricense***Caryophyllaceae***Gymnocarpus przewalskii*  
*Melandrium mongolicum*  
*Silene mongolica*  
*Stellaria pulvinata***Cupressaceae***Pilgerodendron uviferum***Cycadaceae***Encephalartos spp.*  
*Microcycas colocoloma*  
*Stangeria eriopus***Gentianaceae***Prepusa hookeriana***Humiriaceae***Vantanea barbourii***Juglandaceae***Engelhardtia pterocarpa***Leguminosae***Ammopiptanthus mongolicum*  
*Cynometra hemitomophylla*  
*Platymiscium pleiostachyum***Liliaceae***Aloe albida*  
*Aloe pillansii*  
*Aloe polyphylla*  
*Aloe thorncroftii*  
*Aloe vossii***Melastomaceae***Lavoisiera itambana***Meliaceae***Guarea longipetiola*  
*Tachigalia versicolor***Moraceae***Batocarpus costaricense*

## Orchidaceae

*Cattleya jongheana*  
*Cattleya skinneri*  
*Cattleya trianae*  
*Didiciea cunninghamii*  
*Laelia lobata*  
*Lycaste virginalis* var. *alba*  
*Peristeria elata*

## Pinaceae

*Abies guatemalensis*  
*Abies nebrodensis*

## Podocarpaceae

*Podocarpus costalis*  
*Podocarpus parlatoresi*

## Proteaceae

*Orothamnus zeyheri*  
*Protea odorata*

## Rubiaceae

*Balmea stormae*

## Saxifragaceae (Grossulariaceae)

*Ribes sardoum*

## Taxaceae

*Fitzroya cupressoides*

## Ulmaceae

*Celtis aetnensis*

## Welwitschiaceae

*Welwitschia bainesii*

## Zingiberaceae

*Hedychium philippinense*

## Appendix II

## Interpretation:

1. Species included in this Appendix are referred to:
  - (a) by the name of the species; or
  - (b) as being all of the species included in a higher taxon or designated part thereof.
2. The abbreviation "spp." is used to denote all the species of a higher taxon.
3. Other references to taxa higher than species are for the purposes of information or classification only.
4. An asterisk (\*) placed against the name of a species or higher taxon indicates that one or more geographically separate populations, subspecies or species of that taxon are included in Appendix I and that these populations, subspecies or species are excluded from Appendix II.
5. The symbol (#) followed by a number placed against the name of a species or higher taxon designates parts or derivatives which are specified in relation thereto for the purposes of the present Convention as follows:
  - # 1 designates root
  - # 2 designates timber
  - # 3 designates trunks
6. The symbol (†) followed by a number placed against

the name of a species or higher taxon indicates the exclusion from that species or taxon of designated geographically separate populations, subspecies, species or groups of species as follows:

†101 species which are not succulents

7. The symbol (‡) followed by a number placed against the name of a species or higher taxon denotes that only designated geographically separate populations, subspecies or species of that species or taxon are included in this Appendix as follows:

‡ 201 All North American subspecies

‡ 202 New Zealand species

‡ 203 All species of the family in the Americas

‡ 204 Australian population.

## Fauna

## Mammalia

## Marsupialia

## Macropodidae

*Dendrolagus inustus*  
*Dendrolagus ursinus*

## Insectivora

## Erinaceidae

*Erinaceus frontalis*

## Primates

## Lemuridae

*Lemur catta*

## Lorisidae

*Nycticebus coucang*  
*Loris tardigradus*

## Cebidae

*Cebus capucinus*

## Cercopithecoidea

*Macaca sylvanus*  
*Colobus badius gordonorum*  
*Colobus verus*  
*Rhinopithecus roxellanae*  
*Presbytis johnii*

## Pongidae

*Pan paniscus*  
*Pan troglodytes*

## Edentata

## Myrmecophagidae

*Myrmecophaga tridactyla*  
*Tamandua tetradactyla chapadensis*

## Bradypodidae

*Bradypus boliviensis*

## Pholidota

## Manidae

*Manis crassicaudata*  
*Manis pentadactyla*  
*Manis javanica*

**Lagomorpha****Leporidae***Nesolagus netscheri***Rodentia****Heteromyidae***Dipodomys phillipsii phillipsii***Sciuridae***Ratufa* spp.*Lariscus hosei***Castoridae***Castor canadensis frondator**Castor canadensis septentinus***Cricetidae***Ondatra zibethicus bernardi***Canidae***Canis lupus pallipes**Canis lupus irremotus**Canis lupus crassodon**Chrysocyon brachyurus**Cuon alpinus***Ursidae***Ursus (Thalarchos) maritimus**Ursus arctos* \*†201*Helarctos malayanus***Procyonidae***Ailurus fulgens***Mustelidae***Martes americana atrata***Viveridae***Prionodon linsang**Cynogale bennetti**Helogale derbianus***Felidae***Felis yagouaroundi*\**Felis colocolo concolor**Felis colocolo crespoid**Felis colocolo budini**Felis concolor missoulensis**Felis concolor mayensis**Felis concolor azteca**Felis serval**Felis lynx isabellina**Felis wiedii*\**Felis pardalis*\**Felis tigrina*\**Felis (= Caracal) caracal**Panthera leo persica**Panthera tigris altaica (= amurensis)***Pinnipedia****Otariidae***Arctocephalus australis**Arctocephalus galapagoensis**Arctocephalus philippii**Arctocephalus townsendi***Phocidae***Mirounga australis**Mirounga tona***Tubulidentata****Orycteropidae***Orycteropus afer***Sirenia****Dugongidae***Dugong dugon*\* †204**Trichechidae***Trichechus senegalensis***Perissodactyla****Equidae***Equus hemionus*\***Tapiridae***Tapirus terrestris***Rhinocerotidae***Diceros bicornis***Artiodactyla****Hippopotamidae***Choeropus liberiensis***Cervidae***Cervus elaphus bactrianus**Pudu mephistophiles***Antilocapridae***Antilocapra americana mexicana***Bovidae***Cephalophus monticola**Oryx (tao) dammah**Addax nasomaculatus**Pantholops hodgsoni**Capra falconeri*\**Ovis ammon*\**Ovis canadensis***Aves****Sphenisciformes****Spheniscidae***Spheniscus demersus***Rheiformes****Rheidae***Rhea americana albescens**Pterocnemia pennata pennata**Pterocnemia pennata garleppi***Tinamiformes****Tinamidae***Rhynchotus rufescens rufescens**Rhynchotus rufescens pallescens**Rhynchotus rufescens maculicollis***Ciconiiformes****Ciconiidae***Ciconia nigra***Threskiornithidae***Geronticus calvus*

*Platalea leucorodia*  
 Phoenicopteridae  
*Phoenicopterus ruber chilensis*  
*Phoenicoparrus andinus*  
*Phoenicoparrus jamesi*

Pelecaniformes  
 Pelecanidae  
*Pelecanus crispus*

Anseriformes  
 Anatidae  
*Anas aucklandica aucklandica*  
*Anas aucklandica chlorotis*  
*Anas bernieri*  
*Dendrocygna arborea*  
*Sarkidiornis melanotos*  
*Anser albifrons gambelli*  
*Cygnus bewickii jankowskii*  
*Cygnus melancoryphus*  
*Coscoroba coscoroba*  
*Branta ruficollis*

Falconiformes  
 Accipitridae  
*Gypaetus barbatus meridionalis*  
*Aquila chrysaetos*  
 Falconidae  
 Spp. \*

Galliformes  
 Megapodiidae  
*Megapodius freycinet nicobariensis*  
*Megapodius freycinet abbotti*  
 Tetraonidae  
*Tympanuchus cupido pinnatus*  
 Phasianidae  
*Francolinus ochropectus*  
*Francolinus swierstrai*  
*Catreus wallichii*  
*Polyplectron malacense*  
*Polyplectron germaini*  
*Polyplectron bicalcaratum*  
*Gallus sonneratii*  
*Argusianus argus*  
*Ithaginus cruentus*  
*Cyrtonyx montezumae montezumae*  
*Cyrtonyx montezumae mearnsi*

Gruiformes  
 Gruidae  
*Balearica regulorum*  
*Grus canadensis pratensis*  
 Rallidae  
*Gallirallus australis hectori*  
 Otididae  
*Chlamydotis undulata*  
*Choriotis nigriceps*  
*Otis tarda*

Charadriiformes  
 Scolopacidae  
*Numenius tenuirostris*  
*Numenius minutus*  
 Laridae  
*Larus brunneicephalus*

Columbiformes  
 Columbidae  
*Gallicolumba luzonica*  
*Goura cristata*  
*Goura scheepmakeri*  
*Goura victoria*  
*Caloenas nicobarica pelewensis*

Psittaciformes  
 Psittacidae  
*Coracopsis nigra barklyi*  
*Prosopiea personata*  
*Eunymphicus cornutus*  
*Cyanoramphus unicolor*  
*Cyanoramphus novaezelandiae*  
*Cyanoramphus malherbi*  
*Poicephalus robustus*  
*Tanygnathus luzoniensis*  
*Probosciger aterrimus*

Cuculiformes  
 Musophagidae  
*Turaco corythaix*  
*Gallirex porphyreolophus*

Strigiformes  
 Strigidae  
*Otus nudipes newtoni*

Coraciiformes  
 Bucerotidae  
*Buceros rhinoceros rhinoceros*  
*Buceros bicornis*  
*Buceros hydrocorax hydrocorax*  
*Aceros narcondami*

Piciformes  
 Picidae  
*Picus squamatus flavirostris*

Passeriformes  
 Cotingidae  
*Rupicola rupicola*  
*Rupicola peruviana*  
 Pittidae  
*Pitta brachyura nympha*  
 Hirundinidae  
*Pseudochelidon sirintarae*  
 Paradisaeidae  
 Spp.

**Muscicapidae***Muscicapa ruecki***Fringillidae***Spinus yarrellii***Amphibia****Urodela****Ambystomidae***Ambystoma mexicanum**Ambystoma dumerillii**Ambystoma lermaensis***Salientia****Bufo***Bufo retiformis***Reptilia****Crocodylia****Alligatoridae***Caiman crocodilus crocodilus**Caiman crocodilus yacare**Caiman crocodilus fuscus (chiapasius)**Paleosuchus palpebrosus**Paleosuchus trigonatus***Crocodylidae***Crocodylus johnsoni**Crocodylus novaeguineae novaeguineae**Crocodylus porosus**Crocodylus acutus***Testudinata****Emydidae***Clemmys muhlenbergi***Testudinidae***Chersine* spp.*Geochelone* spp.\**Gopherus* spp.*Homopus* spp.*Kinixys* spp.*Malacochersus* spp.*Pyxis* spp.*Testudo* spp.\***Cheloniidae***Caretta caretta**Chelonia mydas**Chelonia depressa**Eretmochelys imbricata bissa**Lepidochelys olivacea***Dermochelidae***Dermochelys coriacea***Pelomedusidae***Podocnemis* spp.**Lacertilia****Teiidae***Cnemidophorus hyperythrus***Iguanidae***Conolophus pallidus**Conolophus subcristatus**Amblyrhynchus cristatus**Phrynosoma coronatum blainvillei***Helodermatidae***Heloderma suspectum**Heloderma horridum***Varanidae***Varanus* spp.\***Serpentes****Boidae***Epicrates cenchris cenchris**Eunectes notaeus**Constrictor constrictor**Python* spp.\***Colubridae***Cyclagras gigas**Pseudoboa cloelia**Elachistodon westermanni**Thamnophis elegans hammondi***Pisces****Acipenseriformes****Acipenseridae***Acipenser fulvescens**Acipenser sturio***Osteoglossiformes****Osteoglossidae***Arapaima gigas***Salmoniformes****Salmonidae***Stenodus leucichthys leucichthys**Salmo chrysogaster***Cypriniformes****Cyprinidae***Plagopterus argentissimus**Ptychocheilus lucius***Atheriniformes****Cyprinodontidae***Cynolebias constanciae**Cynolebias marmoratus**Cynolebias minimus**Cynolebias opalescens**Cynolebias splendens***Poeciliidae***Xiphophorus couchianus***Coelacanthiformes****Coelacanthidae***Latimeria chalumnae***Ceratodiformes****Ceratodidae***Neoceratodus forsteri*

**Mollusca**

## Naiadoida

## Unionidae

- Cyprogenia aberti*
- Epioblasma* (= *Dysnomia*) *torulosa rangiana*
- Fusconaia subrotunda*
- Lampsilis brevicula*
- Lexingtonia dolabelloides*
- Pleorobema clava*

## Stylommatophora

## Camaenidae

- Papustyla* (= *Papuina*) *pulcherrima*

## Paraphantidae

- Paraphanta* spp. †202

## Prosobranchia

## Hydrobiidae

- Coahuilix hubbsi*
- Cochliopina milleri*
- Durangonella coahuilae*
- Mexipyrigus carranzae*
- Mexipyrigus churinceanus*
- Mexipyrigus escobeda*
- Mexipyrigus lugoi*
- Mexipyrigus mojarralis*
- Mexipyrigus multilineatus*
- Mexithauma quadripaludium*
- Nymphophilus minckleyi*
- Paludiscala caramba*

**Insecta**

## Lepidoptera

## Papilionidae

- Parnassius apollo apollo*

**Flora**

## Apocynaceae

- Pachypodium* spp.

## Araliaceae

- Panax quinquefolium* # 1

## Araucariaceae

- Araucaria araucana* # 2

## Cactaceae

- Cactaceae spp. †203
- Rhipsalis* spp.

## Compositae

- Saussurea lappa* # 1

## Cyatheaceae

- Cyathea* (*Hemitelea*) *capensis* # 3
- Cyathea dredgei* # 3
- Cyathea mexicana* # 3
- Cyathea* (*Alsophila*) *salvinii* # 3

## Dioscoreaceae

- Dioscorea deltoidea* # 1

## Euphorbiaceae

- Euphorbia* spp. †101

## Fagaceae

- Quercus copeyensis* # 2

## Leguminosae

- Thermopsis mongolica*

## Liliaceae

- Aloe* spp.\*

## Meliaceae

- Swietenia humilis* # 2

## Orchidaceae

- Spp.\*

## Palmae

- Arenga ipot*
- Phoenix hanceana* var. *philippinensis*
- Zalacca clemensiana*

## Portulacaceae

- Anacampseros* spp.

## Primulaceae

- Cyclamen* spp.

## Solanaceae

- Solanum sylvestris*

## Sterculiaceae

- Basiloxylon excelsum* # 2

## Verbenaceae

- Caryopteris mongolica*

## Zygophyllaceae

- Guaiacum sanctum* # 2

**Appendix III**

This appendix will include the endangered species of the signing country. A list is being prepared and will be provided at the appropriate time.

**Appendix IV**

**Convention on international trade in endangered species of wild fauna and flora**

**Export Permit No.**.....

*Exporting Country:*

*Valid Until: (Date)*

This permit is issued to: .....

address: .....

who declares that he is aware of the provisions of the Convention, for the purpose of exporting: .....

specimen(s), or part(s) or derivative(s) of specimen(s)<sup>1</sup>  
of a species listed in Appendix I  
Appendix II  
Appendix III of the Convention as specified below. } 2

(bred in captivity or cultivated in .....)<sup>2</sup>

This (these) specimen(s) is (are) consigned to: .....

address: ..... country: .....

at ..... on .....

.....  
(signature of the applicant for the permit)

at ..... on .....

.....  
(stamp and signature of the Management Authority  
issuing the export permit)

<sup>1</sup> Indicate the type of product

<sup>2</sup> Delete if not applicable



Description of the specimen(s) or part(s) or derivative(s) of specimen(s), including any mark(s) affixed:

**Living Specimens**

<i>Species</i> (scientific and common name)	<i>Number</i>	<i>Sex</i>	<i>Size</i> (or volume)	<i>Mark</i> (if any)

**Parts or Derivatives**

<i>Species</i> (scientific and common name)	<i>Quantity</i>	<i>Type of Goods</i>	<i>Mark</i> (if any)

*Stamps of the authorities inspecting:*

- (a) on exportation
- (b) on importation\*

\*This stamp voids this permit for further trade purposes, and this permit shall be surrendered to the Management Authority.

APPENDIX 6

Paper Concerning Captive Wildlife

in British Columbia

Presented by Wallace Macgregor,

B.C. Fish & Wildlife Branch



CAPTIVE WILDLIFE SEMINAR  
BRITISH COLUMBIA FISH & WILDLIFE BRANCH  
WALLACE MACGREGOR  
JANUARY, 1977

Introduction

British Columbia is vitally interested in the potential benefits and problems associated with wildlife in captivity. We have not yet developed clear policy direction on captive wildlife. We hope that this meeting will provide constructive ideas which can be used in policy formation.

Present Status

Our present regulations govern the capture and possession of wildlife (big game, game birds, fur bearers and raptors) and non-idigenous species over 25 pounds in body weight. We have recommended that the Wildlife Act be amended to include all non-domestic vertebrates as wildlife. We have issued permits for zoos and a few "game farms" and for falconry. Regulations governing keeping animals and birds in captivity provide the following:

- 1) Permit required - a) Commercial, b) Scientific, c) Educational,  
d) Private use.
- 2) Enclosures to provide - a) protection for animals held,  
b) prevention of escape, c) protection of public.
- 3) Records kept and submitted annually.
- 4) Fees of \$100/year for commercial permits.

The following animals are exempted from the permit requirement: fur-bearers, and not more than two each of squirrel, foxes, raccoons, or neutered skunks.

In addition to permits to keep animals in captivity the Wildlife Act provides that permit to capture wildlife may be issued.

The issuance of these capture permits is decided on a case by case basis.

Items considered are:

- 1) purpose, scientific study, falconry, public display, breeding, etc.
- 2) species, age, sex, and number desired
- 3) location of proposed capture
- 4) method of capture and transport
- 5) expertise of individual
- 6) effects of capture on the population.

A copy of the permit regulations and regulations for keeping of animals in captivity is attached.

Our current regulations cover captive wildlife in zoos and private possession. We don't have regulations for game ranching such as is being considered by Manitoba and is being practiced in some areas of the U.S., Africa, New Zealand, and elsewhere.

Provided that adequate safeguards are included, ranching of wildlife may be the key to protecting wildlife habitat from competition with other competing land uses. It appears logical that native northern animals such as caribou, moose, elk and bison are better adapted to our boreal areas than would be domestic livestock. Because we have not really investigated the potential benefits and problems all we can do at this time is to raise some questions on the points to be discussed at this seminar.

Discussion considerations

1. Some valid reasons for holding wildlife in captivity may be as follows:
  - a) Preservation of scarce or depleted species
  - b) Scientific Research
  - c) Educational
  - d) Commercial
  - e) Private enjoyment
2. Some criteria on the desirability of permitting wildlife to be captured could include:
  - a) Should not harm indigenous species or their habitat
  - b) Should be under conditions that protect the wildlife and the public
  - c) Should be socially acceptable to a majority of our citizens
3. Property status:
  - a) Should they remain Crown property if they are kept on Crown lands under a grazing permit? What about offspring?
  - b) Should they be considered private property if kept under permit on private land?
  - c) Should marking of individual animals be required.
4. Should we give priority on requests for the capture and possession of wildlife to non-profit publicly administered institutions such as Universities and municipal zoological gardens over commercial or private groups?

5. Should permits for endangered species be issued to bona fide groups working for their preservation? - such as has been done on breeding experiments on certain raptors.
  - a) What criteria do we use on issuance?
  - b) What controls should Fish & Wildlife agencies impose on capture and possession of these species?
6. Should the wildlife agencies seek recommendations on standards for wildlife facilities from Zoological and Humane Societies?
7. We believe that a set of standards is probably desirable for Western Canada.
8. Isn't it better to work with S.P.C.A.'s and Zoological groups, on proper cages and enclosures, instead of independently trying to develop them?
9. Should a Fish and Wildlife agency be in the business of regulating zoos and exotic wildlife to protect native species, endangered exotics, or the public?
10. If a Fish and Wildlife agency assumes a role in regulating zoos and the trade in wildlife, particularly in the pet trade, will there be adequate staffing and funding to ensure compliance with regulations?
11. Are provincial Fish and Wildlife agencies the most knowledgeable organization with respect to diseases that may adversely affect wildlife or domestic livestock?
12. Isn't movement of wildlife presently being regulated by participating provinces at present? Before we issue an export permit for captive wildlife the permittee must have an import permit or approval from the receiving province.

A review of introductions of exotic animals indicate many unforeseen problems associated particularly with mammalian introductions both deliberate and accidental. Even with the best of enclosures there can be no guarantee that animals will not be released either deliberately or by accident. This fact should be kept in mind when considering captive wildlife.

In conclusion the British Columbia Fish and Wildlife Branch is eagerly looking forward to learning how other provinces approach the potential and actual problems and benefits associated with various captive wildlife programs. We are certain that this meeting will lead to improved understanding and better management.





APPENDIX 7

British Columbia Wildlife Act Regulations

Cumulated to

October 15, 1975



B.C. Reg. 17/69

Jan. 2, 1969

## WILDLIFE ACT

REGULATION MADE BY ORDER IN COUNCIL NO. 3984, APPROVED DECEMBER 13, 1968,  
AND AMENDMENTS FROM B.C. REG. 140/69, 141/69, 816/74, 676/75, 677/  
75, AND 678/75. (TO OCT. 15, 1975)

*Permit Regulations*

The Director of the Fish and Wildlife Branch of the Department of Recreation and Conservation, or his authorized representative, may, by the issuance of a permit in such form and having such content, conditions, limits, and period or periods (if any) as may be prescribed by him, authorize:-

1.01 A resident to angle for and kill game fish without a licence when in actual need for sustenance. (140/69)

2.01 A resident to hunt, trap, or kill wildlife during the open or closed season (816/74)

- (a) by the use of poison;
- (b) for agricultural-crop protection;
- (c) when in actual need for sustenance,
- (d) for controlling wildlife populations. (816/74)

and submit a record of wildlife killed to the issuer within 14 days after the expiration of the permit.

3.01 A person to hunt, trap, or kill wildlife during the open or closed season (816/74)

- (a) with a light between one hour after sunset and one hour before sunrise;
- (b) for scientific purposes;
- (c) for educational purposes;
- (d) in a wildlife sanctuary.

Subsection (c) shall be subject to fees as stated in Schedule B, payable within 14 days of the killing.

4.01 A resident to accompany a person who does not reside in the Province while hunting big game, provided no remuneration is accepted by the permittee, and provided the permittee submits reports required by the Act.

5.01 A person to search for wolves or coyotes from an aircraft.

6.01 A non-commercial organization to sell legally taken game meat or game fish.

6.02 The holder of a valid permit to keep upland game birds in captivity may sell his birds without a further permit. (140/69)

7.01 A person without a licence to kill black bear when actually causing damage to fish or fisheries facilities during the open or closed season.

8.01 A licensed trapper to set traps for and trap fur-bearing animals on a trap-line registered to another person.

9.01 A person to set traps for and trap fur-bearing animals during the open or closed season.

10.01 (1) Subject to subsection (2) a person to import into and (or) transport within the Province

- (a) any live game bird; or
- (b) the viable egg of a game bird; or
- (c) any live mammal.

(2) A person may, without a permit, import into and (or) transport within the Province

- (a) mammals and birds of a circus;
- (b) tailed monkeys, ocelots, raccoons, neutered skunks, chipmunks, squirrels, hampsters, gerbils, white mice, white rats, and such other animals as may be designated by the Director.

11.01 Subject to Section 11.02 a person to keep in captivity live wildlife, mammals or birds, subject to the following conditions and fees:- (140/69)

- (a) Commercial: For any commercial operation, the fee shall be \$100 for each calendar year or part thereof;
- (b) Scientific: For scientific purposes, no fee;
- (c) Educational: For educational purposes, no fee;
- (d) Private: For other than commercial, scientific, or educational purposes, but not in any case for public display, no fee;
- (e) Game birds only, no fee;

11.02 A person may without a permit keep in captivity

- (a) mammals and birds of a circus;
- (b) tailed monkeys, ocelots, raccoons, neutered skunks, chipmunks, squirrels, hampsters, gerbils, white mice, white rats, and such other animals as may be designated by the Director. (140/69)

11.03 Except for killer whales nothing in this section limits or affects the right of a municipality as defined in the Municipal Act or the City of Vancouver from providing by by-law or otherwise for the control of the conditions under which live wildlife, mammals or birds, may be kept in captivity. Where a by-law is promulgated, the provisions of this section shall not apply. (677/75)

12.01 A person to capture live wildlife or birds (other than crows, magpies, Japanese or European starlings, or English sparrows, for which no permit is necessary) subject to the following conditions:-

- (a) Application for a permit shall be made in writing to the Director at least 30 days prior to intended commencement and shall contain
  - (i) name and address of applicant and his authorization to possess live wildlife, mammals or birds;
  - (ii) the species, age, sex, and number of wildlife desired;
  - (iii) The location of the proposed capture;
  - (iv) the method of capture and transportation of captured wildlife.
- (b) The permittee shall, within 14 days of capture, notify in writing the permit-issuer of the following:-
  - (i) The species, age, sex, and number of wildlife captured, whether alive or dead;
  - (ii) The method and date of capture;
  - (iii) The location of the captured wildlife for purposes of inspection.
- (c) Permittee shall permanently mark the wildlife specified to be marked in the permit;
- (d) Permittee shall pay, at the time of inspection, a capture fee for each animal or bird taken as provided by Schedule A;
- (e) The fee for a permit to capture live wildlife shall be \$1.

12.02 Paragraphs (d) and (e) in this section shall not apply where the animal or bird is to be used for scientific purposes.

13.01 A person to export wildlife out of the Province.

#### SCHEDULE A

Mountain sheep	_____	\$200
Grizzly bear	_____	200
Moose, elk	_____	150
Caribou, mountain goat	_____	100
Cougar, wolf, black bear, deer	_____	75
Beaver, coyote, lynx, otter, wolverine	_____	50
Bobcat, eagle, osprey	_____	10
Peale's falcon	_____	200
Peregrine falcon	_____	20

(140/69)

SCHEDULE B

Mountain sheep, grizzly bear	_____	\$10
Moose, elk, caribou, mountain goat	_____	6
All other wildlife or birds	_____	1

APPENDIX 8

Regulations For Raptorial Birds

in British Columbia

- July 1974

by D.R. Halladay & I.J.M. Robertson,

B.C. Fish & Wildlife Branch





REGULATIONS FOR RAPTORIAL BIRDS  
IN BRITISH COLUMBIA

JULY, 1974

D.R. Halladay  
I.J.M. Robertson  
Fish and Wildlife Branch  
Department of Recreation and Conservation

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>Section</u>	<u>Page</u>
Definition	1
Policy	
Implementation	
Regulations	
1. Permits	
1.1. Permit	
1.2. Permitted uses	
1.3. Duration of permit	
1.4. Residence	
1.5. Experience	
1.6. Age	
1.7. Denial	
1.8. Renewal	2
1.9. Visitors	
2. Raptorial Bird Classification	
2.1. Class I Raptorial Birds	
2.2. Class II Raptorial Birds	
3. Capture	
3.1. Annual regulations	
3.2. Responsibility	
3.3. Personal limits	
3.4. Eyrie or nest limits	
3.5. Population status	
3.6. Animal type limits	3
3.7. Special regulations	
3.8. Prohibited areas	
4. Possession	
5. Disposal	
5.1. Possessed birds	
5.2. Captivity propagated birds	
5.3. Export	
5.4. Branch export limitation	
6. Reporting	
7. Fees	
8. Citizenship	4
Appendix I (a) "Application for Permit to Capture Raptorial Birds" - Form	
(b) "Application for a Permit to Possess Raptorial Birds" - Form	
Appendix II - Table 1 - "Class I Raptorial Birds in British Columbia."	
Table 2 - "Class II Raptorial Birds in British Columbia."	
Appendix III - "Raptorial Bird Capture Regulations - 1974."	
Appendix IV - "Conditions for Capture"	
Appendix V - "Queen Charlotte Island Capture Procedure"	
Appendix VI - "Minimum Requirements for the Keeping of Birds of Prey in British Columbia."	
- includes the North American Falconers Association report	
"Falconry Facilities and Equipment." -	

TABLE OF CONTENTS  
(continued)

<u>Section</u>	<u>Page</u>
Appendix VII - Marking birds reared through captive propagation	
Appendix VIII - "Raptorial Bird Report."	
Appendix IX - "Fees and Administrative Regions." (with map)	

REGULATIONS FOR RAPTORIAL BIRDS IN BRITISH COLUMBIA

Definition. Raptorial birds are animals of the orders Falconiformes and Strigiformes, and include all eagles, ospreys, falcons, hawks, owls and vultures.

Policy. It is the policy of the Department of Recreation and Conservation, acting through the Fish and Wildlife Branch, to conserve the raptorial bird species of British Columbia and to provide for all aspects of recreation involving them, within the scope of the Wildlife Act, Chapter 55.

Implementation of this policy will be by the following Regulations.

Regulations

1. Permits

1.1 Permit. No person may take, capture, possess or use a raptorial bird without first obtaining a valid permit. See Appendix I.

1.2 Permitted uses

Use categories (in order of priority, relative to abundance):

- 1.2.1. Scientific Study
- 1.2.2. Falconry
- 1.2.3. Public display - Zoos
- 1.2.4. Private possession

1.3. Duration of permit

Permits for the capture, possession and use of all raptors expire by December 31 each year unless otherwise designated.

1.4. Residence

1.4.1. Non-residents or persons taking up residence in B.C. less than one year prior to application are not eligible for permits to capture raptorial birds.

1.4.2. Permittees must notify the appropriate Regional Office of the Fish and Wildlife Branch in writing before changing the permanent residence of birds held under permit.

1.5. Experience

1.5.1. New residents to the Province desiring recognition of their previous experience with possessing raptorial birds under legal permit must provide written confirmation from the outside issuing management authority.

1.5.2. No person may be issued a permit to capture or possess a Class I raptorial bird unless he has legally possessed a Class II raptorial bird or birds for a continuous period of three years prior to his application.

1.6. Age

No person under 18 years of age may be issued a permit except where parental consent and acknowledgment of responsibility is given in writing assuring that the applicant conforms with all the requirements of the Wildlife Act, its regulations and supporting conditions.

- 1.7. Denial  
The Fish and Wildlife Branch reserves the right to deny the issuance of any permit to any person.
- 1.8. Renewal  
Applications (including fees) for renewal of permits, must be received by the Fish and Wildlife Branch before December 31 each year, when renewal is applicable.
- 1.9. Visitors  
Transport permits honouring foreign or non-resident Canadian raptorial bird licences, permits or falconry permits will be issued for special events on a short term basis. Organizations hosting such events are required to notify the appropriate Regional office of the Fish and Wildlife Branch of their locality and duration at least 30 days in advance.
2. Raptorial bird classification  
For management and administrative purposes, raptorial birds are in two classes:
- 2.1. Class I Raptorial birds include those species whose status or use is of special significance socially, administratively or biologically. Species in this group may be rare, endangered, require special care in captivity, potentially harmful to man or of international concern. See Appendix II, Table 1.
- 2.2. Class II Raptorial birds include those species whose status or use is not of special significance. See Appendix II, Table 2.
3. Capture
- 3.1. The total permitted capture of any raptorial bird species shall be in accordance with limits set annually by the Fish and Wildlife Branch. See Appendix III.
- 3.2. The capture of any raptorial bird shall be carried out by the permittee only, except when the Fish and Wildlife Branch effects the capture.
- 3.3. No person may capture more than two (2) raptorial birds per calendar year.
- 3.4. A minimum of one young bird must be left in each eyrie or nest. Where there are three or more young birds present, at least two must be left in the nest or eyrie. A minimum of two young must be left in each eyrie or nest of the peregrine falcon, gryfalcon and prairie falcon.
- 3.5. The capture of any species for any purpose will not be permitted where the Branch determines that such capture causes the decline of the population or where such capture is determined to be destructive of other and higher benefits and uses.

3.6. The capture of all raptorial birds, except owls, shall be confined to the young of the year except where adult birds are captured through:

- accidental injury
- causing a nuisance or damage to private property
- a need for scientific purposes

3.7. Special areas and procedures for the capture of certain raptorial bird species may be designated and described by the Fish and Wildlife Branch. See Appendix V.

3.8. The capture of raptorial birds is forbidden in urban and suburban areas.

4. Possession

No person may be issued a permit to possess raptorial birds unless pen (mews) or holding facilities conforming to the minimum standards described under Appendix VI are provided by the applicant and approved by an officer of the Fish and Wildlife Branch.

5. Diposal

5.1. Legally captured raptorial birds may be given, sold, bartered or exchanged by the holders of valid possession permits.

5.2. Raptorial birds raised through captive propagation after 31 December 1974 will become the property of the permit holder where such birds have permanent leg bands placed by the Fish and Wildlife Branch. See Appendix VII.

5.3. The export of any raptorial bird from British Columbia is forbidden unless authorized under permit. The export of Peregrine falcons, Gyrfalcons and Prairie falcons is prohibited.

5.4. The Fish and Wildlife Branch may prohibit the export of certain raptorial bird species.

6. Reporting

All permittees are required to provide a written report on the activity carried out under authority of their permit within 30 days of expiry date. See Appendix VIII.

7. Fees

Fees for the capture, possession and use of raptorial birds will be prescribed annually by the Fish and Wildlife Branch. See Appendix IX.

8. Citizenship

Persons who are not Canadian citizens are not eligible for permits to capture Raptorial birds in B.C. except for Scientific purposes authorized by the Fish and Wildlife Branch (See also sections 1.4. and 1.5. covering residence and experience).



APPLICATION FOR PERMIT TO CAPTURE RAPTORIAL BIRDS  
(to be completed in triplicate)

13-04  
13-019

SEND APPLICATION FOR SCIENTIFIC PERMITS TO: The Director, Fish and Wildlife Branch,  
Department of Recreation and Conservation,  
Parliament Buildings, Victoria, B.C.

SEND APPLICATION FOR CLASS I & II BIRDS TO: The Regional Supervisor, Fish and Wildlife  
Branch at regional office of proposed region  
of capture.

TO AVOID DELAYS ALL THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS MUST BE ANSWERED CLEARLY AND COMPLETELY,  
PLEASE PRINT.

1. Name of Applicant \_\_\_\_\_ Age (see item 10) \_\_\_\_\_ Yrs.

2. Address of applicant \_\_\_\_\_

3. Citizenship: Canadian other \_\_\_\_\_ (specify).

4. The number of the current permit now held to possess raptorial birds \_\_\_\_\_  
Address of Fish and Wildlife Branch office where possession permit issued \_\_\_\_\_

Location of birds now in your possession \_\_\_\_\_

5. Number, species, age and sex of birds now applied for. (Please read regulations and  
conditions for capture and possession of raptorial birds and keep your application  
within the limits set. Complete separate application forms for each bird.

6. Location of proposed capture: Administrative Region of Fish and Wildlife Branch:  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. Method of proposed capture and transportation of captured birds. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Proposed use for birds applied for: \_\_\_\_\_  
Applications for scientific purposes must be accompanied by a full project outline and  
a letter of support from a recognized research body.

9. Each separate application to capture for other than approved scientific study purposes,  
must be accompanied by a permit fee of \$1.00; cheque or money order should be made out  
to "Minister of Finance."

Date of Application \_\_\_\_\_ Signature of Applicant \_\_\_\_\_

10. If applicant is under 18 years of age the following declaration of parental consent must  
be completed before application will be considered.

I, (full name) \_\_\_\_\_ hereby give my consent  
to this application and acknowledge my responsibility to see that the applicant conforms  
with all the requirements of the Wildlife Act, its regulations and supporting conditions.

DATE \_\_\_\_\_ SIGNATURE \_\_\_\_\_  
Parent or legal guardian of applicant.

NOTE: The Fish and Wildlife Branch reserves the right to deny the issuance of any  
permit to any person.

APPLICATION FOR A PERMIT TO POSSESS RAPTORIAL BIRDS (FALCONIFORMES AND STRIGIFORMES)  
(submit in triplicate)

File No. 13-04  
13-020

SEND APPLICATION FOR SCIENTIFIC PERMITS TO: The Director, Fish and Wildlife Branch,  
Department of Recreation and Conservation,  
Parliament Buildings, Victoria, B.C.

SEND APPLICATION FOR CLASS I & II BIRDS TO: The Regional Supervisor, Fish and Wildlife  
Branch at Regional Office of Applicant's  
Region of residence.

1. Name of Applicant \_\_\_\_\_
2. Age of Applicant\* \_\_\_\_\_
3. Address of Applicant \_\_\_\_\_
4. Have you held a previous British Columbia permit to possess raptorial birds, Yes   
No
5. Number and Date of previous British Columbia possession Permit No. \_\_\_\_\_  
Date \_\_\_\_\_
6. Address of Fish and Wildlife Branch office who issued above listed previous possession  
permit \_\_\_\_\_
7. Full address at which birds are being and will be kept \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Number and Date of previous B.C. capture Permit No. \_\_\_\_\_  
Date \_\_\_\_\_  
where issued \_\_\_\_\_

The following is a complete list of ALL Class I and Class II Raptorial Birds in my possession

SPECIES	NO.	SEX	AGE	IDENTIFICATION (ie. leg band No.)

I hereby make application for a permit to possess the above listed birds until December 31, 197\_\_\_\_\_

I acknowledge that I am required by the regulations to promptly notify the issuer of any change in the above inventory of birds in my possession, whether by loss, sale, purchase or otherwise; also that I am to submit reports as required under Management Policy Section 6.

Date of Application \_\_\_\_\_ Signature of Applicant \_\_\_\_\_

\* If applicant is under 18 years of age the following declaration of parental consent must be completed before application will be considered.

I, (full name) \_\_\_\_\_ hereby give my consent to this application and acknowledge my responsibility to see that the applicant conforms with all the requirements of the Wildlife Act, its regulations and supporting conditions.

DATE \_\_\_\_\_ SIGNATURE \_\_\_\_\_  
Parent or legal guardian of applicant

NOTE: The Fish and Wildlife Branch reserves the right to deny the issuance of any permit to any person.

APPENDIX II

TABLE 1

## Class I Raptorial Birds in British Columbia

English Name	Scientific Name
Turkey Vulture	<u>Cathartes aura</u>
Goshawk	<u>Accipiter gentilis</u>
Coopers Hawk	<u>Accipiter cooperii</u>
Sharp-shinned Hawk	<u>Accipiter striatus</u>
* Ferruginous Hawk	<u>Buteo regalis</u>
* Golden Eagle	<u>Aquila Chrysaetos</u>
* Bald Eagle	<u>Haliaeetus leucocephalus</u>
Osprey	<u>Pandion Haliaeetus</u>
Gyr falcon	<u>Falco rusticolus</u>
Prairie falcon	<u>Falco mexicanus</u>
Peregrine falcon	<u>Falco peregrinus</u>
* Great Horned Owl	<u>Bubo virginianus</u>
Great Gray Owl	<u>Strix nebulosa</u>
Spotted Owl	<u>Strix occidentalis</u>
Burrowing Owl	<u>Speotyto cunicularia</u>
Flammulated Owl	<u>Otus flammeolus</u>

Included as Class I raptorial birds are all rare, accidental and exotic birds occurring in British Columbia of the Orders Falconiformes and Strigiformes but which are not listed in Tables 1 and 2.

- \* Class I raptors restricted for use by adults only, due to the potential hazard associated with handling these species.

APPENDIX IITable 2

## Class II Raptorial Birds in British Columbia

English Name	Scientific Name
Marsh Hawk	<u>Circus cyaneus</u>
Rough-legged Hawk	<u>Buteo lagopus</u>
Red-Tailed Hawk	<u>Buteo jamaicensis</u>
Swainson's Hawk	<u>Buteo swainsoni</u>
Merlin (Pigeon Hawk)	<u>Falco columbarius</u>
Kestrel (Sparrow Hawk)	<u>Falco sparverius</u>
Screech Owl	<u>Otus asio</u>
Long-eared Owl	<u>Asio otus</u>
Short-eared Owl	<u>Asio flammeus</u>
Barn Owl	<u>Tyto alba</u>
Snowy Owl	<u>Nyctea scandiaca</u>
Barred Owl	<u>Strix varia</u>
Hawk Owl	<u>Surnia ulula</u>
Boreal Owl	<u>Aegolius funereus</u>
Saw-whet Owl	<u>Aegolius acadicus</u>
Pygmy Owl	<u>Glaucidium gnoma</u>

APPENDIX III

## Raptorial Bird Capture Regulations

1974

SPECIES	RAPTOR CLASS	CAPTURE AREA	TYPE OF ANIMAL	LIMIT OF CAPTURE
Turkey Vulture	1	MA's 1, 5, 6, 7, 8 9, 10, 11, 13, 14 15.	Eyas or flying young of the year	To be set at Branch discretion.
Goshawk	1	Province wide	Eyas or flying young of the year except eyas only in MA 2	"
Coopers hawk	1	MA's 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 13, 14, 15, 16, & 19	Eyas or flying young of the year except eyas only in MA 2	"
Sharp-shinned Hawk	1	Province wide	Eyas or flying young of the year except eyas only in MA 2	"
Marsh Hawk	2	Province wide	Eyas or flying young of the year except eyas only in MA 2	"
Rough-legged Hawk	2	Province wide except MA 2	flying young of the year	"
Ferruginous Hawk	1	CLOSED	CLOSED	CLOSED
Red-tailed Hawk	2	Province wide except portions of MA 2 known as the Municipalities of Burnaby & Langley	Eyas or flying young of the year except eyas only in MA 2	To be set at Branch discretion
Swainson's Hawk	1	MA's 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 13, 14, 15 & 19	Eyas or flying young of the year	"
Golden Eagle	1	Province wide except MA's 2, 3, 17, 23 & 24	Eyas or flying young of the year	"
Bald Eagle	1	Province wide	Eyas or flying young of the year except eyas only in MA 2	"
Osprey	1	Province wide except MA's 2 & 6	Eyas only	"

APPENDIX III - page 2

Gyr falcon	1	Province-wide except MA's 1 & 2	Eyas or flying young of the year	To be set at Branch discretion
Prairie falcon	1	CLOSED	CLOSED	CLOSED
Peale's Peregrine	1	Queen Charlotte Island Study Area Harvest zone **	Eyas only	5 - 1 bird permits 1 permit per person
Other Peregrine falcons	1	CLOSED	CLOSED	CLOSED
Merlin (Pigeon Hawk)	1	All MA's except MA's 14 & 24	Eyas or flying young of the year except eyas only in MA 2	To be set at Branch discretion
Kestrel (Sparrow Hawk)	2	All MA's except MA 24	Eyas or flying young of the year except eyas only in MA 2	"
Screech Owl	2	MA's 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 22 & 23	All ages and sexes except eyas only in MA 2	"
Gt. Horned Owl	1	All MA's except MA 24	All ages and sexes except eyas only in MA 2	"
Long-eared Owl	2	All areas except MA's 23, 24, 25 & 26	All ages and sexes except eyas only in MA 2	"
Short-eared Owl	2	Province-wide	All ages and sexes except eyas only in MA 2	"
Barn Owl	2	MA's 1 & 2	All ages and sexes except eyas only in MA 2	"
Snowy Owl	1	All MA's except 1, 2 & 24	All ages and sexes	"
Barred Owl	1	MA's 9, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 27, & 28	All ages and sexes	"
Spotted Owl	1	CLOSED	CLOSED	CLOSED

APPENDIX III - page 3

Gt. Gray Owl	1	All MA's except 1, 2 3, 17 & 24	All ages and sexes	To be set at Branch discretion
Hawk Owl	2	MA's 26, 27 & 28	All ages and sexes	"
Burrowing Owl	1	CLOSED	CLOSED	CLOSED
Saw-whet Owl	2	All MA's except 26, 27 & 28	All ages and sexes except eyes only in MA 2	To be set at Branch discretion
Flammulated Owl	1	CLOSED	CLOSED	CLOSED
Pygmy Owl	2	All MA's except 26, 27 & 28	All ages and sexes	To be set at Branch discretion
All other raptorial Birds	1	CLOSED	CLOSED	CLOSED

\*\* Queen Charlotte Island study area, Harvest Zone - MA 24 on the east side  
of Moresby Island between Cumshewa Inlet and Juan Perez Sound.

(ie. 52°30' to 53°00' N. lat.)

APPENDIX IVConditions for Capture

1. Permittees must provide their own equipment, transportation and conduct their own capture, unless otherwise informed by the Fish and Wildlife Branch.
2. Permittees must provide their own map of scale no less than 4 miles to the inch (i.e. 1:250,000) on which they indicate locations of eyries visited for submission to the supervising Conservation Officer or the Regional office which issued the permit.
3. Fees where applicable are due and payable to the Director of the Fish and Wildlife Branch, c/o the Regional office issuing the permit.
4. The use of mist nets to capture birds is prohibited unless applicants fully justify their need to use them and are able to show proficiency in their use to the satisfaction of Branch officials.



APPENDIX V

QUEEN CHARLOTTE ISLAND

CAPTURE PROCEDURE

1. Branch officials will effect capture within the study area.
2. Permittees are not allowed into the capture area except where authorized to help Branch officials.

APPENDIX VI  
MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS  
FOR THE KEEPING OF BIRDS OF PREY  
IN BRITISH COLUMBIA

The Fish and Wildlife Branch endorses the recommendations of the Technical Advisory Committee of the North American Falconer's Association made in their report "Falconry Facilities and Equipment - Guidelines for Minimum Requirements." The specific recommendations made in this report covering "Housing" and "Food" are considered part of Provincial regulations under Branch Policy.

Consideration will be given to changing standards set for Housing and Food or for adding equipment requirements for 1975 regulations.

## FALCONRY FACILITIES AND EQUIPMENT

### Guidelines For Minimum Requirements

#### GENERAL

In response to planned preparation by the International Association of Game, Fish and Conservation Commissioners of a "Model Law", including provisions to regulate the sport of falconry, the North American Falconers' Association has proposed that such model law include the requirement for inspection of a prospective falconer's facilities and equipment as a prerequisite to his being granted a permit to practice the sport. To help insure that facilities and equipment meet minimum acceptable standards, the North American Falconers' Association has prepared this brochure describing such standards as a guide for wildlife management agency personnel of those states/provinces where an inspection system is adopted. It is recommended that state/provincial agencies also provide a copy of these guidelines to each applicant for a falconry permit to inform him of the standards by which his facilities and equipment will be judged.

Wide variations, especially in housing, may be expected. This brochure can hardly include descriptions of all acceptable systems. What are presented, however, are standards covering the more important aspects to be inspected and illustrations of basic principles involved. These are especially important in the case of the beginner. Where the more practiced falconer chooses to make adaptations, such are based on experience, and so long as the basic principles are not violated, such adaptations certainly are acceptable even though not specifically included here. In short, a considerable amount of common sense is called for in making the recommended inspections. We trust these pages will provide a basis upon which to apply one's common sense.

NAFA gratefully acknowledges the generous permission of Professor E. W. Jameson, Jr., to reproduce Figures 4 and 5 from The California Hawking Club's "A Beginners Manual of Falconry."

#### HOUSING

A trained hawk's housing requirements are simple. The primary need is shelter from direct sun, wind, rain and snow. Dryness, fresh air and an absence of draft are also called for. These are conditions that a wild hawk seeks and the closer the falconer comes to providing the maximum levels of such, the more his hawks will benefit in health and comfort. The quarters in which the hawk is to be kept, whether indoors (mews) and/or out (weathering area), is an area which ideally is set aside exclusively for the bird(s).

##### 1. Indoor Facilities (Mews):

The mews may be a separate building (Fig. 1) or a room within a building. Ordinarily, sunlight and ventilation requirements make windows on the south or east exposures most desirable. The size of the mews varies with the species kept and the space available, but a room about eight feet high and square is appropriate for a raptor up to the size of a red-tailed hawk. Here the hawk may be kept tethered to an appropriate perch or loose.

Tethering is very much a matter of individual preference. It is most definitely preferable where more than one bird is kept and is normally mandatory where the sex and

species of raptors kept in the same room are different. Accipiters (sharp-shinned, Cooper's and Goshawks) must never be placed free among other birds (including their own kind) as they may kill all others. Even when tied, the wise falconer provides separate mews or partitions his facilities for Accipiters so that in the event of their escape possible disaster is avoided. When in training, raptors are generally tethered.

The Interior of the mews should be severely plain with no beams or ledges to tempt the hawk to fly to a higher perching place (unless the bird is untethered in which case such beams/ledges become, in essence, additional perches). Anything that appears to offer a foothold above the hawk's rightful perch holds a hawk's attention. In a well-ordered mews a hawk sits at ease when tethered because there is no other inviting perching place in it to sharpen that inherent desire, characteristic of the birds of prey, for a higher pinnacle from which to survey their surroundings.

Windows should be protected on the inside by vertical bars or dowling spaced smaller than the bird's width, whether or not birds are kept tethered in the mews. If screen or chicken-wire are desired for additional protection or safety, such should be placed outside the vertical barring at sufficient distance to prevent a hawk free in the mews (intentionally or otherwise) from grasping the mesh and damaging its plumage. This, incidentally, is the reason that bars/dowels are placed vertically rather than horizontally. The mews should be capable of being darkened without interfering with overall ventilation, if fresh wild-caught birds are to be placed in it.

Mews doors should be secured (by lock if necessary) and should, additionally, have some sort of hook or spring so that the falconer can keep the door safely closed while inside. Doors of any mews which open directly out-of-doors should be closed by an additional protective covering, inside or out, to prevent escape of a bird free in the mews (intentionally or otherwise) as the door is opened. Such protective covering can be achieved by a hanging cloth or plastic sheet. If such is placed at an angle inside the mews, it provides the falconer with a small enclosed alcove into which he may step and close the outer door behind him before pushing aside the cover to enter the mews itself.

The floor of the mews should be constructed so as to facilitate cleaning. A layer of dirt or sand (or newspapers) is excellent as they absorb moisture. Such covering must be changed frequently for cleanliness. A covering of straw, hay, sawdust, or similar material is not normally acceptable as they retain moisture and hence provide a medium favorable for the growth of pathogenic fungi and bacteria dangerous to the bird's health.

Although, as indicated, numerous variations in a captive raptor's housing may be appropriate under given circumstances, bird cages of the "pet-store-variety" or other such enclosures are totally unacceptable, as are any facilities which do not afford the bird proper space and/or protection.

## 2. Outdoor "Weathering" Facilities:

Most falconers prefer to place their charges out-of-doors for sunning, etc. (called "weathering"), weather permitting. The birds are placed on appropriate perches (see below) on some soft, resilient surface. A thick heavy lawn can be excellent. This surface should be cleanable, or in the case of a lawn, the perch moved frequently enough to prevent soiling the area beneath it. Soft sand, although appearing ideal, should be avoided; it is inclined to get between the bird's legs and the jesses (see below) cause abrasion of the skin. Perches must be emplaced so that birds are not

exposed to direct midsummer or mid-day sun without shade also being available. Any site where birds are to be weathered unattended must be protected to prevent the raptors from attack by dogs or cats and/or from undue disturbance by strangers/children. For this reason a weathering site normally should be protectively fenced. Without such fencing, NO bird should be weathered unless under the immediate and continuous supervision of the falconer. The size of the weathering site is dependent upon the length of the restraining leash. Each bird normally requires an area approximately eight-by-eight to ten-by-ten feet to prevent its body or wings from touching the enclosing fence or other birds.

Captive raptors may be kept more or less permanently outdoors in an adequately protected weathering site. For this purpose an open-faced lean-to or an open-ended quonset or "A-frame" (such as shown in Fig. 2) is recommended, constructed of material or so painted for maximum light reflection to keep down the interior temperature. For a bird to be left out overnight using such a shelter, the weathering site most certainly should be provided with overhead protection (see next paragraph).

In many areas attacks by wild predators (mammals or birds) on falconers' birds are not as uncommon as might be supposed, even in relatively built-up suburban areas. This is especially true of attacks by wild owls on birds left out overnight. In areas where wild predators may constitute a problem, a totally enclosed weathering site, i.e., a site such as described above plus overhead protection in the form of wire or netting, becomes extremely desirable if not mandatory (see Fig. 3). This overhead wire or netting must be high enough (6-7 feet) so that the bird may not touch it when at the end of its leash and so that the falconer can comfortably enter and leave or work inside the enclosure. As in any weathering site, the bird should not be able to touch the peripheral fencing or any other raptor in the same enclosure. NOTE: A bird or birds are NOT placed free in such an enclosed weathering site, but rather are tethered by leashes on normal outdoor perches (see below).

## EQUIPMENT

### 1. Mandatory Prior to Acquisition of a Raptor:

A. Glove: Some type of pliable leather glove is a necessity (one hand--usually the left--only). For smaller species of raptors a light leather gardening glove is sufficient; for larger species, an all-leather welder's glove is appropriate.

B. Leash: (Figs. 4 & 5). Varies in size and type depending on the species of raptor to be used. A thirty-inch leather bootlace is appropriate for a kestrel; a sixty-inch leather leash ( $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch wide,  $\frac{1}{16}$  to  $\frac{3}{32}$  inch thick or a  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch nylon cord with the ends burned to seal them) is adequate for a bird the size of a red-tailed hawk. A knot (called a "button") tied in the end is necessary to prevent the leash from slipping through the swivel. Figure 4(g) shows the means of making this "button."

C. Swivel (Figs. 4 & 5): Several types are used. The classic "Figure 8" swivel may be purchased from those manufacturing hawking equipment or a heavy-duty fishing swivel may be used. The larger the bird, the larger the swivel that is required. The swivel is used to attach the leash to the jesses and to prevent twisting of either or both. The commercial "snap" or "dog leash" spring swivels should only be used as a temporary expedient when the bird is fully under control of the falconer and NEVER in tethering a bird to an outside perch. They simply cannot be trusted!

D. Jesses (Figs. 4 & 5): These are soft strips of tough, thin leather, one permanently fastened to each leg of the captive raptor. Overall lengths of 4-6 inches

for a kestrel or 8-10 inches for red-tailed hawk are appropriate. Jesses are fitted and emplaced immediately upon receipt of any raptor. Traditional jesses are shaped and attached as shown in Fig. 4. Another form called "Aylmeri" jesses (Fig. 5) consists of a "cuff" and miniature leash for each leg. The leather cuff is placed around the leg and its ends held together by a grommet. The miniature leash is passed through the grommet and its slitted end is then attached to the swivel as are traditional jesses. The use of "Aylmeri" jesses definitely is to be encouraged. Not only are they more efficient, but a bird escaping with such, readily looses (or removes) the miniature leashes, leaving it far less encumbered than with traditional jesses.

E. Bells (Fig. 4): These are especially made for falconry and are small, light in weight with an especially loud tone. They must be purchased from those manufacturing hawking equipment (commercial "Christmas/jingle" bells are not suitable). Bells should be affixed immediately upon receipt of the bird, either on the jess or with a small piece of leather called a "Bewit", the latter in the manner shown in Fig. 4(h). Bells provide a useful "signal" when something causes even an untrained raptor to move about unduly. In the field, they assist the falconer in locating his bird when it is out of sight, and serve to warn hunters that this is a captive bird. Normally two bells, each having a different tone, are used. Some falconers choose to bell their birds also (or instead) at the base of the tail or from a strip of leather around the neck. Birds belled in the latter manner should retain those bells only while hunting as opposed to bells on the leg(s) and/or tail which are permanently affixed. Unfortunately, bells suitable for small species such as merlins, kestrels or sharp-shinned hawks are very difficult to obtain.

F. Name-Tag: A small, light metal tag bearing at a minimum the owner's telephone number (and normally his name and address as well). It should be attached to a jess or bewit and should be emplaced upon receipt of the bird in case of escape. The value of the name-tag in retrieving lost hawks found by others cannot be overstressed. Some falconers, instead, place their names/telephone numbers, etc., on the hawk's bell(s) or on the jesses but such are not nearly so likely to be noticed by the uninformed.

G. Bath Pan (Figs. 1 & 2): A large, shallow pan, tub or cut-down wooden barrel, 3-6 inches deep with a diameter several inches longer than the length of the bird (at a minimum). This provides both drinking and bathing water and should be cleaned and the water changed frequently (at least weekly and more frequently in hot weather). If the bird is kept free in the mews, the bath pan may be installed therein; otherwise the bath is provided outside when the bird is weathering (see Figs. 1 & 2).

H. Scales: Traditionally, the falconer has judged his hawk's condition by the amount of flesh on its breast (sternum) and thighs. This judgment is a difficult one, especially for the beginner. Additionally, a lean hawk need not be hungry and a fat hawk may, in fact, have an excellent appetite. The falconer seeks the ideal medium between the two to keep his bird in the best of condition, just as does the prizefighter. The best and safest method of determining the amount of food to be given to achieve such condition is to weigh the bird daily. Beam or balance (as opposed to spring) scales are to be preferred. For smaller raptors, scales should register in grams or 1/4-ounce gradations. For larger species, 1-ounce gradations (if the nearest quarter-ounce can be interpolated readily) are acceptable, though the finer gradations are preferable.

I. Outdoor Perches (Fig. 6): (1) Ring Perch. This type of perch is used with birds which normally perch on tree limbs, i.e., the Accipiters and Buteos. Its design is shown in the cited figure. For the perching portion of the ring a thickness of about one inch is appropriate for small hawks, two inches for larger species. The overall diameter is generally about 12 inches. That portion on which the bird perches

should be covered with a fabric such as canvas or carpeting. (2) Block Perch. This type is used for the "true" falcons as they normally perch on flat surfaces. Its design is also shown on Fig. 6. Diameters vary, normally from 4 to 8 inches, depending on the size of the bird. The top diameter must be sufficiently broad to prevent the two jesses from "straddling" the perch (slipping over both sides simultaneously).

J. Indoor Perches: (1) Screen Perch (Fig. 5). This type of perch is appropriate for use with all types of raptors used in falconry and is the only perch described in this brochure suitable for use by more than one raptor simultaneously. It consists of a horizontal bar over which a strong cloth such as burlap has been draped. This bar is fastened at chest height to the walls of the mews or to upright posts. The cloth should hang down at least three feet on both sides of the bar and be fastened to a second lower bar either attached to the mews walls/upright posts or swinging free. The upper (perching) bar is normally padded with carpet and should be long enough so that the bird can reach neither the ends nor any other birds tethered on it. The means of tethering a bird to the screen perch is shown in Fig. 5(b). Caution should be exercised in the use of this type perch. It should not be used for sick (weak) raptors and no raptor should be left unattended on a screen perch until the falconer has ascertained that the bird is capable of regaining the perch after attempting to fly from it.

(2) Round Perch (Fig. 7). This type perch is most suitable for the Accipiters or the "true" falcons. It is shaped very much like a large garbage can. As in all perches described, its size depends on the species of raptor for which it is intended. A goshawk uses a round perch about the size of a 55-gallon drum on end, with other species requiring proportionally smaller sizes. The sides and top rim (perch) are padded and the bird is tethered to a swivel arrangement in the center of a horizontal platform below the surface of the top of the perch. (3) Shelf Perch (Fig. 7). The shelf perch is most appropriate for use with the "true" falcons and normally consists of a shelf approximately 1 x 2 ft. with a padded edge. All exposed edges and corners of the shelf must be rounded and smoothed so as not to inhibit leash movement. The shelf is mounted projecting from an inner wall or inside corner of the mews. A shelf perch is normally used in combination with a block perch (see above) set in/on the mews floor beneath so as to give the bird a choice of perches. The leash is either tethered to the block in the normal fashion with its length allowing access to the shelf, or to an eye-bolt at the base of the wall beneath the shelf, the leash length then providing access to either shelf or block. In the latter arrangement care is required that the leash is not so long as to allow it to become entangled around the block.

## 2. Optional Equipment:

A. Lure (Fig. 5e). This is a padded weight (such as a horseshoe), ordinarily covered with the wings or fur of the intended quarry (a fresh individual of such quarry will also frequently suffice as a lure). The lure is used to call the bird back to the falconer after an unsuccessful flight or for exercise. It is garnished with meat attached by short strings (unless the actual quarry is used). A four to six-foot line fastened to the lure allows the falconer to swing it in a large arc or circle, making it more visible/attractive. A raptor may or may not be trained to come to the lure. Such training, however, has much to recommend it since in essence it constitutes a safety measure. A raptor will often come to a lure when, for one reason or another, it is reluctant to come to the fist.

B. Hood. Although symbolic of falconry, use of the hood, even more than the lure, is a matter of individual preference rather than necessity. Hoods come in a variety of shapes and designs but the most important factor in any hood's suitability is its proper fit. The edges of the beak-opening should not rub or chaff the soft parts around the bird's beak, nostrils or mouth. The interior of the hood must not

touch the raptor's eyes (as revealed by moisture inside the hood when removed) and the portion of the hood passing under the raptor's "chin" must not be so tight as to be constrictive.

### FOOD

An adequate and reliable supply of proper food(s) is as important to the falconer as are considerations of shelter and equipment. Although the proper type and amount of food varies considerably with the species of raptor and the time of year and stage of the bird's training, there are certain basic principles that apply in all cases. The best food for any raptor is natural food which should make up the principal proportion of the diet. The best and most appropriate examples of such a natural diet are English sparrows, feral pigeons, starlings, mice and rats. It is unlikely that the falconer can shoot unprotected birds or animals in sufficient numbers to provide and continuous and reliable supply, even for one hawk. (Caution: Ingestion of lead shot in birds or animals killed with a shotgun may cause lead poisoning in raptors.) Day-old cockrel chicks raised to 4-6 weeks old or Pharaoh/Coturnix quail may be raised by the falconer and make useful replacements for wild varieties of natural foods. Such replacements should also be considered where unprotected wild birds/animals may contain dangerous levels of chemical sterilants, pesticides and/or other poisons. A supplemental food supply such as butcher's meat/chicken parts should be available though such should be used only as a temporary expedient for the food items previously enumerated. Vitamin and mineral supplements (such as Vionate, ABDec Drops, 1-a-Day tablets, etc.) are an important part of a captive raptor's diet, especially if fed more than occasionally on non-natural foods. Use of such supplements should be undertaken only after determining proper type(s) and dosages from an experienced veterinarian (since, for example, some synthetic vitamins can prove harmful to raptors, as can some supplements containing iron). Of late commercially prepared food mixtures specifically for raptors have been developed for zoo use. Such are very carefully balanced nutritionally and while perhaps difficult to handle during hunting/training, may be highly useful and appropriate for raptors during the moult, etc.



128  
ILLUSTRATIONS

Figure 1:

Open-faced mews with screen perch. A hawk and falcon are shown "weathering" with appropriate perches and bath pans.

Figure 2:

"A-Frame" type shelter to protect a "weathering" raptor from direct sun or severe weather.

Figure 3:

Predator-proof totally enclosed "weathering" area.

Figure 4:

- (a) "Traditional" jess. Distance A-B is 2 inches for a red-tailed hawk; 7/8 inch for a kestrel. Overall lengths: 8-10 inches for a red-tail; 4-6 inches for a kestrel.
- (b) Bewit, for placing bell on raptor's leg.
- (c) Hawk bell.
- (d) "Sampo" ballbearing fishing swivel.
- (e) Method of attaching "traditional" jess. The long end of the jess is pulled until the "knot" forms behind the hawk's leg. See also (f) and (h).
- (f) Method of attaching jesses (both types) to swivel and swivel to leash (size of swivel is greatly exaggerated).
- (g) Method of making the "button" (knot) at the end of the leash or "aylmeri" jess.
- (h) Method of attaching the bell to the hawk's leg with a bewit. The pointed tips of the bewit may be cut off after attachment.

Figure 5:

- (a) Screen perch.
- (b) Method of tethering hawk to the screen perch. Knot and ends of leash slip into the space between the double layer of cloth.
- (c) "Aylmeri" jess in place on hawk's leg.
- (d) A hawk tied to the block perch. The leash is held in the swivel by its "button" (knot)--not shown; the free end is tied to the ring of the perch.
- (e) Lure.

Figure 6:

Outdoor perches: Ring perch and block perch.

Figure 7:

Indoor perches: Round perch and shelf perch.

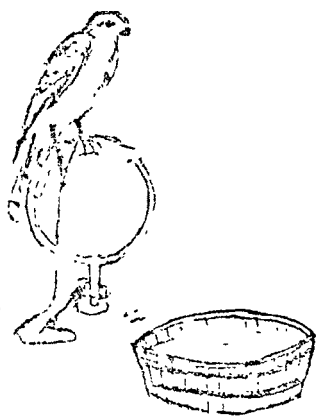
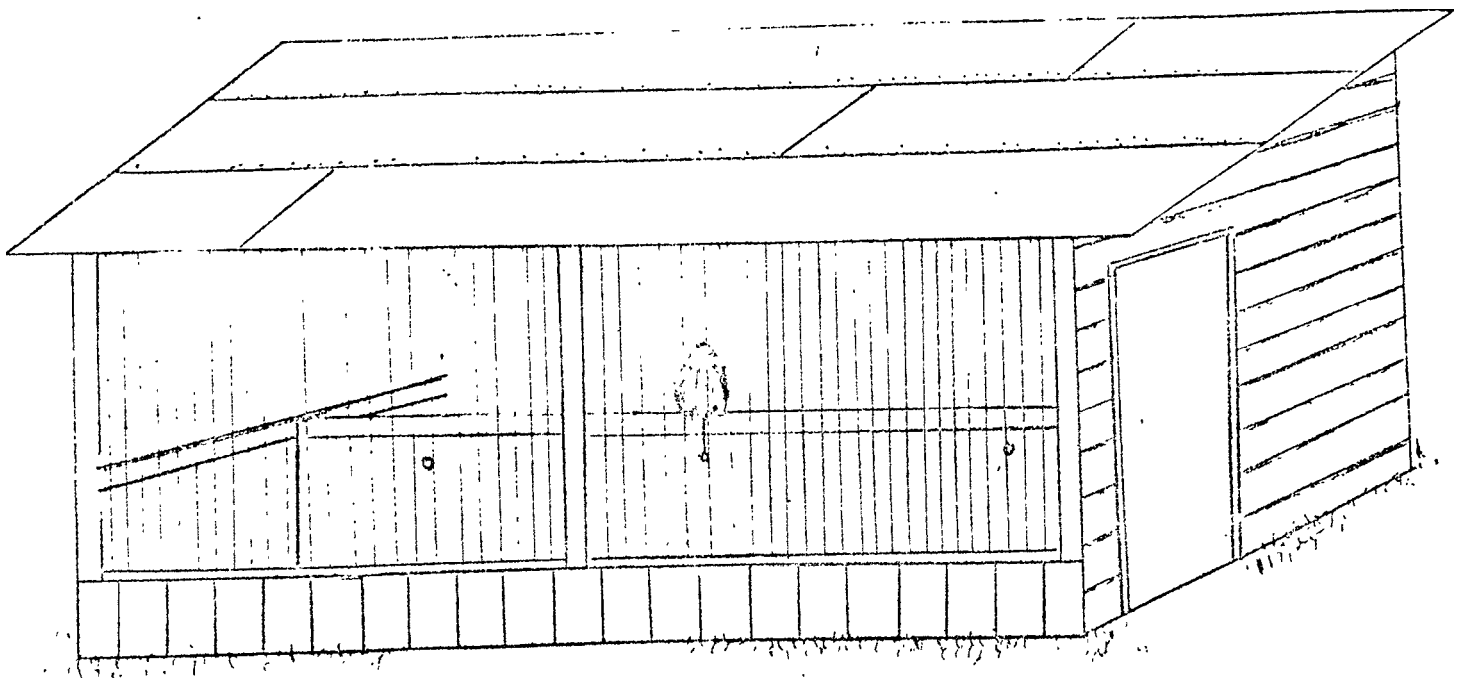


FIGURE 1

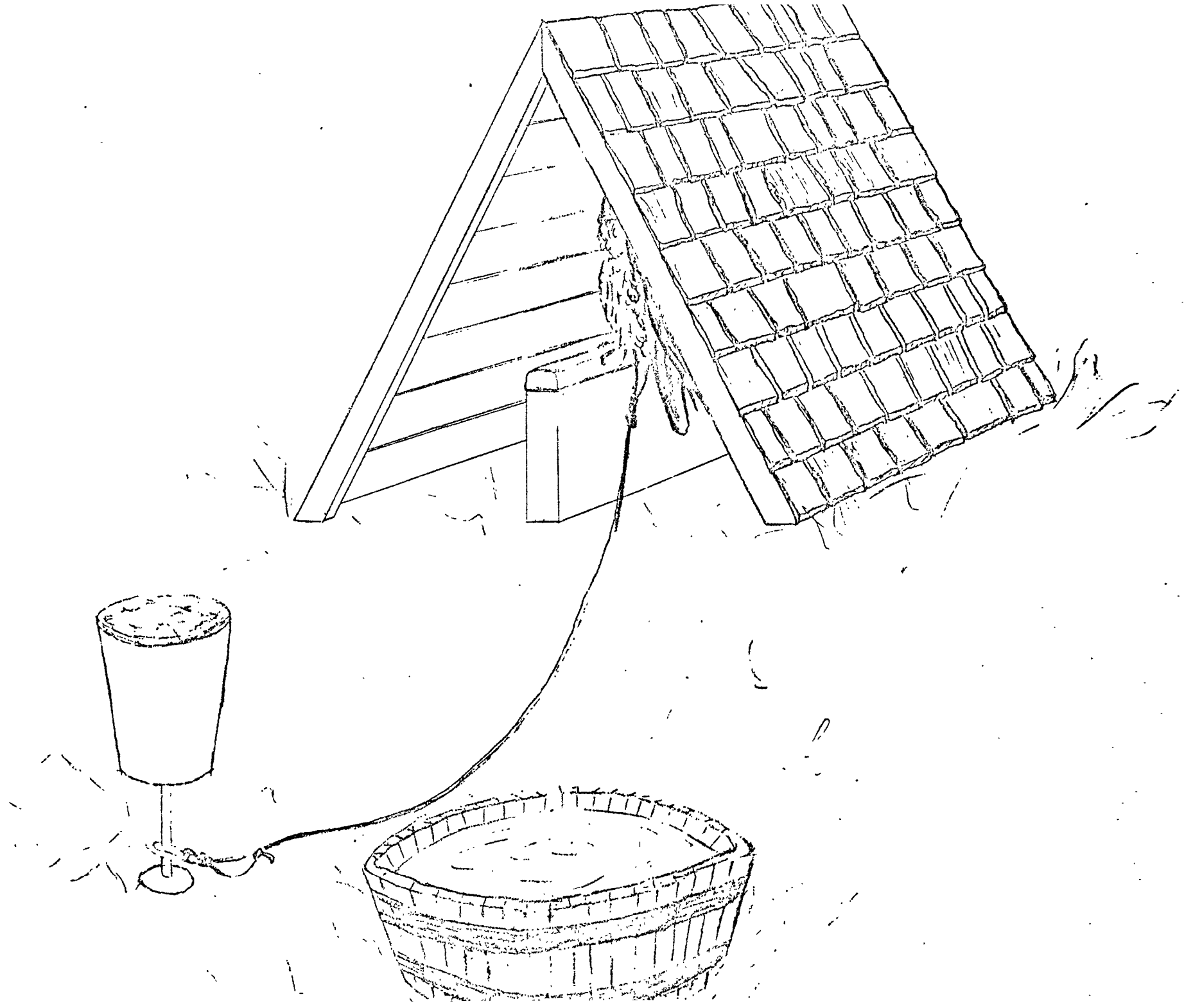


FIGURE 2

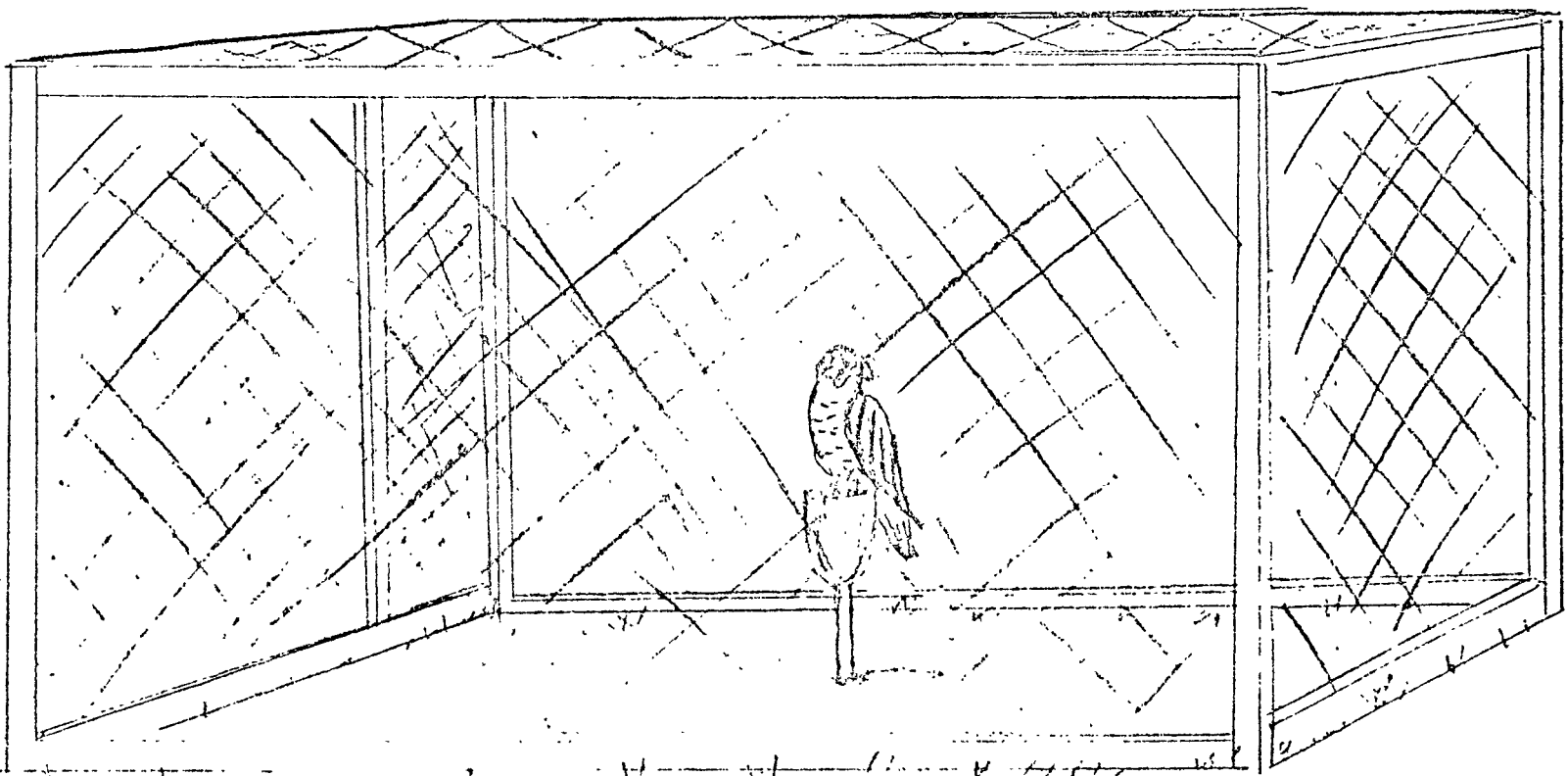


FIGURE 3

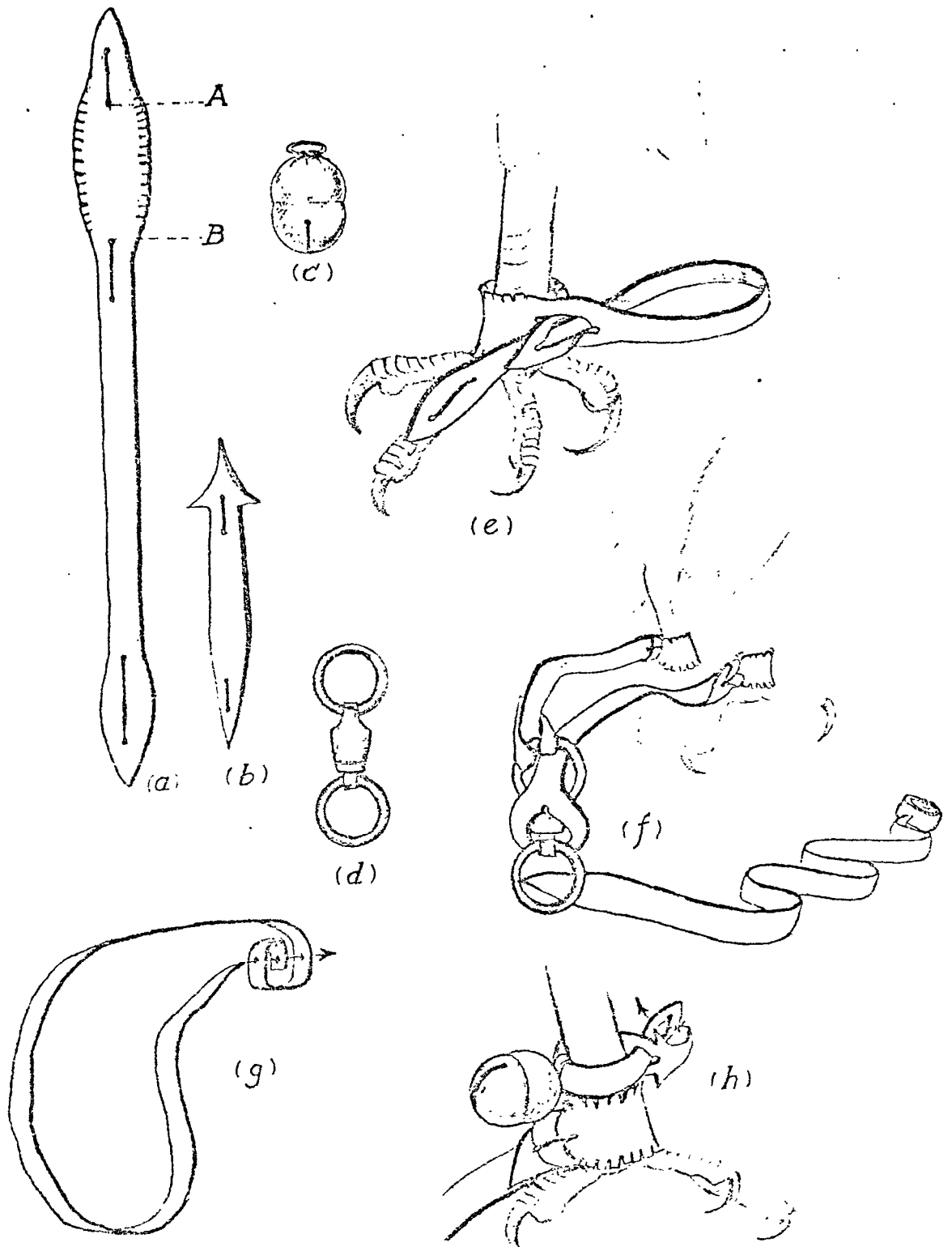


FIGURE 4

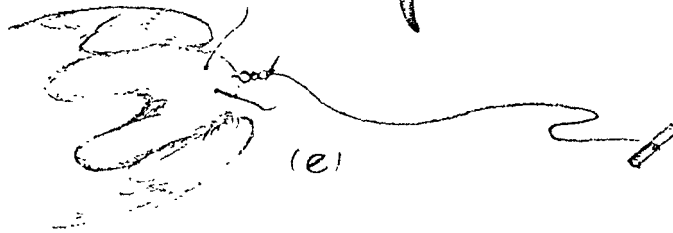
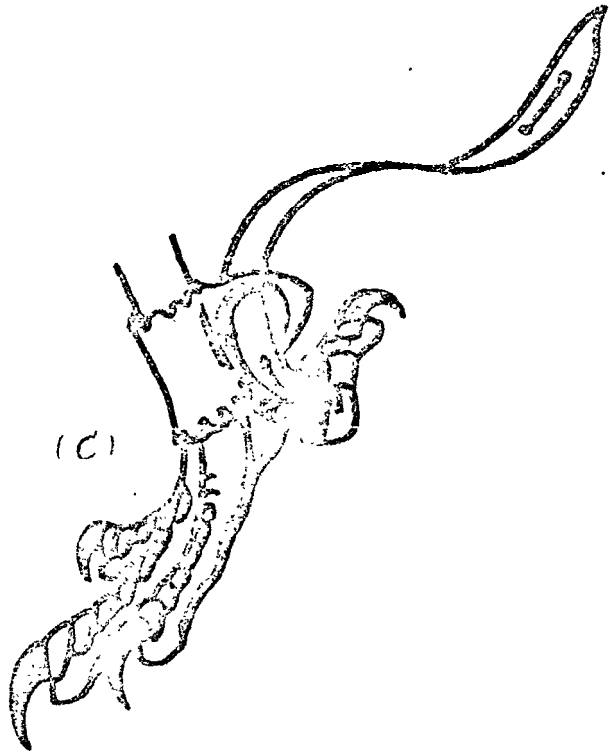
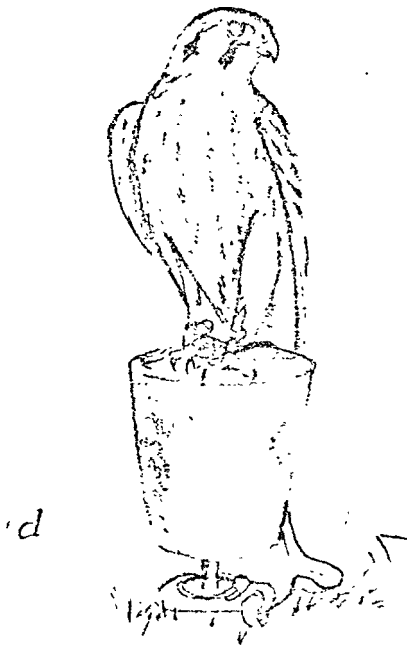
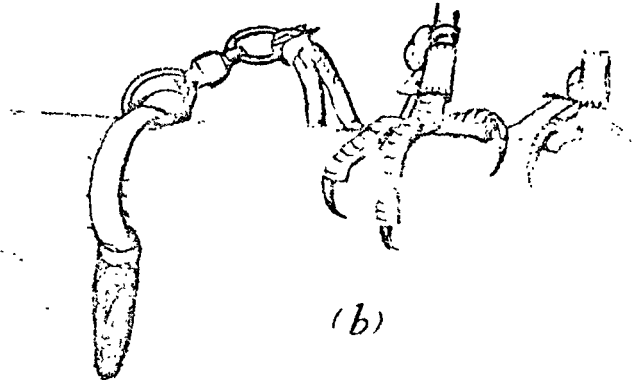
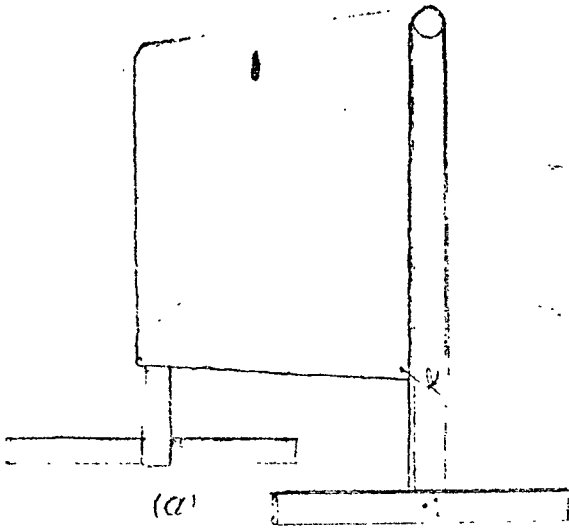
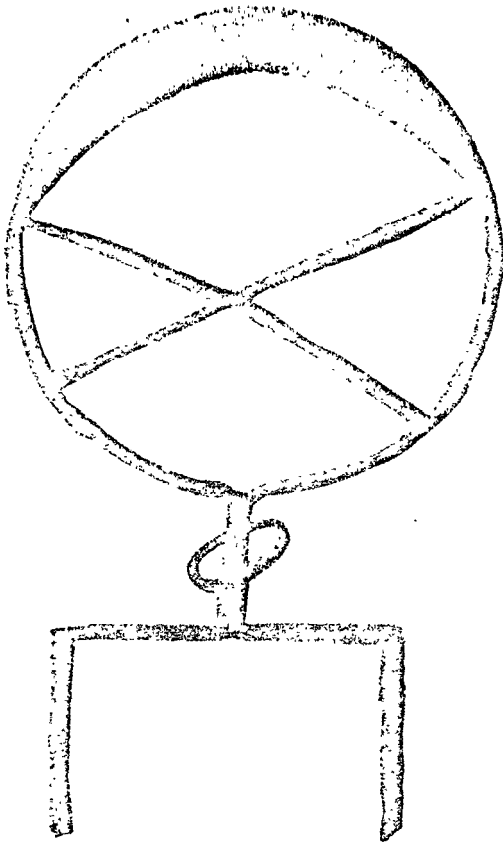


FIGURE 5



Ring Perch

Block Perch

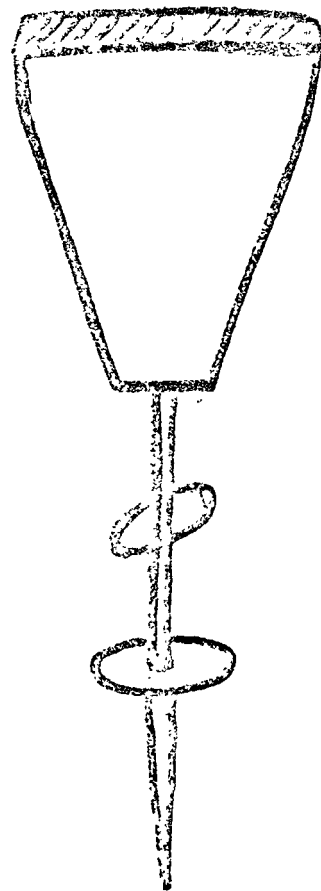
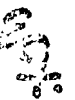
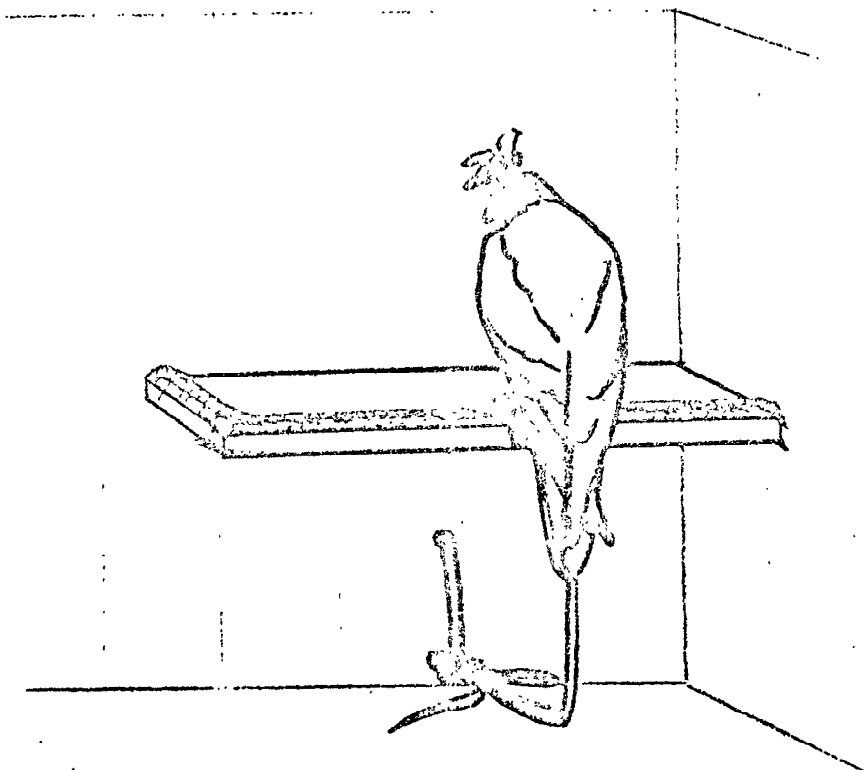
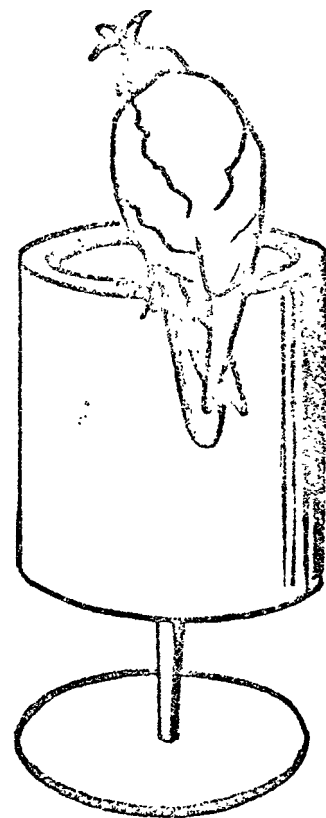


FIGURE 6





Shelf Perch



Round Perch

FIGURE 7



APPENDIX VII

Beginning in 1975 the Fish and Wildlife Branch will require that all birds raised through captive propagation be banded by the Fish and Wildlife Branch using continuous aluminum leg bands. Birds not bearing such bands remain the property of the Crown.

Banding must take place when the young birds are between one and three weeks of age. The permittee must advise the Regional office of the Fish and Wildlife Branch in his area of anticipated banding requirements one month and again one week before banding.

APPENDIX VIII

RAPTORIAL BIRD REPORT: year ending 31 December 197\_\_

13-04  
13-020

(make a separate report for each raptorial bird)

SEND REPORT FOR SCIENTIFIC PERMITS TO: The Director, Fish and Wildlife Branch  
Department of Recreation and Conservation  
Parliament Buildings, Victoria, B.C.

SEND REPORT FOR CLASS I & II BIRDS TO: The Regional Supervisor, Fish and Wildlife  
Branch at Regional Office of Applicants  
Region of residence.

1. Permitted Use of Bird being reported on:

Scientific study

Public Display

Falconry

Private possession

2. Name of Permit Holder: \_\_\_\_\_

3. Permit Number of Bird: \_\_\_\_\_

4. Residence of Permit Holder: \_\_\_\_\_

5. Residence of Bird being reported on: \_\_\_\_\_

6. Details of any transfer of ownership concerning  
bird being reported on: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Date of capture of bird: (if applicable) \_\_\_\_\_

8. Has the bird being reported on

Died?

Been Lost?

If so, quote correspondence with the Fish and Wildlife Branch on this Subject.

APPENDIX VIII - page 2

9. Details of the reproductive success in captivity of the bird being reported on: (include a brief report on survival of progeny)

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

10. Have the progeny of the bird being reported on had permanent leg bands placed by the Fish and Wildlife Branch:

Yes  
 No

If so, quote type, number(s) and colour of leg bands:

---

---

---

---

---

11. Give details (if applicable) of any change(s) in the permanent residence of the bird being reported on:

---

---

---

---

---

Date of report \_\_\_\_\_ Signature of permit holder \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

APPENDIX IX

(Applicant - please detach and retain for your records.)

## NOTE:

1. Enclose \$1.00 permit fee for each application if for other than scientific use plus the capture fee as per schedule "A" if applicable;
2. If approved, you are required to:-
  - (a) report in writing within 14 days after capture and for inspection purposes.
  - (b) permanently mark the wildlife as described in the Permit.

SCHEDULE "A"

Eagle, Osprey	\$ 10.00
Peregrine Falcon (Peale's)	200.00
Peregrine Falcon (Anatum)	20.00
Other Raptorial Birds	nil

ADMINISTRATIVE REGIONS

#1	Vancouver Island	M.A. #1
#2	Lower Mainland	M.A.'s 2, 3 and 4
#3	Kamloops	M.A.'s 12, 13, 14 and 15
#4	Okanagan	M.A.'s 5, 6, 7 and 8
#5	Kootenay	M.A.'s 9, 10 and 11
#6	Cariboo	M.A.'s 16, 17, 18 and 19
#7, & 9	Prince George	M.A.'s 20 to 22 inclusive, 27 and 28
#8	Smithers	M.A.'s 23 to 26 inclusive

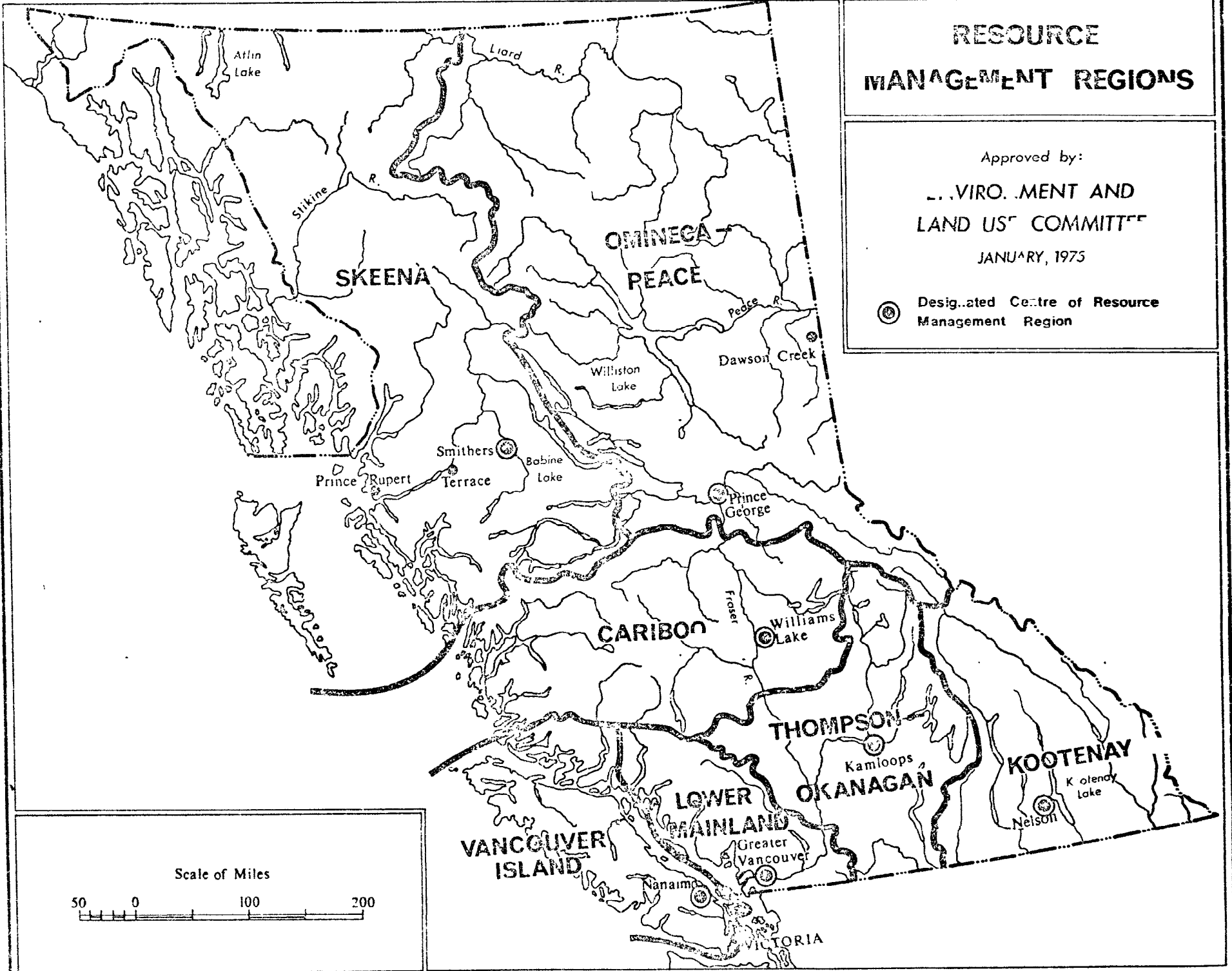
# RESOURCE MANAGEMENT REGIONS

Approved by:

ENVIRONMENT AND  
LAND USE COMMITTEE

JANUARY, 1975

⊙ Designated Centre of Resource  
Management Region



Scale of Miles



APPENDIX 9

Interim Guidelines For Use

by Wardens

When Inspecting Facilities Used to House Animals

Department of Fish & Game, California



INTERIM GUIDELINES FOR USE BY WARDENS WHEN INSPECTING FACILITIES  
USED TO HOUSE ANIMALS HELD UNDER PROVISIONS OF SECTION 671, TITLE 14, CAC

The following should be considered as interim guidelines to use in making inspections of housing or caging facilities for wild animals when private individuals have requested permits to possess such animals. The guidelines may also be used when individuals ask for details on the type of facilities they should construct.

These guidelines may also apply to inspections made after a permit has been issued. Inspecting wardens need not require permittees or permit applicants to adhere strictly to these guidelines; the requirements imposed upon applicants or permittees may be stricter or more lenient, as long as they are felt to be necessary or adequate and are reasonable.

These guidelines are designed specifically for the confinement, care and treatment of the various species of mammals listed in Section 2113 of the Fish and Game Code, and Section 671, Title 14, CAC, which are prohibited because of concern for the welfare of such animals. Wardens involved in inspections should familiarize themselves with the new laws, particularly Code Sections 2150, 2150.5, and 2155, as well as the new provisions of Section 671, Title 14, with emphasis on Sections 671.3 and 671.4.

GENERAL

All cages, rooms, enclosures, or other types of caging should be constructed and designed to prevent escape of the animals and to provide adequate care for their welfare.

Cages, enclosures, or other housing will probably vary from simple cages to extremely elaborate enclosures. The primary consideration by the inspecting officer should be to prevent escape and for the welfare of the animal.

Cages or enclosures should be structurally sound and should be maintained in good repair to securely confine the animal. Protection should be provided for all animals against inclement weather and direct rays of the sun. All cages and enclosures should provide adequate drainage to insure runoff during heavy rainfall. Quagmire conditions shall not be allowed to prevail.

A separate room in a residence may be approved if adequate security measures exist and the welfare of the animal is assured.

Animals should not be chained or otherwise tethered to a stake, post, tree, building or other enclosure, except in an emergency situation or when repairs are being made to pens and other facilities associated with captive animals.

The food should be wholesome, palatable and free from contamination and of sufficient quantity and nutritive value to maintain the animals for whom it is provided in good health. The diet should be prepared according to the age, species, condition, size and type of the animals. Animals should be fed at least once a day, except as dictated by hibernation, veterinary treatment, normal fasts or other professional practices.



Food and food receptacles, if used, should be sufficient in quantity and located to assure accessibility to all animals in an enclosure and placed to minimize contamination. Food receptacles should be sanitary. If self-feeders are used, adequate measures should be taken to prevent molding, contamination and deterioration or caking of the food.

If potable water is not accessible to the animals at all times, it should be provided as often as necessary for the health and comfort of the animals. Frequency of watering should relate to the age, species, condition, size and type of the animals. Water receptacles should be sanitary.

A permittee should not be permitted to place animals under stress or allow the general public or visitors to harass an animal held captive.

A department officer may inspect the operation at any reasonable time during daylight hours. Unsatisfactory conditions shall be documented in writing by the inspecting officer. A copy of the report shall be furnished the permittee.

The permittee should provide adequate facilities and sanitation for the health and well being of exhibited animals; should keep them reasonably free from parasites; and should remove sick, injured, deformed and otherwise incapacitated animals from the exhibit area.

A permittee should recognize and evaluate unusual physical attributes and behavior patterns of individual animals and take appropriate measures to protect the health, safety and welfare of other animals. This may involve construction of stronger and larger pen facilities or removal of an animal from a pen or the exhibit area.

A permittee should obtain the services of a veterinarian when, in the opinion of the inspecting conservation officer, any animal held in an area covered by an exhibition permit requires such service. The expense for such service shall be assumed by the permittee.

The inspecting officer may require a permittee to submit a veterinarian's report concerning the health and welfare of any animal on exhibit.

A permittee should clean all pens daily, or more often if necessary. Spilled food, excrement, or other offensive material should be removed or flushed from pens regularly with running water when necessary. The pens and range field should be sanitary, attractive and free of offensive odors at all times.

A permittee should provide animals, native to regions having warm climates, with heated facilities during periods of low temperatures.

A permittee should remove paper, cartons, tin cans, bottles, garbage of any kind, animal excrement, or other debris from within 100 feet of any pen unless the waste material is contained in a suitable covered garbage container. The contents should be emptied and taken away daily.

A permittee should provide dens which are accessible with clean litter for insulation and comfort purposes.

#### ORDER OF PRECEDENCE

Beaver, Elk, Moose, Antelopes, Wild Sheep, Kangaroos, and Wild Goats, etc.

All pens, cages, or enclosures should have a combination dirt and wooden or concrete

floor. A guideline for space requirements is 3,000 square feet for one to five animals and 1,000 square feet for each additional animal; for example, a pen 30' x 100' = 3,000 square feet and should be adequate for one to five animals.

Walls or fences should be vertical. An enclosure for deer, wild sheep; wild goats, kangaroos and antelopes should be constructed of 11-gauge woven wire with mesh not more than 6 inches in diameter or equivalent. An enclosure for elk, moose and bison should be constructed of 9-gauge woven wire with mesh not more than 6 inches in diameter or equivalent. Posts should be of heavy-duty quality steel or wood, spaced not more than 12 feet apart. An 8-foot vertical fence, with or without overhang, should be provided for white-tailed deer, moose, elk, sheep and goats; a 10-foot vertical fence for antelopes; and a 6-foot vertical fence for bison and kangaroos.

A weatherproof shelter with roof and 3 walls and floor space of 40 square feet should be provided for one animal, and 20 square feet for each additional animal; or a lean-to furnishing equivalent space and protection.

Fawns, from birth to October 1 of the year of birth, may be held in a pen with 60-inch walls of 11-gauge fence with mesh not more than 2 inches in diameter and space of not less than 1,000 square feet for from one to five fawns; and 300 square feet additional for each fawn in excess of five.

## ORDER CARNIVORA

### Bears

No more than 2 compatible adults of the same species of bear and their offspring of the year should be held in one pen. A pen should be enclosed completely, including a top.

A pen floor should be made of concrete 4 inches thick.

A pen should provide 400 square feet for one animal, 576 square feet for two animals, and an additional 200 square feet for each offspring.

The

The framework for the walls and top of a pen should be made of 3-inch galvanized iron pipe or steel posts of equal or greater strength, with all upright members set 3 feet deep in concrete and spaced 4 feet apart. Cross members (stringers) forming the framework for the top should be spaced 4 feet apart.

The walls of a pen should be of 9-gauge chain link fence with mesh no greater than 2 inches in diameter, welded or bolted at the bottom, at each 3-inch interval, to a horizontal crossbar, 2 inches by 3/8-inch in cross section, welded at the ends to the vertical framework of the pen; or vertical steel bars or rods of 3/8-inch diameter, spaced no greater than 3 inches apart, set 4 inches deep in concrete, and having at every 36-inch interval above the floor a horizontal crossbar, 2 inches by 3/8-inch in cross section, welded to each upright member; or walls may be of 8-inch cement block construction. A wall should be not less than 6 feet high.

The top of a pen should be of 9-gauge chain link fence similar to walls welded or bolted to cross members at 1-foot intervals.

A wood, concrete or cement block den 4 feet high by 4 feet wide by 6 feet long or equivalent should be provided for each animal; or one den 4 feet high by 6 feet wide

by 8 feet long for 2 animals and their offspring of the year. The top should be constructed of concrete or 2-inch planking covered with exterior grade plywood. The floor should be concrete or concrete covered with fiber glass, heavy-duty exterior grade plywood coated with epoxy coating, tile or similar material to insure sanitation. The entrance should be 4 feet high and 3 feet wide. A den should be provided with adequate ventilation opening on the roof or back of the structure to prevent condensation of moisture. Shade should be provided by covering 1/4 to 1/2 of chain link fence top with exterior grade plywood, fiber glass, metal sheets or similar material.

#### Lions, Tigers, Cougars (Puma), and Other Large Cats

Any number of compatible adult lions, tigers, cougars and other large cats of the same species and their offspring of the year may be held in one pen. A pen should be enclosed completely, including a top.

The floor of the pen should be of concrete 4 inches thick.

A pen should provide 400 square feet for one animal, 576 square feet for two animals, and 200 square feet for each additional animal.

The framework for walls and top of a pen should be of 3-inch galvanized iron pipe or steel posts of equal or greater strength, with all upright members set 3 feet deep in concrete and spaced 4 feet apart. Cross members (stringers) forming the framework of the top should be spaced 4 feet apart.

The walls of a pen should be of 6-gauge chain link fence with mesh no greater than 2 inches in diameter, fastened at the bottom, at each 4-inch interval, to a horizontal crossbar, 2 inches by 3/8-inch in cross section, welded at the ends to the vertical framework of the pen; or vertical steel bars or rods 5/8-inch in diameter spaced no greater than 2-1/2 inches apart, set 4 inches deep in concrete, and having at every 36-inch interval above the floor a horizontal crossbar, 2 inches by 3/8-inch in cross section, welded to each upright member; or 3 walls may be of 8-inch cement block construction. A wall should be not less than 12 feet high.

A pen top should be of 9-gauge chain link fence similar to walls, welded or fastened with bolts and clamps to cross members at 1-foot intervals.

A concrete or cement block den with adequate ventilation, sloping floor for drainage and to facilitate cleaning; 4 feet high by 4 feet wide by 8 feet long should be provided for each animal; or one den 4 feet high by 6 feet wide by 8 feet long for two animals. The den floor should be concrete or concrete covered with heavy-duty exterior grade plywood with epoxy coating or with 2-inch treated planking covered with fiber glass or tile. The top should be of concrete or 2-inch planking covered with exterior grade plywood. The top should serve as an outdoor roofing platform. The entrance should be 4 feet high and 3 feet wide. Shade should be provided by covering 1/4 to 1/2 of chain link top with exterior grade plywood, fiber glass, metal sheets or similar material, except when natural shade is available at all times of the day and throughout the year.

The floor of the pen should be of concrete 4 inches thick.

A pen should provide 300 square feet per animal, and 100 square feet for each additional animal.

The walls and top of a pen should be of 14-gauge either expanded metal or hexagonal mesh no greater than 1-1/2 inches in diameter, or 14-gauge welded steel fabric with mesh 1 inch by 2 inches. Framework should be of 2-inch galvanized pipe, heavy-duty wooden posts or material of equal strength and durability. Uprights should be spaced 4 feet apart and set in 3 feet of concrete. The walls of a pen for lynx, ocelots and jaguars should be 8 feet high. The walls of a pen for wolves, coyotes and wolverines should be 6 feet high. A pen holding animals which can escape by climbing or jumping should be covered with appropriate fence material.

A weatherproof, concrete or cement block den box, 3 feet high by 3 feet wide by 4 feet long should be provided for each animal, or one box 4 feet high by 4 feet wide by 6 feet long for 2 animals. The floor of the den box should be concrete or concrete covered with 2-inch wood planking, fiber glass or tile. The top of the den should be of concrete or 2-inch wood planking covered with exterior grade plywood. The top of the den should serve as an outdoor loafing deck. A heated building should be provided during periods of low temperature for animals native to areas having a warm year-round climate. The floor should have some slope for drainage and to facilitate cleaning. The entrance should be 2-1/2 feet high and 2 feet wide. Shade should be provided by covering 1/4 to 1/2 of wire-mesh top with exterior grade plywood, fiber glass, metal sheets or similar material.

Adequate perching facilities should be provided for species requiring such features.

#### Foxes and Bobcats

Not more than 2 compatible foxes or 2 compatible bobcats and their offspring of the year should be held in one pen. A pen shall be enclosed completely.

The floor of a pen should be of concrete 4 inches thick, or raised 14-gauge fur-farm netting with hexagonal mesh 1 inch in diameter, or 14-gauge welded steel fabric with mesh 1 inch by 2 inches.

A pen with a concrete floor should provide 144 square feet for one animal and 36 square feet for each additional animal. A raised floor should provide 100 square feet for one animal and 36 square feet for each additional animal.

The walls of a pen should be of 14-gauge, either hexagonal mesh no greater than 1-1/2 inches in diameter, or 14-gauge welded steel fabric with mesh 1 inch by 2 inches. A wall should be 6 feet high for foxes and 8 feet for bobcats.

The top of a pen should be of 14-gauge fur-farm netting or similar material with mesh 1-1/2 inches in diameter. When natural shade is not available at all times of the day, shade should be provided by covering 1/4 of the screened top with exterior grade plywood, fiber glass, metal sheeting or similar durable material.

A den constructed of wood planking should be provided for a bobcat and a similar wooden or cement block den box for a fox. One den box 2 feet high by 2 feet wide by 3 feet long should be made available for each animal, or 1 box 2 feet high by 3 feet wide by 3 feet long for 2 animals. The top and floor of each den box should be constructed of cement or from 2-inch thick treated planking covered with exterior grade plywood. The entrance should be 1-1/2 feet high and 1-1/2 feet wide. A den box for bobcats should be placed near the top of the pen. The top of the den should serve as an outdoor loafing deck for foxes.

An elevated wooden loafing platform should be provided for bobcats. A heavy tree limb (6 inches in diameter), an old auto tire or wooden exercise bar (6 inches in diameter) should also be provided for bobcats.

Otters

Not more than two compatible adults of the same species of otters and their immature offspring of the year should be held together in one pen.

The pen floor should be constructed of concrete 4 inches thick with a built-in trough 2 feet deep by 4 feet wide by 6 feet long, with top of trough at floor level.

Running water should fill the trough at all times, with inlet pipe at the top of the trough at one end and with outlet opening of drain pipe at opposite end from the inlet. The outlet should be constructed in a manner which will allow complete drainage to facilitate cleaning trough.

A pen should provide 144 square feet for one animal and 200 square feet for two animals.

A pen wall should be of 9-gauge chain link fence or welded steel fabric or fence or netting of equivalent strength, with mesh no greater than 2 inches by 4 inches. A wall should be not less than 6 feet high.

A weatherproof wooden or cement block den 2 feet high by 3 feet wide by 3 feet long should be provided for each animal, or one box 3 feet high by 3 feet wide by 4 feet long for two animals. The floor and top of the den box should be constructed from 2-inch treated planking covered with exterior grade plywood or similar material. The den should have adequate ventilation to prevent moisture condensation in winter. The entrance should be 1-1/2 feet high and 1-1/2 feet wide.

The top of a pen should be of the same material as used for the walls. However, a top is not required when sheet metal or similar material is attached to the top of the fence to prevent animals from climbing out of the enclosure.

CLASS PRIMATESChimpanzees

Any number of compatible adult and young chimpanzees of the same species may be held in one pen. The pen should be completely enclosed, including a top.

The floor of a pen should be of concrete 4 inches thick.

A pen should provide 144 square feet for one animal, 256 square feet for two animals, and 100 square feet for each additional animal.

The framework for the walls and top of a pen should be of 2-inch galvanized iron pipe or steel or iron beams of similar strength, with upright members set 2 feet deep in concrete and spaced 4 feet apart. Cross members (at least) forming the top of the framework should be of the same size and type of material as the upright members and should be spaced 4 feet apart.

The walls of a pen should be of 11-gauge chain link fence with no greater than 2 inches in diameter or similar material bolted or welded at the bottom at each 4-foot interval, to a horizontal crossbar, 2-1/2 inches by 3-inch diameter section, welded at the ends to the upright members of framework of the pen, or 3 inches may be of 8-inch cement block construction. A wall should be 6 feet high.

The top of a pen should be 11-gauge chain link fence, similar to walls, welded or fastened with bolts and clips to cross members at 4-foot intervals.

Adequate perching facilities and exercise bars should be provided.

A wooden shelter 2-1/2 feet high by 2-1/2 feet wide by 4 feet long should be provided for one animal. Entrance to the shelter should be 2 feet by 2 feet. The shelter should be constructed of 3/4-inch exterior grade plywood or similar material and should be securely fastened near the top of pen.

#### Baboons and Other Small Primates

Any number of compatible adults of the same species of small primates, including but not limited to spider monkeys, squirrel monkeys, rhesus monkeys, stub-tailed monkeys and lemurs, and their offspring may be held in one pen. A pen should be completely enclosed, including a top.

The floor of a pen should be of concrete 4 inches thick or treated wooden planking covered with heavy-duty exterior grade plywood.

A pen should provide 144 square feet for one baboon, rhesus monkey, spider monkey or stub-tailed monkey and 36 square feet for each additional animal. A pen should provide 36 square feet for one squirrel monkey, or one lemur, and 20 square feet for each additional animal. For other species of primates, floor space should be correlated with the size of the species, the larger the animal the more space required. Special pens may be approved for unlisted small primates.

The walls and top of a pen should be of the same material. They should be of 11-gauge chain link fence with 1-1/2-inch mesh or similar fencing material for rhesus monkeys, spider monkeys, stub-tailed monkeys, baboons or primates of similar size. They should be of 14-gauge hexagonal mesh 1-1/2 inches in diameter, or welded steel fabric with rectangular mesh 1 inch by 2 inches or similar material for squirrel monkeys, lemurs and primates of similar small size. The framework should be of 2-inch galvanized pipe or cedar posts with tops measuring 4 inches in diameter. Uprights should be spaced 4 feet apart and set in 3 feet of concrete. Shade should be provided by covering 1/4 of the top with exterior grade plywood, fiber glass or similar durable material if some natural shade is not available at all times of the day. A wall should be 10 feet high for all primates listed in this rule.

An exterior grade plywood den box 2 feet high by 2 feet wide by 3 feet long should be provided for each animal, or one box 2 feet high by 3 feet wide by 3 feet long for two animals. The floor of the den box should be constructed from 2-inch thick treated planking or other durable material. The entrance should be 1-1/2 feet high and 1-1/2 feet wide. A wooden den box should be placed near the top of the pen.

Perches and raised platforms should be provided for all primates listed in this rule. Tree limbs, an old auto tire, or wooden bars of appropriate diameter will suffice.



APPENDIX 10

California Regulations on  
Importation, Transportation and Possession  
of Restricted Live Wild Animals and Other Live  
Birds, Mammals, Fish and Reptiles





## FISH AND GAME CODE

2055. The provisions of this chapter shall not apply to the taking of fish otherwise authorized pursuant to Part 3 (commencing with Section 7600) of Division 6 of this code, nor to the possession of individual animals which were lawfully possessed before the commission determined such species or subspecies of animal to be endangered or rare.

(Added by Stats. 1970, Ch. 1510.)

CHAPTER 2. IMPORTATION AND TRANSPORTATION OF RESTRICTED LIVE  
WILD ANIMALS

Article 1. Generally

2116. As used in this chapter, "wild animal" means any animal of the class Aves (birds), class Mammalia (mammals), class Amphibia (frogs, toads, salamanders), class Osteichthyes (bony fishes), class Monorhina (lampreys), class Reptilia (reptiles), class Crustacea (crayfish), or class Gastropoda (slugs, snails) which is not normally domesticated in this state as determined by the commission.

(Amended by Stats. 1974, Ch. 1503.)

2116.5. The Legislature finds and declares that wild animals are being captured for importation and resale in California; that some populations of wild animals are being depleted; that many animals die in captivity or transit; that some keepers of wild animals lack sufficient knowledge or facilities for the proper care of wild animals; that some wild animals are a threat to the native wildlife or agricultural interests of this state; and that some wild animals are a threat to public health and safety. It is the intention of the Legislature that the importation, transportation, and possession of wild animals shall be regulated to protect the health and welfare of wild animals captured, imported, transported, or possessed, to reduce the depletion of wildlife populations, to protect the native wildlife and agricultural interests of this state against damage from the existence at large of certain wild animals, and to protect the public health and safety in this state.

(Added by Stats. 1974, Ch. 1503.)

2117. As used in this chapter, "enforcing officers" means the enforcement personnel of the department, the state plant quarantine officers, and the county agricultural commissioners.

(Amended by Stats. 1970, Ch. 302.)

2118. It is unlawful to import, transport, possess, or release alive into this state, except under a revocable, nontransferable permit as provided in this chapter and the regulations pertaining thereto, any wild animal of the following species:

(a) Class Aves: (birds)

Family Cuculidae (cuckoos)

All species.

Family Alaudidae (larks)

Skylark, *Alauda arvensis*

Family Corvidae (crows, jays, magpies)

All species.

Family Turdidae (thrushes)

European blackbird, *Turdus merula*

Missel (or mistle), thrush, *Turdus viscivorus*

Family Sturnidae (starlings and mynas or mynahs)

All species of the family, except hill myna (or hill mynah), *Gracula religiosa* (sometimes referred to as *Eulabes religiosa*)

Family Ploceidae (weavers)

The following species:

## FISH AND GAME CODE

- Italian sparrow, *Passer italiae*  
 European tree sparrow, *Passer montanus*  
 Cape sparrow, *Passer capensis*  
 Madagascar weaver, *Foudia madagascariensis*  
 Baya weaver, *Ploceus baya*  
 Hawaiian rice bird, *Munia nisoria*  
 Red-billed quelea, *Quelea quelea*  
 Red-headed quelea, *Quelea erythrops*  
 Family Fringillidae (sparrows, finches, buntings)  
 Yellowhammer, *Emberiza citrinella*
- (b) Class Mammalia (mammals)
- Order Primates  
 All species except those in family Homonidae.
- Order Edentata (sloths, anteaters, armadillos, etc.)  
 All species.
- Order Marsupialia (marsupials or pouched mammals)  
 All species.
- Order Insectivora (shrews, moles, hedgehogs, etc.)  
 All species.
- Order Dermoptera (gliding lemurs)  
 All species.
- Order Chiroptera (bats)  
 All species.
- Order Monotremata (spiny anteaters, platypuses)  
 All species.
- Order Pholidota (pangolins, scaly anteaters)  
 All species.
- Order Lagomorpha (pikas, rabbits, hares)  
 All species, except domesticated races of rabbits.
- Order Rodentia (rodents)  
 All species, except laboratory-reared golden hamsters, also known as Syrian hamster, *Mesocricetus auratus*; nutria possessed in accordance with provisions of the Food and Agricultural Code; domesticated races of rats or mice (white or albino; trained, dancing or spinning, laboratory-reared); and domestic strains of guinea pig (*Cavia porcellus*).
- Order Carnivora (carnivores)  
 All species, except domestic dogs (*Canis familiaris*) and domestic cats (*Felis catus*)
- Order Tubulidentata (aardvarks)  
 All species.
- Order Proboscidea (elephants)  
 All species.
- Order Hyracoidea (hyraxes)  
 All species.
- Order Sirenia (dugongs, manatees)  
 All species.
- Order Perissodactyla (horses, zebras, tapirs, rhinoceroses, etc.)  
 All species except those of the family Equidae.
- Order Artiodactyla (swine, peccaries, camels, deer, elk, moose, antelopes, cattle, goats, sheep, etc.)  
 All species except: domestic swine of the family Suidae; American bison, and domestic cattle, sheep and goats of the family Bovidae; races of big-horned sheep (*Ovis canadensis*) now or formerly

## FISH AND GAME CODE

Mammals of the orders Primates, Edentata, Dermoptera, Monotremata, Pholidota, Tubulidentata, Proboscidea, Perissodactyla, Hyracoidea, Sirenia and Carnivora are restricted for the welfare of the animals, except animals of the families Viverridae and Mustelidae in the order Carnivora are restricted because such animals are undesirable and a menace to native wildlife, the agricultural interests of the state, or to the public health or safety.

- (c) Class Amphibia (frogs, toads, salamanders)
  - Family Bufonidae (toads)
    - Giant toad or marine toad, *Bufo marinus*
- (d) Class Monorhina (lampreys)
  - All species
- (e) Class Osteichthyes (bony fishes)
  - Family Serranidae (bass)
    - White perch, *Morone* or *Roccus americana*
  - Family Clupeidae (herring)
    - Gizzard shad, *Dorosoma cepedianum*
  - Family Sciaenidae (croakers)
    - Freshwater sheepshead, *Aplodinotus grunniens*
  - Family Characidae (characins)
    - Banded tetra, *Astyanax fasciatus*
    - All species of piranhas
  - Family Lepisosteidae (gars)
    - All species.
  - Family Amiidae (bowfins)
    - All species.
- (f) Class Reptilia (snakes, lizards, turtles, alligators)
  - Family Crocodylidae
    - All species.
- (g) Class Crustacea (crustaceans)
  - Genus Cambarus (crayfishes)
    - All species.
  - Genus Astacus (crayfishes)
    - All species.
  - Genus Astacopsis (crayfishes)
    - All species.
- (h) Class Gastropoda (slugs, snails, clams)
  - All species of slugs
  - All species of land snails
- (i) Such other classes, orders, families, genera, and species of wild animals which may be designated by the commission in cooperation with the Department of Food and Agriculture, (a) when such class, order, family, genus or species is proved undesirable and a menace to native wildlife or the agricultural interests of the state, or (b) to provide for the welfare of wild animals.
- (j) Classes, families, genera, and species in addition to those listed above may be added to or deleted from the above lists from time to time by commission regulations in cooperation with the Department of Food and Agriculture.

(Amended by Stats. 1974, Ch. 1503.)

2118.5. The commission may designate wild animals which may be possessed without a permit.

(Added by Stats. 1970, Ch. 1510.)

2119. The Department of Fish and Game shall publish from time to time as

## FISH AND GAME CODE

changes arise, a list of animals which may not be imported or transported into this State.

(Amended by Stats. 1961, Ch. 617.)

2120. The commission, in cooperation with the State Department of Food and Agriculture, shall promulgate regulations governing (a) the entry, transportation, keeping, confinement, or release of any and all wild animals which will be or which have been imported into this state pursuant to the provisions of this chapter, and (b) the possession of all other wild animals. The regulations shall be designed to prevent damage to the native wildlife or agricultural interests of this state resulting from the existence at large of any such wild animals, and to provide for the welfare of wild animals.

(Amended by Stats. 1974, Ch. 1503.)

2121. No person having possession or control over any wild animal legally imported under the provisions of this chapter shall intentionally free, or knowingly permit the escape, or release of such animals, except in accordance with the regulations of the commission.

(Amended and renumbered, added, by Stats. 1961, Ch. 617.)

2122. The commission shall promulgate regulations in cooperation with the State Department of Food and Agriculture for the guidance of enforcing officers. Such regulations shall include a list of the wild animals for which permits that may be issued under this chapter will be refused, and the disposition of such wild animals illegally imported into this state.

(Amended by Stats. 1974, Ch. 1503.)

2123. The department in cooperation with the State Department of Food and Agriculture shall furnish descriptive and illustrative material concerning the wild animals enumerated in or designated pursuant to Section 2118, as well as explanatory material setting forth the reasons for designating such animals as undesirable and a menace to native wildlife or to the agricultural interests of this state for the information and guidance of the enforcing officers.

(Amended by Stats. 1974, Ch. 1503.)

## Article 2. Permits

2150. The department in cooperation with the State Department of Food and Agriculture may, upon application, issue a written permit to import into, possess, or transport within this state any wild animal enumerated in or designated pursuant to Section 2118, upon determination that the animal is not detrimental or that no damage or detriment can be caused to agriculture, to native wildlife, to the public health or safety, or to the welfare of the animal, as a result of such importation, transportation, or possession.

A permit shall be issued only upon application and payment of a nonrefundable application fee in such amount as is determined by the commission to be sufficient to carry out the provisions of this chapter. Fees generated by the applications shall be expended exclusively for the administration and enforcement of this chapter. Application forms shall be provided by the department and shall be designed to ascertain the applicant's ability to properly care for the wild animal or animals he seeks to import, transport, or possess. Such proper care shall include providing adequate food, shelter, and veterinary care, and such other requirements as the commission may designate.

The commission shall revoke or deny a permit if it finds that a permittee or applicant has failed to meet or is unable to meet the requirements for importing, transporting, possessing, or confining any wild animal as established pursuant to Section 2120.

PERMITS AND FEES

A zoo which maintains its mammals at the minimum welfare standards presently set forth in the provisions of Chapter 1 of Volume 9 of the Code of Federal Regulations, entitled "Animals and Animal Products," shall be exempt from any requirement for the payment of an application fee for a permit issued pursuant to this chapter, and shall be exempt from any permit requirement pursuant to this chapter except for animals whose importation, transportation, or possession is determined by the department, in cooperation with the Department of Food and Agriculture, to be detrimental or cause damage to agriculture, to native wildlife, or to the public health or safety. For the purposes of this section, a zoo shall be considered any organization which exhibits animals to the general public at regular specified hours, equaling at least 30 hours a week for 36 weeks a year, and whose animals, whether maintained for exhibit purposes or not, are not for sale to private individuals. The determination of whether a zoo maintains its mammals at such minimum welfare standards shall be by information obtained from federal inspectors that the specific zoo meets such standards, or if such information is not available, concerning a particular zoo, by periodic inspections by wardens of the department. An aquarium which otherwise meets the standards required by this section shall be considered a zoo. A zoo which does not maintain its mammals at such minimum welfare standards shall be deemed deficient in providing for the welfare of the animal and shall be required to meet all the requirements for the issuance of a permit pursuant to this chapter.

Any university, college, governmental research agency or other bona fide scientific institution, as determined by the department, engaging in scientific or public health research shall be exempt from any requirement for the payment of an application fee for a permit issued pursuant to this chapter, and shall be exempt from any permit requirement pursuant to this chapter except for animals whose importation, transportation, or possession is determined by the department, in cooperation with the Department of Food and Agriculture, to be detrimental or cause damage to agriculture, to native wildlife, or to the public health or safety.

(Amended by Stats 1974, Ch. 1503.)

2150.5. Classes, orders, families, genera, and species which may not be imported, transported, possessed, or released alive in this state solely because of concern for the welfare of the animal may be possessed under permit when the owner can demonstrate that such animal was legally acquired and possessed in California before the effective date of this section. The department may require the owner of an animal which may be possessed under this section to mark or otherwise identify such animal and progeny, so as not to endanger the welfare of that animal, to the satisfaction of the department. The owner shall not transfer such animal or progeny to any other person without prior approval of the department.

(Added by Stats. 1974, Ch. 1503.)

2151. A permit shall be issued only upon written application from the person desiring to import or transport the species, enumerating all of the following:

- (a) The approximate number and true scientific name of each species of wild animal for which a permit is requested.
- (b) The carrier and probable point of first arrival in this State of each shipment of such species.
- (c) The purpose for which they are to be imported or transported.
- (d) The name and address of the consignee.
- (e) The name and address of the consignor.

(Amended by Stats. 1961, Ch. 617.)

2152 Each permit issued shall set forth all of the following:

(a) The number and true scientific name of the species of wild animal for which the permit is granted.

(b) A statement of the manner and conditions under which the entry of such species is permitted.

(c) A statement of the conditions under which the species shall be kept after importation or during transportation.

(Amended by Stats. 1961, Ch. 617.)

2153. Whenever any permit is issued under the provisions of this article, one copy shall be sent by the department to the State Department of Food and Agriculture, one copy to the county agricultural commissioner or to the state plant quarantine officer having jurisdiction at the place designated in the application as the probable point of first arrival in the state of such species, and one copy shall accompany each shipment of wild animals involved.

(Amended by Stats. 1974, Ch. 1503.)

2155. The provisions of this chapter and regulations adopted pursuant thereto shall apply to the progeny of any wild animal imported or possessed under such laws and regulations, except that no permit shall be required for the possession of progeny if a permit has already been obtained by the owner for the parent, and the progeny are kept at the same site.

(Added by Stats. 1974, Ch. 1503.)

2156. Neither the provisions of this chapter nor the regulations of the commission shall prevent any city or county from enacting ordinances relating to the possession or care of wild animals provided such ordinances are more restrictive.

(Added by Stats. 1974, Ch. 1503.)

### Article 3. Regulation and Enforcement

2185. Any person who transports, receives, or imports into the State, or transports within the State, any live wild animal enumerated in or designated pursuant to Section 2118, shall hold said animal in confinement for inspection and immediately notify the nearest enforcing officer of the arrival thereof. If there is found in any shipment any species not specified in the permit issued under this chapter, or more than the number of any species specified, said animals shall be refused admittance as provided in Section 2188 of this chapter.

(Amended by Stats. 1961, Ch. 617.)

2186. If during inspection upon arrival any wild animal is found to be diseased, or there is reason to suspect the presence of disease which is or may be detrimental to agriculture, to native wildlife, or to the public health or safety, the diseased animal, and if necessary, the entire shipment shall be destroyed by, or under the supervision of the enforcing officer, unless no detriment can be caused by its detention in quarantine for a time and under conditions satisfactory to the enforcing officer for disinfection, treatment, or diagnosis, or no detriment can be caused by its return to point of origin at the option and expense of the owner or bailee.

(Amended and renumbered, added by Stats. 1961, Ch. 617.)

2187. Whenever any wild animal is brought into this state under permit, as provided in this chapter, the enforcing officers shall, from time to time, examine the conditions under which such species is kept, and report to the department any suspicion or knowledge of any disease or violations of the conditions of the permit or of the regulations promulgated under the provisions of this chapter. The enforcing officer may order the transfer of the animal to new owners or the

correction of the conditions under which the species is being kept if not in conformance with the terms of the permit, at the expense of the owner or bailee. If neither transfer or improvement of conditions is accomplished, the officer may order destruction of the animal.

(Amended by Stats. 1974, Ch. 1503.)

Note: Section 15 of Chapter 1503 provides:

SEC. 15. No appropriation is made by this act, nor is any obligation created thereby under Section 2231 of the Revenue and Taxation Code, of the reimbursement of any local agency for any costs that may be incurred by it in carrying on any program or performing any service required to be carried on or performed by it by this act.

2188. Any live wild animals brought into this State or transported within this State in violation of the provisions of this chapter or any regulations thereunder may, upon notice from the enforcing officer inspecting them or discovering the violation, be shipped out of the State, returned to point of origin or destroyed, within the time specified in said notice, at the option of the owner or bailee.

The exercise of any such option shall be under the direction and control of the enforcing officer and at the expense of the owner or bailee. If the owner or bailee fails to exercise such option within the time specified in the notice, the enforcing officer shall immediately thereafter seize and destroy the animals at the expense of the owner or bailee.

(Amended and renumbered, added by Stats. 1961, Ch. 617.)

2189. Any wild animal prohibited entry into this State under the provisions of this chapter or any regulations thereunder, or for which permits are refused, shall be subject to destruction by any enforcing officer when found in the possession of any person, unless such person has a permit from the department permitting the keeping of such wild animal in confinement in accordance with such regulations.

(Amended and renumbered and added by renumbering, by Stats. 1961, Ch. 617.)

2190. It is unlawful for any person who keeps in confinement, with or without a permit, any wild animal of a species enumerated in or designated pursuant to Section 2118, to liberate, ship, or transport the animal except in accordance with the conditions of a permit first obtained from the department.

(Amended and renumbered and added by renumbering, by Stats. 1961, Ch. 617.)

2191. Whenever any wild animal, the name of which has been published or designated in accordance with Section 2119 or 2122, is found at large or not kept in confinement in accordance with the regulations of the commission, it shall be summarily destroyed by an enforcing officer.

(Added by renumbering by Stats. 1961, Ch. 617.)

### CHAPTER 3. IMPORTATION AND TRANSPORTATION OF OTHER LIVE BIRDS, MAMMALS, FISH, AND REPTILES

(Amended by Stats. 1972, Ch. 974)

#### Article 1. Birds

2225. Except as otherwise provided, it is unlawful for any common carrier to transport any live protected nongame bird or any live resident or migratory game bird for which there is no open season.

(Amended by Stats. 1957, Ch. 1972.)

#### Article 2. Mammals

2250. It is unlawful to import or transport into or possess any live muskrat (genus *Ondatra*) in the region west of the crest of the Cascade-Sierra Nevada mountain system, and west and south of the Tehachapi, Liebre, San Gabriel, San



## FISH AND GAME CODE

Bernardino, San Jacinto, Cuyamaca, and connected mountains south to the international boundary, or in any watershed tributary to or draining into the Pacific Ocean, except the drainage basin of the Klamath River. It is unlawful to import or transport live muskrats into any part of California outside that region, except under permit issued by the department. A county agricultural commissioner, fish and game deputy, or state plant quarantine officer may enter upon lands or waters where muskrats unlawfully exist, and remove or destroy the muskrats.

Article 3. Fish, Reptiles, Amphibia, and Aquatic Plants Generally  
(Amended by Stats. 1972, Ch. 974)

2270. It is unlawful for any person to receive, bring, or cause to be brought into this state, for the purpose of propagation, any fish, reptile, amphibian, or aquatic plant from any place wherein any infected, diseased, or parasitized fish, reptile, amphibian, or aquatic plants are known to exist.

(Amended by Stats. 1974, Ch. 605.)

2271. Every person who receives, brings, or causes to be brought into this state any live fish, reptile, amphibian, or aquatic plant, shall give written notice 10 days in advance to the director showing the probable date and place of arrival of such fish, reptile, amphibian, or aquatic plant. This notice is not required in the case of mollusks or crustaceans brought into the state unless such mollusks or crustaceans are or may be placed in the waters of this state.

(Amended by Stats. 1974, Ch. 605.)

2272. Each package containing fish, reptiles, amphibia, or aquatic plants shall bear in a conspicuous place a tag on which shall be stated the name and residence of the consignor and the consignee, and the exact contents of the package.

(Amended by Stats. 1972, Ch. 974.)

2273. The eggs and fry of golden trout shall not be transported out of the State.

Article 4. Domesticated Fish

2301. Live, domesticated fish raised lawfully in any other state may be imported into this State and transported or sold under a license obtained from the department. The fee for such a license is five dollars (\$5) per calendar year or part thereof.

2302. The person who is to receive any such fish shall apply to the department for an importation permit to import each shipment of such fish. The permit may only be issued for fish from a hatchery lawfully operated in the state in which it is situated. The application for the permit shall state the hatchery or hatcheries from which such fish are to be imported, the quantity of fish in each shipment to be received, and the name and address of the person to receive them.

2303. Live, domesticated fish may be sold and transported only when accompanied by a permit issued by the department. Fish, other than those being imported under an importation permit, shall be accompanied by a sale and transportation permit issued by the department.

No sale and transportation permit shall be issued unless the fish are consigned to a person having a license or permit under Section 6401, 6454, or 8460, except that such a permit may be issued by the department for the delivery of live, domesticated fish by a licensed domesticated fish breeder to a wholesale fish

- (b) The volume of water, intended use, and equipment to be used in any water diversion or impoundment, if applicable.
- (c) The equipment to be used in road or bridge construction.
- (d) The type and density of vegetation to be affected and an estimate of the area involved.
- (e) A diagram or sketch of the location of the operation which clearly indicates the stream or other water and access from a named public road. Locked gates shall be indicated. The compass direction must be shown.
- (f) A description of the period of time in which operations will be carried out.

#### CHAPTER 7.5. NATIVE SPECIES CONSERVATION AND ENHANCEMENT

(Chapter 8 heading amended and renumbered by Stats. 1976, Ch. 1079)

1860. "Development" means, on land, in or under water, the placement or erection of any solid material or structure; discharge or disposal of any dredged material or any gaseous, liquid, solid, or thermal waste; grading, removing, dredging, mining, or extraction of any materials; change in the density or intensity of use of land, including, but not limited to, subdivision of land pursuant to the Subdivision Map Act (Division 2 (commencing with Section 66410) of Title 7 of the Government Code) and any other division of land, including lot splits; change in the intensity of use of water, ecology related thereto, or of access thereto; construction, reconstruction, demolition, or alteration of the size of any structure, including any facility of any private, public, or municipal utility, and the removal or logging of major vegetation. As used in this section, "structure" includes, but is not limited to, any building, road, pipe, flume, conduit, siphon, aqueduct, telephone line, or electrical power transmission and distribution line.

(Amended by Stats. 1976, Ch. 1079.)

2008. (Repealed by Stats. 1976, Ch. 1140.)

2150. (a) The department in cooperation with the State Department of Food and Agriculture may, upon application, issue a written permit to import into, possess, or transport within this state any wild animal enumerated in or designated pursuant to Section 2118, upon determination that the animal is not detrimental or that no damage or detriment can be caused to agriculture, to native wildlife, to the public health or safety, or to the welfare of the animal, as a result of such importation, transportation, or possession.

A permit shall be issued only upon application and payment of a nonrefundable application fee in such amount as is determined by the commission to be sufficient to carry out the provisions of this chapter. Fees generated by the applications shall be expended exclusively for the administration and enforcement of this chapter. Application forms shall be provided by the department and shall be designed to ascertain the applicant's ability to properly care for the wild animal or animals he seeks to import, transport, or possess. Such proper care shall include providing adequate food, shelter, and veterinary care, and such other requirements as the commission may designate.

(b) The commission shall revoke or deny a permit if it finds that a permittee or applicant has failed to meet or is unable to meet the requirements for importing, transporting, possessing, or confining any wild animal as established pursuant to Section 2120.

(c) A zoo which maintains its mammals at the minimum welfare standards presently set forth in the provisions of Chapter 1 of Volume 9 of the Code of Federal Regulations, entitled "Animals and Animal Products," shall be exempt from any requirement for the payment of an application fee for a permit issued pursuant to this chapter, and shall be exempt from any permit requirement pursuant to this chapter except for animals whose importation, transportation, or

possession is determined by the department, in cooperation with the Department of Food and Agriculture, to be detrimental or cause damage to agriculture, to native wildlife, or to the public health or safety. For the purposes of this section, a zoo shall be considered any organization which exhibits animals to the general public at regular specified hours, equaling at least 30 hours a week for 36 weeks a year, and whose animals, whether maintained for exhibit purposes or not, are not for sale to private individuals, except that any animal which a zoo may possess without a permit may be sold to an exhibitor licensed by the United States Department of Agriculture or a dealer who is so licensed. The determination of whether a zoo maintains its mammals at such minimum welfare standards shall be by information obtained from federal inspectors that the specific zoo meets such standards, or if such information is not available, concerning a particular zoo, by periodic inspections by wardens of the department. An aquarium which otherwise meets the standards required by this section shall be considered a zoo. A zoo which does not maintain its mammals at such minimum welfare standards shall be deemed deficient in providing for the welfare of the animal and shall be required to meet all the requirements for the issuance of a permit pursuant to this chapter.

(d) An exhibitor licensed by the United States Department of Agriculture or a dealer who is so licensed who buys any animal specified in subdivision (c) from a zoo within the state, may sell or transfer it only to a private individual who has a permit issued pursuant to this section prior to the receipt of the animal or to a public or private organization which has a permit issued pursuant to this section prior to the receipt of the animal.

(e) Any university, college, governmental research agency or other bona fide scientific institution, as determined by the department, engaging in scientific or public health research shall be exempt from any requirement for the payment of an application fee for a permit issued pursuant to this chapter, and shall be exempt from any permit requirement pursuant to this chapter except for animals whose importation, transportation, or possession is determined by the department, in cooperation with the Department of Food and Agriculture, to be detrimental or cause damage to agriculture, to native wildlife, or to public health or safety.

SEC. 2. Notwithstanding Section 2231 of the Revenue and Taxation Code, there shall be no reimbursement pursuant to that section nor shall there be an appropriation made by this act because the Legislature recognizes that during any legislative session a variety of changes to laws relating to crimes and infractions may cause both increased and decreased costs to local governmental entities and school districts which, in the aggregate, do not result in significant identifiable cost changes.

(Amended by Stats. 1976, Ch. 796.)

2463. This article shall remain in effect only until July 1, 1977, and as of such date is repealed, unless a later enacted statute, which is chaptered before July 1, 1977, deletes or extends such date.

(Amended by Stats. 1976, Ch. 1019.)

3005.7. It is unlawful to capture any mountain lion or to possess or confine any live mountain lion taken from the wild, except as provided by this code or regulations made pursuant thereto. Any mountain lion possessed or confined in violation of this section shall be seized by the department.

The commission may promulgate regulations permitting the temporary confinement of mountain lions for the purpose of treating them, if injured or diseased.

This section shall remain in effect only until January 1, 1978, and as of that date is repealed.

(Amended by Stats. 1976, Ch. 568.)

RESOURCES AGENCY OF CALIFORNIA  
Department of Fish and Game  
1416 Ninth Street  
Sacramento, California 95814

\* \* \*

REGULATIONS PERTAINING  
TO  
IMPORTATION, TRANSPORTATION, AND POSSESSION  
OF WILD ANIMALS  
(Sections 671 - 671.7, Title 14, CAC)

**671. Importation, Transportation and Possession of Wild Animals.** The following species of the families which are prohibited or for which a permit is required are determined to be not normally domesticated in this state and shall not be imported into, transported within or possessed in this state, and permits for their entry, transportation or possession will be refused by the Department of Fish and Game, except that permits may be granted for the species as specified herein and for purposes designated below subject to the conditions and restrictions contained in Sections 671.1, 671.2, 671.4, 671.5, and/or 671.6, and such other conditions as may be designated by the department.

The birds, amphibians, fish, reptiles, and crustaceans which are prohibited or for which a permit is required in this regulation are restricted because such animals are undesirable and a menace to native wildlife, the agricultural interests of the state, or to the public health or safety.

Mammals of the orders Primates, Edentata, Dermoptera, Monotremata, Pholidota, Tubulidentata, Proboscidea, Perissodactyla, Hyracoidea, Sirenia, and Carnivora, which are prohibited or for which a permit is required are restricted for the welfare of the animals, except animals of the families Viverridae, Procyonidae except pandas and *Procyon lotor* (American raccoon), and Mustelidae excepting genera *Amblyonyx*, *Aonyx*, *Paraonyx*, and *Pteronura* (river otters), in the order Carnivora are restricted because such animals are undesirable and a menace to native wildlife, the agricultural interests of the state, or to the public health or safety. Mammals of other orders which are prohibited or for which a permit is required except the families Macropodidae (kangaroos, wallabies) and Phalangeridae (Phalangiers, koalas) in the order Marsupialia, and the family Camelidae (camels, etc.) in the order Artiodactyla are restricted because such animals are undesirable and a menace to native wildlife, the agricultural interests of the state, or to the public health.

Subject to applicable provisions of the Fish and Game Code or regulations of the Fish and Game Commission set forth in Title 14, species not listed below may be imported, transported or possessed without a permit. No person shall release into the wilds of this state any animal which is not native to California except as provided in these regulations. (See Section 671.5.)

(a) Class Aves—Birds

(1) Family Alaudidae—Larks

*Alauda arvensis* (Skylark)—Prohibited.

(2) Family Cuculidae—Cuckoos

All species—Prohibited.

(3) Family Corvidae—Crows, Ravens, Rooks, Jackdaws (Genus *Corvus*)

All species—Prohibited.

(4) Family Turdidae—Thrushes, Blackbirds, Fieldfare

(A) *Turdus merula* (European blackbird)—Prohibited.

(B) *Turdus viscivorus* (Missel thrush)—Prohibited.

(C) *Turdus pilaris* (Fieldfare)—Prohibited.

(D) *Turdus musicus* (Song thrush)—Prohibited.

(5) Family Sturnidae—Starlings, Mynahs

All species except *Sturnus vulgaris* (Starling) and *Gracula religiosa* or *Eulabes religiosa* (Hill mynahs)—Prohibited.

(6) Family Ploceidae—Sparrow, Weavers, Queleas

(A) Genus *Passer* (Sparrow)

All species except *Passer domesticus* (English house sparrow)—Prohibited.

(B) *Foudia madagascariensis* (Madagascar weaver)—Prohibited.

(C) *Ploceus baya* (Baya weaver)—Prohibited.

(D) Genus *Quelea* (Quelea)—All species prohibited.

(7) Family Estrildidae—Waxbills, Munias, Ricebirds

(A) *Padda oryzivora* (Java sparrow)—Prohibited.

- (B) *Mimna mysoria* (Hawaiian rice bird)—Prohibited.
- (8) Family Emberridae—Yellowhammers  
*Emberriza citrinella* (Yellowhammer)—Prohibited.
- (9) Order Falconiformes—Falcons, Eagles, Hawks, Vultures  
 All species prohibited, except under conditions set forth in Section 670, Title 14, California Administrative Code.
- (10) Order Strigiformes—Owls  
 All species prohibited, except under conditions set forth in Section 670, Title 14, California Administrative Code.
- (11) Family Pycnonotidae—Bulbuls or Fruit Thrushes  
*Pycnonotus jocosus* (Red-whiskered bulbul)—Prohibited.
- (12) Family Zosteropidae—Whiteeyes  
 Genus *Zosterops*—All species prohibited.
- (13) Family Psittacidae—Parrots, Parakeets  
*Myiopsitta monachus* (Monk or Quaker parakeet)—Prohibited.
- (b) Class Mammalia—Mammals
- (1) Order Primates  
 All species except Family Hominidae—Prohibited.
- (2) Order Edentata—Sloths, anteaters, armadillos, etc.  
 All species—Prohibited.
- (3) Order Marsupialia—Marsupials or Pouched Animals  
 All species except *Didelphis marsupialis* (Common opossum)—Prohibited.
- (4) Order Insectivora—Shrews, Moles, Hedgehogs, etc.  
 All species—Prohibited.
- (5) Order Dermoptera—Gliding Lemurs  
 All species—Prohibited.
- (6) Order Chiroptera—Bats  
 All species—Prohibited.
- (7) Order Monotremata—Spiny Anteaters, Platypuses  
 All Species—Prohibited
- (8) Order Pholidota—Pangolins, Scaly Anteaters  
 All species—Prohibited
- (9) Order Lagomorpha—Pikas, Rabbits, and Hares  
 All species except domesticated races of rabbits and hares of the Family Leporidae—Prohibited.
- (10) Order Rodentia—Hamster, Field Mice, Voles, Muskrats, Gerbils, Squirrels, Chipmunks, Woodchucks, and Prairie Dogs
- (A) All species prohibited except:
1. *Ondatra zibethica* (Muskrats)—Under conditions set forth in Fish and Game Code Section 2250;
  2. *Myocastor coypus* (Nutria)—Under conditions set forth in Food and Agricultural Code Sections 165-165.6;
  3. Domesticated races of golden hamsters of the species *Mesocricetus auratus*;
  4. Domesticated races of rats or mice (white or albino; trained, dancing or spinning, laboratory-reared); and

## TITLE 14

## FISH AND GAME COMMISSION

52 63.7

(Register 16, No. 5--13176)

5. Domesticated races of guinea pigs of the species *Cavia porcellus*.
6. Domesticated races of chinchillas of the species *Chinchilla laniger*.
- (11) Order Carnivora—Raccoons, Ringtailed Cats, Kinkajous, Coon-tis, Coonmistles, Weasels, Ferrets, Skunks, Polecats, Stoats, Mongooses, Civets
- (A) Skunks (all species)—Prohibited except under conditions set forth in Section 2606.8, Title 17, California Administrative Code.
- (B) All other species except *Procyon lotor* (American raccoon), *Canis familiaris* (domestic dogs), and *Felis catus* (domestic cats)—Prohibited.
- (12) Order Tubulidentata—Aardvarks  
All species—Prohibited.
- (13) Order Proboscidae (Elephants)  
All species—Prohibited.
- (14) Order Hyracoidea (Hyraxes)  
All species—Prohibited.
- (15) Order Sirenia (Dugongs, Manatees)  
All species—Prohibited.
- (16) Order Perissodactyla (Horses, Zebras, Tapirs, Rhinoceroses, etc.)  
All species except Family Equidae—Prohibited.
- (17) Order Artiodactyla—Swine, Peccaries, Camels, Deer, Elk, Moose, Antelopes, Cattle, Goats, Sheep, etc.
- (A) Family Cervidae  
All species—Prohibited, except permits may be issued for all species to a California licensed domesticated game breeder.
- (B) Family Bovidae  
All species—Prohibited, except permits may be issued to a California licensed domesticated game breeder for races of *Ovis canadensis* (Bighorn sheep) which are now or were formerly indigenous to this state.
- (C) Family Antilocapriidae—Pronghorn Antelope Prohibited, except permits may be issued to a California licensed domesticated game breeder.
- (D) All other families and species except *Bison bison* (American bison) and domesticated swine, cattle, sheep, or goats—Prohibited.
- (c) Class Amphibia—Frogs, Toads, Salamanders
- (1) Family Bufonidae—Toads  
*Bufo marinus*, *Bufo paracnemis*, *Bufo horribilis* (Giant toad or marine toad group) and all other large toads from Mexico and Central and South America—Prohibited.
- (2) Family Pipidae—Tongueless Toads  
*Xenopus*—prohibited—all species.

52.68.10

NATURAL RESOURCES

TITLE 14  
(Register 76, No. 5—1-31-76)**671.1. Permits for Zoological Gardens, Research and Film Making.**

(a) With the concurrence of the Departments of Health and Food and Agriculture, the Department of Fish and Game may issue permits for importation, transportation and possession of restricted and prohibited species listed herein for zoological gardens and for use for scientific or public health research by a college, university, or government research agency, or other bona fide scientific institution as determined by the department, to meet immediate research or medical needs. The department may issue permits authorizing the importation, transportation, and possession of animals restricted or prohibited for the welfare of the animals if such animals are to be used for public display or public exhibition through the mediums of motion pictures and television; no permittee shall transfer possession or ownership of any imported animal without approval of the department. All animals imported and possessed under this subsection must be imported, transported, maintained, and disposed of under such conditions as the department may prescribe.

(b) The department may cancel a permit for a violation of the terms of the permit or any fish and game law or regulation. Notice of any such cancellation shall be given to the permit holder. A person whose permit has been canceled may appeal to the commission, and the commission shall either revoke or reinstate the permit.

- History:*
1. Amendment filed 5-6-75 as an emergency; effective upon filing (Register 75, No. 18). For prior history, see Register 75, No. 4.
  2. Certificate of Compliance filed 7-3-75 (Register 75, No. 27).

**671.2. Neutered Male Animals.** With the concurrence of the Departments of Health and Food and Agriculture, permits may be issued by the Department of Fish and Game authorizing the entry of neutered male animals not otherwise admissible, provided the application for permit is accompanied by a certificate issued by a licensed veterinarian evidencing that he personally performed such neutering surgery and setting forth the date thereof, or that he has examined said animal and has determined that said animal has been neutered.

- History:*
1. Amendment filed 6-30-66; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 66, No. 20).
  2. Amendment filed 1-24-75 as an emergency; effective upon filing. Certificate of Compliance included (Register 75, No. 4).

**671.3. Disposition of Violations.** Any live wild animals brought into this State or transported within this State in violation of the provisions of this chapter or any regulations thereunder may, upon notice from the enforcing officer inspecting them or discovering the violation, be shipped out of the State, returned to point of origin or destroyed, within the time specified in said notice, at the option of the owner or bailee.

The exercise of any such option shall be under the direction and control of the enforcing officer and at the expense of the owner or bailee. If the owner or bailee fails to exercise such option within the time specified in the notice, or to comply with the terms of a permit issued pursuant to Section 671.6, the enforcing officer shall immediately thereafter order the transfer of the animals to new owners or destroy the animals at the expense of the owner or bailee.

- History:*
1. Amendment filed 1-24-75 as an emergency; effective upon filing. Certificate of Compliance included (Register 75, No. 4).



- (f) Class Chondrichthyes—Cartilaginous Fish
- (1) Family Carcharhinidae—Sharks  
Carcharhinus (Freshwater sharks)—All species prohibited.
  - (2) Family Potamotrygonidae—Stingray  
Freshwater stingray—All species prohibited
- (g) Class Reptilia—Reptiles
- (1) Family Crocodylidae—Crocodiles  
All species—Prohibited.
  - (2) Family Chelyridae—Snapping turtles  
*Chelydra* and *Macrochelys* (Snapping turtles)—All species prohibited.
  - (3) Family Elapidae—Cobras, Coral Snakes  
All species—Prohibited.
  - (4) Family Viperidae—Adders and Vipers  
All species—Prohibited.
  - (5) Family Crotalidae—Pit Vipers  
All species except *Crotalus viridis* (western rattlesnake), *Crotalus atrox* (western diamondback rattlesnake), *Crotalus ruber* (red diamond rattlesnake), *Crotalus scutulatus* (Mojave rattlesnake), *Crotalus mitchellii* (speckled rattlesnake), and *Crotalus cerastes* (sidewinder)—Prohibited.
  - (6) Family Colubridae—Ordinary Snakes
    - (A) *Dispholidus typus* (Boomslang)—Prohibited.
    - (B) *Thecoltonis kirtlandii* (Bird or Vine Snake)—Prohibited.
- (h) Class Crustacea—Crustaceans
- Subfamily Cambarinae—Crayfish  
All species—Prohibited.
- (i) Class Gastropoda—Slugs, Snails  
All species of slugs and land snails—Prohibited.

NOTE Authority cited Sections 2116–2190, Fish and Game Code.

- History 1. Amendment of subsection (a) filed 2-15-74, effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 74, No. 7). For prior history, see Register 74, No. 3.
2. Amendment filed 1-24-75 as an emergency; effective upon filing. Certificate of Compliance included (Register 75, No. 4).
3. Amendment filed 1-28-76, effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 76, No. 5).

## (d) Class Agnatha—Jawless Fish

All species except *Entosphenus tridentatus*, *Lampetra ayressi*, and *Lampetra planeri* (native species) if taken from native waters in California—Prohibited.

## (e) Class Osteichthyes—Bony Fish

## (1) Family Serranidae—Perch

*Morone americana* or *Roccus americana* (white perch)—Prohibited.

## (2) Family Clupeidae—Shad

*Dorosoma cepedianum* (Cissard shad)—Prohibited.

## (3) Family Sciaenidae—Drum

*Aplodinotus grunniens* (freshwater drum)—Prohibited.

## (4) Family Characidae—Tetra, Piranha, Pacus

(A) *Astynax fasciatus* (Banded tetra)—Prohibited.

(B) *Serrasalmus*, *Serrasalmo*, *Pygocentrus*, *Taddeyella*, *Rooseveltiella*, and *Pygopristis* (Piranhas)—Prohibited.

(C) *Hoplias malabaricus* (Tiger fish)—Prohibited.

## (5) Family Lepisosteidae—Gars

All species—Prohibited.

## (6) Family Amidae—Bowfins

All species—Prohibited.

## (7) Family Poeciliidae—Topminnows

*Belonesox belizanus* (Pike top minnow)—Prohibited.

## (8) Family Ophicephalidae (Chanidae)—Snakeheads

All species—Prohibited.

## (9) Family Cyprinidae—Goldfish, Carp, Grass Carp, Orfe

(A) *Leuciscus idus* or *Idus idus* (Orfe or Ide)—Prohibited.

(B) *Ctenopharyngodon idellus* (Grass carp)—Prohibited.

(C) *Cyprinus carpio* (carp), all species except domesticated varieties such as koi, silver, golden, brocade, mirror, etc.—Prohibited

(D) *Carassius auratus* (goldfish)—All species except domesticated varieties—Prohibited.

## (10) Family Trichomycteridae (Pygidiidae)—South American Catfish.

Subfamilies Pareiodontinae, Tridentinae, Stogophilinae, Vandellinae (Candiru)—Prohibited.

## (11) Family Cetopsidae—South American Catfish.

All species—Prohibited.

## (12) Family Clariidae—Asian and African Catfish

Genera *Clarias*, *Dinotopterus*, *Heteropneustes*, and *Heterobranchus* (Catfish)—Prohibited.

## (13) Family Cichlidae—Tilapia

(A) *Tilapia sparrmanii* (Tilapia)—Prohibited.

(B) *Tilapia zillii* (Tilapia)—Prohibited, except permit may be issued to a person or agency for importation, transportation, or possession in the counties of San Bernardino, Los Angeles, Orange, Riverside, San Diego, and Imperial.

**TITLE 14** FISH AND GAME COMMISSION  
 (Register 76, No. 5—1-31-76)

52.68.9

- (f) **Class Chondrichthyes—Cartilaginous Fish**  
 (1) Family Carcharhinidae—Sharks  
     Carcharhinus (Freshwater sharks)—All species prohibited.  
 (2) Family Potamotrygonidae—Stingray  
     Freshwater stingray—All species prohibited.
- (g) **Class Reptilia—Reptiles**  
 (1) Family Crocodylidae—Crocodiles  
     All species—Prohibited.  
 (2) Family Chelyridae—Snapping turtles  
     *Chelydra* and *Macrochelys* (Snapping turtles)—All species prohibited.  
 (3) Family Elapidae—Cobras, Coral Snakes  
     All species—Prohibited.  
 (4) Family Viperidae—Adders and Vipers  
     All species—Prohibited.  
 (5) Family Crotalidae—Pit Vipers  
     All species except *Crotalus viridis* (western rattlesnake), *Crotalus atrox* (western diamondback rattlesnake), *Crotalus ruber* (red diamond rattlesnake), *Crotalus scutulatus* (Mojave rattlesnake), *Crotalus mitchellii* (speckled rattlesnake), and *Crotalus cerastes* (sidewinder)—Prohibited.  
 (6) Family Colubridae—Ordinary Snakes  
     (A) *Dispholidus typus* (Boomslang)—Prohibited.  
     (B) *Thecoltonis kirtlandii* (Bird or Vine Snake)—Prohibited.
- (h) **Class Crustacea—Crustaceans**  
     Subfamily Cambarinae—Crayfish  
     All species—Prohibited.
- (i) **Class Gastropoda—Slugs, Snails**  
     All species of slugs and land snails—Prohibited.

NOTE: Authority cited: Sections 2116–2190, Fish and Game Code.

- History:* 1. Amendment of subsection (a) filed 2-15-74; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 74, No. 7). For prior history, see Register 74, No. 3.  
 2. Amendment filed 1-24-75 as an emergency; effective upon filing. Certificate of Compliance included (Register 75, No. 4).  
 3. Amendment filed 1-28-76; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 76, No. 5).

**671.1. Permits for Zoological Gardens, Research and Film Making.**

(a) With the concurrence of the Departments of Health and Food and Agriculture, the Department of Fish and Game may issue permits for importation, transportation and possession of restricted and prohibited species listed herein for zoological gardens and for use for scientific or public health research by a college, university, or government research agency, or other bona fide scientific institution as determined by the department, to meet immediate research or medical needs. The department may issue permits authorizing the importation, transportation, and possession of animals restricted or prohibited for the welfare of the animals if such animals are to be used for public display or public exhibition through the mediums of motion pictures and television, no permittee shall transfer possession or ownership of any imported animal without approval of the department. All animals imported and possessed under this subsection must be imported, transported, maintained, and disposed of under such conditions as the department may prescribe.

(b) The department may cancel a permit for a violation of the terms of the permit or any fish and game law or regulation. Notice of any such cancellation shall be given to the permit holder. A person whose permit has been canceled may appeal to the commission, and the commission shall either revoke or reinstate the permit.

*History* 1 Amendment filed 5-6-75 as an emergency, effective upon filing (Register 75, No 18) For prior history, see Register 75, No 4  
2 Certificate of Compliance filed 7-3-75 (Register 75, No 27)

**671.2. Neutered Male Animals.** With the concurrence of the Departments of Health and Food and Agriculture, permits may be issued by the Department of Fish and Game authorizing the entry of neutered male animals not otherwise admissible, provided the application for permit is accompanied by a certificate issued by a licensed veterinarian evidencing that he personally performed such neutering surgery and setting forth the date thereof, or that he has examined said animal and has determined that said animal has been neutered.

*History* 1 Amendment filed 6-30-66, effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 66, No 20)  
2 Amendment filed 1-24-75 as an emergency, effective upon filing Certificate of Compliance included (Register 75, No 4)

**671.3. Disposition of Violations.** Any live wild animals brought into this State or transported within this State in violation of the provisions of this chapter or any regulations thereunder may, upon notice from the enforcing officer inspecting them or discovering the violation, be shipped out of the State, returned to point of origin or destroyed, within the time specified in said notice, at the option of the owner or bailee.

The exercise of any such option shall be under the direction and control of the enforcing officer and at the expense of the owner or bailee. If the owner or bailee fails to exercise such option within the time specified in the notice, or to comply with the terms of a permit issued pursuant to Section 671.6, the enforcing officer shall immediately thereafter order the transfer of the animals to new owners or destroy the animals at the expense of the owner or bailee.

*History* 1 Amendment filed 1-24-75 as an emergency, effective upon filing Certificate of Compliance included (Register 75, No 4)

-7-

**671.4. Confinement of Imported Birds and Animals.** Except as otherwise provided in the permit any and all wild animals legally imported into this State or possessed under the permit and terms and conditions of Sections 2116-2191 of the Fish and Game Code (1) shall at all times be kept in cages or enclosures of such construction or confined in such a manner as to preclude the possibility of escape; (2) such cages, enclosures or confinement shall be of such size as to permit the animals reasonable freedom of movement; (3) such cages or enclosures must, at all times be kept in a clean and sanitary condition; (4) captive animals must be provided with adequate food, water, shelter and veterinary care; (5) the Department of Fish and Game or any of its employees shall judge the suitability of the cages or enclosures for these purposes; (6) the body or carcass of any animal held in confinement under these sections, which animal dies, or is suspected to have died, from disease, must, if the department so orders, be sent to the nearest office of the department for examination.

**671.5. Release of Animals Into the Wild.** No person shall release into the wild state any bird or animal which is not native to California or which, in the opinion of the department, has not been successfully introduced prior to 1955, without receiving prior permission from the commission to do so, except that no permission will be granted to any person to release turkeys that have been domestically reared into the wild for propagation purposes. Only wild trapped turkeys will be used for this purpose. Every person who releases Barbary partridge, Turkish or Greek chukar partridges, French, Spanish or Arabian red-legged partridges; and/or bobwhite or coturnix quail into the wild shall have a valid permit signed by the director of the department before making such a release. Persons desiring to release such birds shall submit an application showing the following:

- (1) number and sex of birds to be released;
- (2) location of the proposed release; and
- (3) proposed date of such release.

At the time of release of such birds the department may require that they shall be banded by the permittee with appropriate bands furnished by the department. The department may require a report giving the age, sex, and number of the individual birds released. Application for the introduction of all non-native birds or animals, except Barbary-partridge, Turkish or Greek chukar partridges; French, Spanish or Arabian red-legged partridges; and/or bobwhite or coturnix quail shall be made to the commission on forms supplied by the department.

*History* 1 Correctory amendment filed 9-25-64 (Register 64, No 19).  
2 Amendment filed 6-30-66, effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 66, No 20)  
3 Amendment filed 8-1-74, effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 74, No 31).  
4 Editorial correction (Register 74, No 45).  
5 Editorial correction (Register 75, No 23).

**671.6. Issuance of Permits.** Permits required in Sections 671, 671.1, 671.2 and 671.5, Title 14, California Administrative Code and Section 2150.5, Fish and Game Code, are to be issued only from the Sacramento office of the Department of Fish and Game upon an application form to be furnished by the department. Before a permit is issued, the issuing officer shall confer with the appropriate officers of the Department of Food and Agriculture. All permits shall be signed by the Director of the Department of Fish and Game or his authorized representative. Permits shall authorize the transportation of animals within the county of residence for veterinary care, club meetings, or breeding projects. All other transportation is prohibited unless authorized by a permit issued by the department. Each application for a permit shall be accompanied by payment of a non-refundable application fee of twenty-five dollars (\$25). Permits shall expire two years from the date of issuance.

*History* 1 Amendment filed 11-15-67, effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 67, No 46)  
2 Amendment filed 1-24-75 as an emergency, effective upon filing Certificate of Compliance included (Register 75, No 4)  
3 Amendment filed 1-28-76, effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 76, No 5)



APPENDIX 11

Paper Presented on Alberta's  
Approach in Philosophy and Regulation Form  
Related to Possession of Wildlife



## POSSESSION OF WILDLIFE REGULATIONS

ALBERTA'S APPROACH IN PHILOSOPHY AND REGULATION FORM

In 1974, Alberta started to write a piece of legislation under the Wildlife Act that would incorporate all the piecemeal regulations pertaining to wildlife in captivity. This has been a difficult legal task as there is currently a lack of stated or uniform policy, objectives and/or methods of implementation, as well as an apparent lack of complete authority under the Wildlife Act. The following is the first attempt at developing both a simple statement of philosophy and an objective for the required changes in "wildlife in captivity" legislation.

Albertans own two kinds of property: that to which we have title as individuals and that to which we hold in community. Wildlife is considered to be the latter, a public resource, even though much of it occurs on private lands. As a renewable and public resource, it must be protected and managed for future generations - the overriding objective of the Wildlife Act and regulations.

The current philosophy of the primary agent of wildlife management in Alberta, the Alberta Fish and Wildlife Division, concerning possession of wildlife is that wildlife remains in the wild and is not to be kept in captivity, except under specified situations. The use of wildlife for educational and scientific purposes has been authorized under control and the use of wildlife for commercial purposes has been limited. Permits are required for possession of all native and exotic species of wildlife except for 'hares and squirrels'. Wildlife in Alberta is defined as all indigenous and non-indigenous species of mammals or birds, except:



- (a) domestic cattle, swine, horses, goats, fowl, sheep, dogs, cats and captive bison in southern Alberta, and
- (b) a few species of ground squirrels, mice, rats and voles.

In recent years there has been a proliferation of interest groups who demand special use of wildlife. Our existing legislation pertaining to wildlife in captivity is as follows:

#### THE WILDLIFE ACT

- defines wildlife and possession of wildlife
- allows for regulations pertaining to:
  - (a) licencing and regulating big game farms, dog trainers and pheasant shooting grounds.
  - (b) collection and disposition of wildlife
  - (c) transportation of wildlife
  - (d) issuing other permits regulating transport, possession and use of native or exotic wildlife for public display
- defines that property in all wildlife within Alberta is vested in the Crown.
- prohibits possessing and releasing wildlife to the wild (except rabbits, hares and squirrels) without a permit.

#### BIG GAME FARM REGULATIONS

- deals with types of farms:
    - (a) Big Game Farm licence (all birds and mammals, reptiles and amphibians) for the purposes of propagation or for sale, gain or profit.
- Acreage? = private land or privately owned leased land

- (b) Restricted Big Game Farm Licence (whitetailed deer, mule deer and musk oxen only) for the purposes of propagation or for sale, gain or profit. Live only - 20 acres of land, privately owned or leased privately owned.
  - (c) Commercial Photographic Big Game Farms - all mammals, birds, reptiles or amphibians for purposes of photography only - 20 acres.
- deals with ungulates, fur bearers, fur bearing carnivores and exotic mammals.
  - deals with renewals of licences, eligibility guidelines, movement of mammals, collection of native animals and dealing with disease problems.

#### GAME BIRD FARM REGULATIONS

- deals with types of farms:
  - (a) Class A - allows propagation of game birds (pheasants, chukars, bob-white quail, merriam turkey) for gain or profit (e.g. for restaurant use)..
  - (b) Class B - as in Class A but for pleasure only - maximum of 50 birds in aggregate
  - (c) Class C - for keeping pheasant and merriam turkeys for release to the wild (chukars are also allowed on a "call back" basis for dog training)
- regulations for licence renewals, conditions for holding birds and for release

PHEASANT SHOOTING GROUNDS

- deals with a licence to allow an operator to raise pheasants on a parcel of land for hunting purposes. There are conditions on the type of land and facilities for this type of operation and release. Only one per Township and not closer than six miles.

FUR FARMS ACT (DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE)

- allows an operator to keep native fur bearers in captivity for commercial purposes, with stipulations regarding renewal, control of disease and importation.

REGULATIONS RESPECTING ISSUE OF PERMITS AUTHORIZING PUBLIC PERFORMANCE BY WILD BIRDS AND ANIMALS

This regulation allows the Minister to issue a permit to any person having lawful possession of any trained live bird or animal, wild by nature, to show at a public performance.

The reason for wild animals to be held in captivity are for display, trade, raising for release to the wild, for dog training purposes, study, and simple possession. The present regulations do not fully allow these legitimate uses or do they adequately ensure that:

- 1) native wildlife will not be replaced by exotics (directly, or indirectly as a result of disease, parasites, etc.)
- 2) undue exploitation of all Alberta wildlife (amphibians and reptiles as well as rare species) will not occur

- 3) rare and/or endangered species of all wildlife will be adequately managed
- 4) humane care in collection and possession is exercised
- 5) possession of "injurious" wildlife (of high risk) to human health, domestic cattle health, agriculture, forestry will not occur.

The intention of the new regulations should not be to change the existing philosophy - that all wildlife should remain wild. Nevertheless, there is a need for fundamental changes, adjustments and areas of greater emphasis as follows:

- 1) there is a need for more permissive regulations to allow individuals and organizations to raise wildlife where there is insufficient cover or food to ensure adequate native wildlife populations. While fees should be waived in most cases, all sites should be licenced.

Examples are:

(a) Fish and Game Clubs raising pheasants for release (either day old or six-week old chicks provided free from Brooks Pheasant Hatchery on the basis of releasing in the fall or spring into areas where there is habitat and public access for hunting.

(b) Upland Birds Alberta efforts through the Upland Bird Improvement Sites (fenced habitat areas of 2-5 acres with pheasants provided free from Brooks Pheasant Hatchery for maximum wild production).

(c) 4-H clubs raising pheasants for release (day old chicks provided free from Brooks Pheasant Hatchery to clubs on the

- 1) (c) continued -  
basis that birds are released into the wild, onto good cover).  
  
(d) Cooperative project with individuals e.g. J. Campbell raising falcons for experimental purposes and rehabilitating wounded birds for release to the wild (as a project endorsed and partially sponsored by the Division). The Smeeton's efforts in working with rare species.  
  
(e) University and other Governmental research such as at Ellerslie (U. of A.) and Wainwright (R. Fyfe - C.W.S.).  
  
(f) The Calgary Zoo also partially falls into this category as it is involved in the propagation of endangered species to maintain species as well in the rehabilitation of wounded birds for release to the wild.
- 2) The proposed regulations make provision for sick, abandoned injured or confiscated wildlife to be turned over to certain licenced institutions for
  - (1) return to the wild
  - (2) added to inventory
  - (3) displayed
  - (4) preservation for legal matter
  - (5) dispensed to licenced operators
- 3) There is a need for a more permissive regulation to encourage dog training particularly in relation to hunting through dog trials (with a permit) and using live birds for trials.
- 4) There is a need for a more definite guideline on space - pens - cages and facilities for all types of animals to ensure that they are kept in a clean human manner and that they have the necessary

4) continued -

facilities to ensure that their biological needs are met.

To this end, we are soliciting the assistance of various persons and institutions, i.e.

Richard Fyfe - raptors

Harold Weaver - waterfowl

Jerry Pelchat - upland birds

Calgary Herpetological Society - reptiles and amphibians

Calgary Zoo - mammals and overall

For most mammals we will be following the guidelines established by the International Zoological Association. The recommended sizes and facilities will be minimum standards only.

- 5) There is a need to define and stay firm on a policy regarding "pets". The list of suitable pets (by G. Campbell) is adequate and any restrictions will be endorsed by the Alberta Veterinary Association. Appendix " " lists the wildlife not covered by the regulations. These are basically those species now considered pets. These will be the only wildlife species allowed to be sold by pet stores. Pet stores will not be licenced as they will not be allowed to traffic in any wildlife covered by the regulations.
- 6) There is a need for greater control of disease and parasite transmission in Alberta through enforcement of reporting disease problems and import regulations. Few Albertans realize that small turtles cause 40,000 cases of salmonella poisoning annually in the United States. Or that in 1972, viral Newcastle disease was traced to a flock of chickens that had been exposed to parrots imported into California. The result was the slaughter of eleven million chickens. We must develop a better liaison with the

- 6) continued -  
Provincial and Federal Veterinary personnel over disease and import guidelines. A Provincial veterinarian could be the arbitrator over disputes over the movement and welfare of animals. Some negotiations have already occurred in this area.
- 7) There is a need for reviewing fur farm regulations as they logically fall into this review but negotiations with Agriculture will be required.
- 8) There is a need for a collection permit policy to be developed to:
- (a) only allow sufficient stocks per operator (e.g. six ungulates of each species plus the occasional one for breeding).
  - (b) allow the Division or its agent to carry out all collections with the operator covering the costs.
  - (c) increase and rationalize licence fee charges e.g. wolverine should be \$300 from \$75, grizzly higher than bighorn sheep and all in some relation to the market place (e.g. goats \$2,000 to \$3,000).
  - (d) allow collection permits only to a few classes of game farms who in turn could provide animals to other operators.
  - (e) ensure requests for collection must be received by the end of the year for the following year to allow for priorities to be determined.

It may be possible to have an operator, and preferably the Calgary Zoo, have sufficient stock to provide all legitimate demands.

- 9) There is a need for regulations to be inclusive to all wildlife which means that operators with migratory birds should be administered under the regulations, in keeping with the general guidelines of the Migratory Birds Convention Act. It is our intention to make it mandatory that the holders of an Avicultural permit issued under the Migratory Birds Convention Act also have a provincial licence. This will be worked out in conjunction with the C.W.S.
- 10) There is a need for special screening of individuals and mandatory training in care and handling of animals.

There are many other areas that have to be considered such as possession of stuffed animals, Sunday hunting for pheasant shooting grounds, special status for raptors, hares and squirrels out of the exemption of the Wildlife Act and the inclusion of amphibians and reptiles.

The present draft of proposed regulations covers all these points, combines all the types of regulations and has a straight forward set of objectives. The most significant elements in the new classification are the following requirements for licences and permits.

The holder of a valid and subsisting licence or permit issued for that purpose may exercise the following privileges:

- (a) Restricted Wildlife Farm Licence - Class A, entitles the holder thereof to possess the species of wildlife specified in Appendix "D" but not for gain or profit.
- (b) Restricted Wildlife Farm Licence - Class B, entitles the holder thereof to possess wildlife as specified in Appendix "E" for the purpose of pleasure, but not for trade, gain or profit.



- (c) Restricted Wildlife Farm Licence - Class "C", entitles the holder thereof to operate a pheasant shooting ground for commercial purposes.
- (d) Restricted Wildlife Farm Licence - Class "D", entitles the holder thereof to possess and release wildlife as specified in Appendix "F" for non-profit purposes, subject to any conditions prescribed on the licence, for release to the wild pursuant to these regulations.
- (e) Restricted Wildlife Farm Licence - Class "E", entitles the holder thereof to have wildlife in possession for the purpose of commercial photography.
- (f) Restricted Wildlife Farm Licence - Class "F", entitles the holder thereof to raise fur-bearing animals as specified on the licence for the purpose of propagation, pelting and sale.
- (g) Restricted Wildlife Farm Licence - Class "G", entitles the holder thereof to raise pheasants (*Phasianus colchicus*) in captivity for the purposes of slaughter and sale.
- (h) Wildlife Farm Licence entitles the holder thereof to keep wildlife as specified in possession for the purpose of propagation, sale or profit.

- (i) Zoological Institution Licence may be issued to a zoological society and permits the holder to have wildlife in possession for public display and also allows the holder to propagate, buy, sell or trade wildlife pursuant to these regulations.
- (j) Special Photography Permits entitles the holder thereof to possess specified wildlife for the purpose of commercial photography for a period not exceeding sixty days.
- (k) Special Show Permit may be issued to the holder of a zoological institution licence to permit the removal and display of specified wildlife under specified conditions at specified locations within Alberta.
- (l) Collection Permit entitles the holder thereof to capture wildlife designated thereon under the terms and conditions specified on the permit.
- (m) Scientific Research Permit entitles the holder thereof to possess the species of wildlife specified on the permit and within the terms and conditions specified therein for the purpose of scientific research in relation to a program administered by a recognized University, College, Technical Institute or official government agency only.

- (n) Special Transit Permit entitles the holder thereof to transport the species of wildlife described on the permit under the terms and conditions specified therein.
- (o) Show Permit may be issued to the holders of wildlife farm licences, circus licences, restricted wildlife farm licences Class A, E and F to permit the removal and display of specified wildlife under specified conditions at a specified location within Alberta.
- (p) Circus licence entitles the holder thereof to possess and transport within Alberta and to make application for show permits for display of that wildlife at locations within Alberta.
- (q) Upland Bird Propagation Pen Permit may be issued to the owner of a suitable pen for the propagation of specified upland birds in specified areas.
- (r) Export Permit entitles the holder to export specified wildlife to points outside Alberta.
- (s) Import Permit entitles the holder to import specified wildlife into Alberta.

Despite changes in legislation, allowing a more liberal approach to captive wildlife, there is also a need for more rigid enforcement of regulations to reduce the number of marginal operations.

NO.	SPECIES	OUTDOOR ENCLOSURE		INDOOR ENCLOSURE		ADDITIONAL AREA PER ADULT ANIMAL	ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS NOTES
		AREA	VOLUME	AREA	VOLUME		
2-6	Pronghorn Antelope	1000 M <sup>2</sup>				40 M <sup>2</sup>	Shelter
2-6	Whitetail Deer Mule Deer	1000 M <sup>2</sup>				40 M <sup>2</sup>	Shelter
2-6	Moose Elk	1000 M <sup>2</sup>				50 M <sup>2</sup>	Shelter
2-6	Barren Ground Caribou	1000 M <sup>2</sup>				40 M <sup>2</sup>	Shelter
2-6	Woodland Caribou	1000 M <sup>2</sup>				50 M <sup>2</sup>	Shelter
2-4	Bison	1000 M <sup>2</sup>				100 M <sup>2</sup>	Shelter
2-8	Mountain Goats Mountain Sheep	1000 M <sup>2</sup>				40 M <sup>2</sup>	Shelter
2	Polar Bear	400 M <sup>2</sup>				20 M <sup>2</sup>	Basin of at least 200 M <sup>3</sup> individual boxes of 6 M <sup>2</sup>
2	Black Bear Grizzly Bear	200 M <sup>2</sup>		16 M <sup>2</sup>	32 M <sup>2</sup>	20 M <sup>2</sup>	Individual boxes of 6 M <sup>2</sup>

NO.	SPECIES	OUTDOOR ENCLOSURE		INDOOR ENCLOSURE		ADDITIONAL AREA PER ADULT ANIMAL	ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS NOTES
		AREA	VOLUME	AREA	VOLUME		
2	Wolverine	200 M <sup>2</sup>		16 M <sup>2</sup>	32 M <sup>2</sup>	20 M <sup>2</sup>	
2	Wolf Coyote	200 M <sup>2</sup>		16 M <sup>2</sup>	32 M <sup>2</sup>	20 M <sup>2</sup>	
2	Fox	150 M <sup>2</sup>		10 M <sup>2</sup>	15 M <sup>2</sup>	10 M <sup>2</sup>	
2	Badgers	40 M <sup>2</sup>		4 M <sup>2</sup>	8 M <sup>3</sup>	4 M <sup>2</sup>	
2	Otter	40 M <sup>2</sup>		4 M <sup>2</sup>	8 M <sup>3</sup>	4 M <sup>2</sup>	Basin 6 M <sup>3</sup>
2	Skunk Raccoon Fisher Marten	20 M <sup>2</sup>	50 M <sup>3</sup>	6 M <sup>2</sup>	15 M <sup>3</sup>	2 M <sup>2</sup>	Sleeping Box
2	Mink	10 M <sup>2</sup>				2 M <sup>2</sup>	Basin 1 M <sup>3</sup>
2	Weasel	10 M <sup>2</sup>				2 M <sup>2</sup>	
2	Cougar	50 M <sup>2</sup>	150 M <sup>3</sup>	16 M <sup>2</sup>	32 M <sup>3</sup>	6 M <sup>2</sup>	Individual Sleeping Box

NO.	SPECIES	OUTDOOR ENCLOSURE		INDOOR ENCLOSURE		ADDITIONAL AREA PER ADULT ANIMAL	ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS NOTES
		AREA	VOLUME	AREA	VOLUME		
2	Lynx Bobcat	30 M <sup>2</sup>	90 M <sup>3</sup>	10 M <sup>2</sup>	20 M <sup>3</sup>	3 M <sup>3</sup>	Individual Sleeping Box
2-10	Marmots	40 M <sup>2</sup>				4 M <sup>2</sup>	
2-5	Pikas	20 M <sup>2</sup>				1 M <sup>2</sup>	
	Muskrat						
2	Beaver	40 M <sup>2</sup>				4 M <sup>2</sup>	Basin 6 M <sup>3</sup> 190
1	Porcupines Rabbits Hares	40 M <sup>2</sup>				4 M <sup>2</sup>	
-10	Prairie Dogs	40 M <sup>2</sup>				2 M <sup>2</sup>	
	Squirrels	8 M <sup>2</sup>	20 M <sup>3</sup>			1 M <sup>2</sup>	
	Chipmunks	8 M <sup>2</sup>	20 M <sup>3</sup>			1 M <sup>2</sup>	

NO.	SPECIES	OUTDOOR ENCLOSURE		INDOOR ENCLOSURE		ADDITIONAL AREA PER ADULT ANIMAL	ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS NOTES
		AREA	VOLUME	AREA	VOLUME		
2	Wood Rats	10 M <sup>2</sup>	25 M <sup>3</sup>			1 M <sup>2</sup>	
2	Ground Hog	40 M <sup>2</sup>				4 M <sup>2</sup>	





APPENDIX 12

Paper on Captive Wildlife  
in Saskatchewan  
Presented by P.C. Naftel



## CAPTIVE WILDLIFE IN SASKATCHEWAN

Every spring, the Saskatchewan Department of Tourism and Renewable Resources receives requests to allow a family to keep deer fawn or some other form of "orphaned" wildlife. The family subsequently receives a visit from a Conservation Officer, who, in turn, illustrates the family's inability to care for the animal adequately and the potential problems that can arise in terms of safety to the children and neighbours. Most heed the logic but, occasionally, there are those who refuse to surrender the animal. The Conservation Officer is then placed in the position of having to seize the animal. Sometimes, such action generates a public hue and cry. The media, sensing public interest in wildlife stories, become involved and the wildlife agency is painted in a less-than-favourable light. The family's emotional attachment and obvious willingness to care for the small animal are contrasted with the Department's unemotional logic.

Lately, there has been a new dimension added to the captive animal story. It involves some form of exotic wildlife. Whether people want such animals as lions, ocelots, leopards, etc., as status symbols or simply as a pet, on which they can lavish their sense of doing something humane, is unclear. Perhaps a psychologist could find many reasons for owning wildlife. Undoubtedly, higher incomes have resulted in the situation where more people can afford to consider owning such a "pet". Similarly, there has been an apparent increase in availability of wildlife, both indigenous and exotic, to the public via pet shops and animal dealers.

### Saskatchewan Policies For Captive Wildlife

The Saskatchewan Department of Tourism and Renewable Resources is the agency responsible for provincial wildlife, and by policy and law the property of wildlife has been unavailable to the private citizen. The Department therefore, has taken the position that wildlife should not be regarded as items for personal pets. The traditional view of wildlife as an item of public property, and not a commodity for private ownership or commercial sale, has been around a long time. This view, I suspect, has the sympathy of most game managers and wildlife administrators.

In Saskatchewan, this view has been translated into a set of regulations that outline "acceptable" reasons and conditions for obtaining and holding wildlife in captivity.

Essentially, only three purposes are recognized for holding captive wildlife in Saskatchewan. These are:

- to permit public display of wildlife by means of a zoo, wild animal park or game farm
- for falconry
- game farms for the purpose of raising game birds.

In this latter regard, the pheasant is the most commonly utilized bird, but other birds such as the chuckar and wild turkey have been held under permit. Usually, such birds are destined for release into the wild for the sportsman's gun.

Lately, however, demands for captive wildlife have increased, which have added new dimensions to the captive animal situation. These have given rise to examination of the rationale for captive wildlife and the Department's involvement in regulating such activities. Does the Department's authority and responsibility carry over to the regulation of animals that do not originate from Saskatchewan? An argument can be generated that in fact it does, but, should the agency become involved? Does the expertise and manpower permit it to become involved? There are those who suggest the agency should confine itself to native wildlife and ignore exotic wildlife.

#### Present Demands For Captive Wildlife

For purposes of this discussion the subject has been subdivided into three facets. The first deals with mammals, the second with birds, and the third with amphibians and reptiles.

#### 1. Mammals in Captivity

##### (a) Big Game Ranching

At present, an experimental big game ranch near Lloydminster is in operation. The purpose of this facility is to raise elk and deer for experimental purposes and possibly for resale. Stock for the facility has been obtained from surplus stock at zoos and game farms in Canada and in the United States.

Requests have also been received to permit musk ox and yak ranching in northern Saskatchewan. The intent of at least one of these requests was to release the animals into the wild for possible use

by sportsmen. At least one yak has been imported into Saskatchewan (without a permit). Recently, it met an untimely death as a result of complaints from neighbouring farmers.

(b) Buffalo Ranching

Several establishments currently rear buffalo for meat purposes. Stock has been purchased from National Park disposal sales or from other commercial operations. Saskatchewan currently regards such animals as domestic stock and a captive animal permit is not required.

(c) Zoos and Game Farms

The purpose of zoos and most game farms has been to retain wildlife for public display. They are expensive operations and two types of operations have evolved. The private roadside operation has tended to remain small and deal with only a few native species. The larger operations are usually supported by public funds and have a much wider compliment of species. At present, the Department of Tourism and Renewable Resources operates a zoo in Moose Jaw.

The animals, for such facilities are usually obtained from other zoos or game farms.

(d) Wildlife as Personal Pets

Demands of this nature have been largely confined to species native to Saskatchewan. Requests for permits to keep gophers, raccoons, skunks, foxes, coyotes, wolves, black bear and whitetail deer have been made. Invariably, the animal is already in captivity and the Department is placed in the position of confiscating the animal and/or freeing it. The policy of the Department has been to discourage private retention of native wildlife. In the case of skunks, permits are refused on the basis of the threat of rabies. In Saskatchewan, this species is the most common vector of this disease. With the larger species, particularly wolves, black bear and deer, permits are restricted because of public safety and liability concerns.

(e) Exotic Wildlife as Personal Pets

Demands for permits to retain exotic wildlife as personal pets have arisen in Saskatchewan only in recent months. Investigations have shown, however, that exotic wildlife of various forms have been available for some years. These include monkeys, skunks and other forms of rodents, lions, and ocelots. One pet shop operator summed up the availability of exotic wildlife with the statement, "If you want it and it's available, we will get it for you".

The Saskatchewan Department of Tourism and Renewable Resources generally tended to ignore regulation of pet shops and the subject of exotic wildlife as pets. Recently, however, a family in Prince Albert applied to retain an African lioness. Consultation with city officials indicated they did not favor the application, particularly when it was learned the lion could grow to 300 pounds. The application was subsequently refused and we understand Manitoba is now investigating the pet shop that holds the lioness. The lioness appears to have attracted attention of other citizens who hold or wish to retain exotic wildlife. Shortly after the lioness publicity, an application to import and retain an ocelot was received. Discussions with the applicant have revealed the possibility of at least several other such animals being held in Saskatchewan. An investigation is currently ongoing in an attempt to ascertain the veracity of this claim, and to determine the possible involvement of the Endangered Species Convention.

At this point in time, the question of regulating exotic wildlife and pet shops has been held in abeyance. Hopefully, some discussion of this matter at the Captive Animal Seminar will result, in order that a common approach can be determined for western Canada.

2. Birds in Captivity(a) Pheasants

The most commonly issued permit to hold wild birds in captivity involves pheasants. A provincial game farm operated by the Saskatchewan Wildlife Federation, with support from the Department of Tourism and Renewable Resources, produces upward of 10,000 pheasants

for release. Local sportsmen's organizations may obtain pheasants as chicks and often rear them to 10 weeks old before releasing them.

Demands are also made to obtain and release other exotic birds such as chuckars and wild turkeys. In spite of evidence these will not survive under Saskatchewan conditions, demands continue. At present, wild turkeys are being liberated in southeast Saskatchewan by a local sportsman's organization. Their close geographical location to the more heavily publicized Manitoba example no doubt has given rise to this project. At the time of writing this paper another flock of wild turkeys was discovered in central Saskatchewan. An investigation is under way to determine the source of these birds.

(b) Migratory Birds

Perhaps the second most common type of request to obtain and hold wild birds in captivity centres on migratory waterfowl. Canada geese are the most sought after bird. Such requests are turned over to the Canadian Wildlife Service for handling. Some problems do spill over into the provincial jurisdiction from these requests. The most common is a demand for a no hunting area to build up a free-flying flock. Another type of problem is obtaining birds. Because the Department operates a goose rearing project, many requests for a pair or several pair of birds are received.

The Nisku project, located at Eyebrow Lake, has a large captive flock of Canada geese. The function of this project is to use the progeny to repopulate vacant goose habitat with free-flying Canada geese. This project has considerable support from Saskatchewan sportsmen and several free-flying flocks have been established. It should be noted the Department operates this project under an avicultural permit from the Canadian Wildlife Service and, occasionally, differences of opinion regarding the role of this project occur.

(c) Birds of Prey

A very limited number of permits to capture and retain birds of prey are issued in Saskatchewan.



Only certified members of the Saskatchewan Falconry Association are eligible for such privileges and these are obtained only after very rigid screening procedures are met.

Lack of staff expertise in this field is a decided shortcoming.

(d) Exotic Birds as Pets

The Department has avoided involvement in the regulation of exotic birds such as parrots, budgies, myna birds and the like. Examination of pet store stocks indicate trade in exotic birds is of a large proportion.

Recent events in Ontario wherein diseased parrots were discovered in a pet shop indicate some regulatory shortcomings may exist in the pet shop field. A municipal health ordinance was required to quarantine the shop and destroy the birds. Under existing legislation the same approach would have been necessary in Saskatchewan.

(e) Reptiles, Lizards and Amphibians

(i) Reptiles, Lizards and Amphibians as Pets

Probably every active boy at one time or another has taken a frog or garter snake as a pet. Usually this is a short-lived association as mothers are not inclined towards such house pets. Often the "pet" dies after a short period if indeed the mother can be persuaded to allow it to be retained. The Department does not attempt to regulate such activities nor would it wish to do so.

On the other side of the coin lies the question of exotic reptiles, lizards and amphibians. Pet shops currently sell constrictors and various forms of lizards. Occasionally we hear of a pet rattlesnake, alligator or iguana. There must be some truth to such reports as a free roaming iguana was found in Regina last summer. There is a possibility animals of this nature are obtained outside the country and illegally imported as the visitor returns.

The present example of the African lioness brings to mind the question of public safety. Does the wildlife agency have a responsibility here or should this be passed on to municipal officials to judge on the basis of local conditions? It is our belief that provincial wildlife agencies should retain the authority to regulate exotic wildlife. At this point in time, however, we would not see becoming involved in regulating pet stores and those species which do not pose a threat to native ecosystems or to humans.

2. Need For a Common Approach to Captive Animal Regulations

At present, a variety of regulations and philosophies appear to exist within Canadian wildlife agencies. This is confusing to the public and the possibility exists that a diametrically opposed philosophy from another jurisdiction may be used as evidence that a particular agency is acting irrationally. If a permit has been refused and the next level of government becomes involved, the lack of knowledge of the rationale for the differing philosophies may be used to an agency's disadvantage. New policies are sometimes created in this manner.

3. What Reasons Should be Endorsed For Holding Wildlife in Captivity?

We see this question being addressed under two separate headings:

(a) Native Wildlife

Generally speaking we endorse a hard line approach to the capture and retention of native wildlife. This is based on:

- (i) Most people are unable to properly look after wildlife.
- (ii) The fear that wildlife might become commercial commodities and exploited as such.
- (iii) The public emotion that wildlife are "meant" to be wild and not debased by captivity.

Exceptions to the above would be:

- (i) Zoos and highly qualified game farms that would exhibit captive wildlife for public display.

It is likely the severity of the Saskatchewan climate would preclude survival of such animals in the wild but our lack of knowledge of potential problems (i.e., diseases, etc.) is cause for concern.

(ii) Commercial Capture of Reptiles and Amphibians

Some requests to capture and sell reptiles and amphibians have been received from scientific supply companies. These have been refused as little biological background exists on which potential effects of such activities can be evaluated.

The Saskatchewan Philosophy on Captive Wildlife

To some degree this has been discussed previously, however, there are some fundamental points that require further examination.

1. Should Canadian Wildlife Agencies Become Involved in Captive Wildlife Regulations?

We believe that in the regulation of wildlife, for which the agencies have direct and clear authority to manage and preserve, the answer is yes.

Similarly, if wildlife of the kinds and species native to the province or territory for which the agency has jurisdiction are to be imported, the answer should also be yes. The rationale being that some record must be maintained to preserve the identity of such introduced animals. The question of disease should also be considered.

If exotic wildlife are to be introduced into the wild, the answer should also be positive. Irresponsible introduction of exotic animals has created many notable problems in the past.

If exotic wildlife are to be imported for truly captive animal situations, perhaps the wildlife agency need not be involved. Some problems do exist with this thinking, in that wildlife do escape. The example of the iguana is a case in point. Fisheries people occasionally find exotic species in natural waterways. Apparently, such fish have been disposed of by the flush toilet method. Does this present a threat to native ecosystems?

- (ii) Scientific endeavours judged to be of benefit.
- (iii) Highly qualified individuals engaged in falconry.
- (iv) Rural conservationists with a definitive purpose for holding wildlife in captivity. Most of these would be considered Aviculturists.

(b) Exotic Wildlife

The Saskatchewan approach to exotic wildlife has been a mixture of the hard and soft line. Most official requests for permits to import and retain captive exotic wildlife have been refused. On the other hand, it is known many people do obtain exotic wildlife as pets without any thought of a permit. It is this area which requires clarification. In this regard we would propose to regulate only those exotic wildlife that:

- (i) Would be released into the wild.
- (ii) Pose a potential threat to humans.
- (iii) Pose a potential threat to natural ecosystems.
- (iv) May harbor diseases or parasites of potential harm to Saskatchewan people or wildlife.  
(Obviously a definitive list of approved species would need to be compiled.)

4. Should Captive Wildlife Be Regarded as Personal Property?

Current regulations in Saskatchewan insist that all native wildlife remain property of the Crown, yet, imported wildlife have generally been viewed as items of personal property.

Our current thinking proposes that if the agency is willing to authorize capture of a wild animal, that animal would become personal property on its capture. If regulations concerning treatment of that animal were broken, the Crown would retain the right to repossess that animal. Sale and trade in such animals could be permitted without permission of the Department but release into the wild would be subject to Department approval.

We believe other philosophies exist, and, therefore, this subject is worthy of discussion if a common approach can be worked out.

## 5. Capture of Wildlife

Occasionally, requests are received to permit wildlife to be captured. Such requests usually come from zoos or private foundations. If the zoo is determined to be of good standing and the species of wildlife in plentiful supply, the request is favorably received. Such requests are rare. Generally, all other requests to capture wildlife are refused except those mentioned under item 3.

The most usual type of problem confronting the Department is disposition of young wildlife turned in each year. Each spring gives rise to bear cubs and whitetail deer fawns being thrust upon the Department.

The problem of finding good homes for such animals is difficult. Usually, they are given to a local zoo or game farm who may use them to trade for other animals. Are there other alternatives?

## 6. Trade in Wildlife

An interesting point that has come to our attention involves the number of surplus animals currently available from zoos and game farms. A very considerable trade exists with surplus animals. Often, certain species are so common that a young animal may end up in a private pet shop as a means of simply getting rid of that animal. Occasionally, game farms place ads in various papers that offer the sale of migratory birds, and wildlife from all continents. As mentioned previously, the pet shop trade handles a great variety of wildlife. So far as we are aware, the only restriction on movement of such animals is under the Endangered Species Legislation that restricts trade in certain species, the Health of Animals regulations and The Migratory Birds Convention Act. The possibility exists that the Game Export Act will be amended to include live animals. We are not aware of the progress of this amendment nor are we aware, if indeed, the Game Export Act would cover all wildlife currently being traded.

The previously mentioned legislation operates at the federal level. At the provincial level, The Wildlife Act or its equivalent, may be invoked to regulate import and export of wildlife and holding wildlife in captivity. In spite of this legislation many animals appear to move from province to province without the knowledge or permission of any regulatory authority.

Obviously the present trade in wildlife is surrounded in a maze of regulations, none of which is sufficiently comprehensive to regulate all situations. This is partially due to jurisdictional problems but since the capture of native wildlife is fairly uncommon, trade in such wildlife has rarely entered the picture. Import and export of native wildlife has been fairly closely regulated but, in our experience, better co-operation between Canadian wildlife agencies would be mutually beneficial. Prior exchange of import and export permits before shipment would be one area worth investigating. A standardized disease testing format might be another.

Commercial pet shop activities appear to conduct the bulk of the present trade in wildlife. In Saskatchewan, we have largely ignored pet shops. While we have seen the occasional problem, we wonder if involvement is justified. Our staff is presently occupied full time, thus, to initiate supervision of pet shops would mean only superficial involvement. Some of our staff argue that pet shops constitute a potentially major outlet for illegally taken wildlife, and thus more involvement is justified. Transmission of wildlife diseases is also used to justify involvement.

#### 7. Wildlife Diseases

Health of Animals, Agriculture Canada is involved and concerned about a number of wildlife diseases but not all diseases important to western Canadian wildlife are covered. Their prime concern lies with animal diseases that may be detrimental to humans or agricultural livestock. Strict regulations are in force where animals enter Canada, particularly from overseas. Entry into Canada requires a permit and a quarantine period. In most cases requests to import wildlife are refused, however, we understand regulations for members of the cat family are much less restrictive and entry of such animals is more common.

Most trade and movement of wildlife at the international level occurs between Canada and the United States. In this situation more flexible regulations exist than with other international movement of wildlife. In the case of mammals a permit certifying the animals are free of the following diseases is required.

Tuberculosis  
 Brucellosis  
 Blue Tongue  
 Anaplasmosis  
 External Parasites

In addition, a 30-day quarantine period can be demanded.

In the case of birds, a permit certifying freedom from the following diseases is required:

Newcastles Disease  
 Psittacosis  
 Pullorum Disease

Importation of birds usually involves a 45-day quarantine period.

In the case of reptiles and amphibians, we understand very little testing is undertaken although turtles, which used to be a common pet shop item, are now prohibited from entering Canada by Health of Animals. Perhaps this action has been responsible for the disappearance of these animals from Saskatchewan pet shops.

From a Saskatchewan viewpoint, several diseases found in mammals are of concern. These are:

*Parelaphostrongylus tenuis*  
*Parelaphostrongylus andersoni*  
 Epizootic Hemoragic Disease  
*Elaeophora schneideri*  
*Elaphostrongylus cervi*

At present, the most serious mammalian disease threat to western Canadian wildlife appears to be *P. tenuis*, a brain worm found in white-tailed deer of eastern Canada and the United States. Because this organism has been linked to massive deaths of moose and caribou, importation of white-tailed deer from these areas (and possibly Manitoba) seems inadvisable.

In birds, Duck Viral Enteritis, appears as the most outstanding threat at present. Restrictions on avicultural permittees appear to be the simplest method of controlling the spread of this disease among captive flocks.

Instead of the blanket no movement restriction which was in effect in the past, possibly a modified approach to permit movement of certified disease free stock should be investigated.

It has been our experience that captive wildlife owners wishing to obtain an animal have not seen wildlife diseases as a meaningful concern. It is our belief this subject requires close examination and a co-ordinated approach is required, at least within western Canada, insofar as movement of captive animals is concerned.

#### 8. Endangered Wildlife

Canada has agreed to regulate trade in endangered species, and the provinces have become involved in the administration of the conviction that regulates trade in those species designated as being endangered. Under the existing agreement, however, it is possible to trade in endangered species that have been born in captivity. For purposes of the convention such animals are exempt. Saskatchewan has agreed with the position taken on this matter, but there has been some question if the subject should not be reviewed at the provincial level. The Captive Animal Seminar might wish to discuss this question.

At present, Saskatchewan permits capture of birds of prey and their use in falconry. Because of the association of many of these birds with the endangered species designation, there is some question if this approach should continue. In western Canada alone, there is a very sharp division of agency opinion on the matter of falconry. Is a consensus possible on this subject?

#### 9. Standards For Captive Wildlife Facilities

Generally speaking, Saskatchewan has endeavoured to avoid a specific set of standards for enclosures for captive wildlife. Our expertise here is weak and thus subject to debate. The alternative to specific regulations has been to attempt to treat the subject in a general sense, i.e., cages, pens or enclosures shall be of such a nature which:

- (a) Are appropriate for the health and welfare of the animals.
- (b) Keep the animals from contact with the public.



(c) Keep the animals from contact with native wildlife and domestic livestock.

(d) Permit isolation quarantine in the case of disease.

We understand there is a possibility that Health of Animals may become involved in this field, and that their thinking on enclosure requirements is of a general nature that essentially parallels that used by Saskatchewan.

Other agencies have evolved a more specific set of enclosure requirements. What benefits does this approach offer?

#### 10. Captive Wildlife Records

A review of a recent captive animal permit reveals the following records are required in Saskatchewan.

- (a) No animal may be held in captivity under this permit unless the following are provided to the Director prior to introduction:
- (i) species, age, sex and condition of each animal;
  - (ii) place of birth and present site of confinement of each animal;
  - (iii) proof of ownership of each animal;
  - (iv) export permit from state, province or country of origin of each animal;
  - (v) certificate of health, acceptable to the Department, attesting to the health of each animal.
- (b) The permittee shall maintain an adequate, up-to-date, permanent record and shall submit to the Director a copy thereof containing:
- (i) the species, age, sex, origin, date of acquisition and condition of all animals acquired or disposed of under permit during that year.

- (ii) the incidence of any disease or other condition affecting the health of any animal held by the permittee.

In addition to the above, the following records are required in the case of sale, barter or exchange of game birds:

- (a) The date of sale, barter or exchange.
- (b) The name and address of the recipient.
- (c) The number and species of the birds.
- (d) The numbers of the leg or wing bands of the birds.
- (e) Evidence the birds are pullorum tested.

Are these records consistent with those required by other agencies? Should other conditions be required?

- 11. What administrative, management and research needs exist in the captive wildlife field?
  - (a) Investigation of game ranching as a land use alternative.
  - (b) A definitive list of the status of birds of prey in western Canada.
  - (c) A definitive list of the wildlife diseases of potential danger to western Canada.
  - (d) Identification of existing legislation applicable to captive wildlife and present shortcomings of same.
  - (e) Increased co-ordination between agencies responsible for captive wildlife.
  - (f) Definition of public information needs and the delivery of public information programs.



APPENDIX 13

Paper on Captive Wildlife

in Manitoba

by R.C. Goulden and N.W. Squires



CAPTIVE WILDLIFE

IN

MANITOBA

by

R. C. Goulden

and

W. W. Squires

A Situation Report Prepared for the

CAPTIVE WILDLIFE SEMINAR

Delta, B.C.

Jan. 18-19, 1977

Sponsored by

The Western Wildlife Directors Committee

## CAPTIVE WILDLIFE IN MANITOBA

### I. Introduction

The keeping of wildlife in captivity is a matter of growing concern to wildlife managers and administrators. As society becomes more urbanized, there appears to be a trend toward the holding of wildlife in a captive state for people to view and manipulate. To some extent, this trend is fostered by the loss of natural habitats and the inability of an urbanized public to fulfill its need for encounters with wildlife via more 'natural' means. No doubt, this also is influenced by notable efforts to anthropomorphize wildlife by people such as Walt Disney. Having been less than successful in managing wild, free-ranging populations, man seems to believe he has the ability to successfully care for individual animals or small groups of animals in captivity. As well, this is an expression of western man's innate desire to husband all wild creatures, not unlike the manner in which we care for domestic livestock. People sincerely believe they are doing something commendable by holding wildlife captive for others to view. Moreover, as natural habitats disappear there is a tendency for man to compensate for this loss by capturing and keeping in captivity representatives of the wildlife populations threatened by such changes in the natural environment.

For wildlife managers, these trends have raised complex problems. The manager, trained in preserving and enhancing free-ranging wildlife populations and their habitats, finds the care and regulation of captive wildlife somewhat repulsive and to a degree, he has treated this matter with disdain. But herein lies the problem. Our failure to seize the initiative and direct change rather than be directed by it has

placed us in a rear-guard position in dealing with this entire matter of wildlife in captivity.

## II. Current Situation in Manitoba

Live birds or animals including species not native to Manitoba may be imported into Manitoba in accordance with Regulation 33/59 under The Wildlife Act. However, that regulation does not govern the maintenance, trade or disposition of such wildlife within Manitoba once having been legally imported into the Province.

Big game farms and other wildlife farms presently are authorized by interim permits issued in accordance with Section 71 of The Wildlife Act.

In accordance with Section 8(2) of The Wildlife Act, the wildlife farm operator is awarded ownership of the wildlife on his farm.

Departmental staff have tended to discourage the holding of wildlife in captivity due to complaints received concerning animals being held in poorly erected pens and cages behind service stations and the like as an attraction to passing public. People who seek permission to keep wildlife in captivity under permit from the Department are challenged as to their ability to properly care for those animals. Difficulties in keeping wildlife in captivity are pointed out. These include danger to the public, disease, cost, problems that are likely to arise with neighbours and the humane aspects. No distinction is made between profit and non-profit organizations in assessing to whom a permit shall be given to keep wild animals in captivity.



Because of continual problems with the keeping of certain species in captivity, Regulation 166/71 was passed which prohibits the keeping of a live badger, bobcat, cougar, coyote or wolf in captivity without a permit from the Department.

Criteria for deciding whether or not a person should be given a permit to hold wild animals in captivity are not well defined. Because of this and other problems, Departmental staff drafted a regulation to govern the keeping of wild animals in captivity about a year ago (copy attached). Unfortunately, this legislation was not approved and the current situation remains somewhat unsatisfactory.

At the present time, Health of Animals comes under the Federal Department of Agriculture and any wildlife entering Manitoba from the United States must be cleared and certified by a federal veterinarian. A form is prepared in the United States by a U.S. federal veterinarian which accompanies the animal certifying that it is in good health. When that animal enters Canada, it must be examined as soon as possible by a Canadian federal veterinarian.

Movement of animals within Canada is governed by individual provincial statutes. The Game Export Act at present, states in part, "No person shall knowingly take, carry and ship beyond the limits of the Province within which such game was taken, any game except under authority of an Export Permit duly issued under the laws of such Province."

Section 70 of The Wildlife Act reads, "A Permit to export from the province wildlife or exotic animals legally taken within the province, to the extent of any limit set out in the permit, may be issued to any

person wishing to export any wildlife or exotic animal from the province." Manitoba's Wildlife Certificate and a tag which is issued with all big game licences is, in fact, all the "export permit" that is needed to take game from Manitoba. Any other export permit which we might issue, is usually done in order to expedite the movement of game through other jurisdictions. If the quoted section read, "shall be issued" instead of "may be issued", then game would have to be exported under an export permit to be in accordance with the Game Export Act. As it is at present, we do not have a mandatory requirement that game be exported under a permit. Saskatchewan and Alberta, according to the Acts of those provinces, are definite on their requirement of export permits.

There has been discussion concerning amendments to the Game Export Act to include live animals. In our view the feasibility of revising the Game Export Act to control interprovincial movement of wildlife or exotic animals remains questionable.

### III. Issues of Concern

The pet-shop trade is probably the most vexing issue confronting managers charged with the responsibility of regulating the keeping of wildlife in captivity. According to Regulation 33/59, no person or organization can bring a live bird or animal (including exotics) into Manitoba without first having obtained a permit from this Department. In fact, however, this practice has been going on for some time and the Department, not having the staff to police it, has simply turned a blind eye to the whole pet-shop trade in exotics. The same might be said of zoos. Because bona fide zoos have the capability of properly caring for wild animals,

there is less concern over these operations.

The matter of diseases that can be brought in with exotic animals is another issue of grave concern. To an unknown extent, this is caught by federal veterinarians at ports of entry. However, existing practices are sufficiently loose to enable wildlife diseases to enter the province from foreign introductions.

Another matter of concern is the growing demand by entrepreneurs for authority to open various kinds of game farms and roadside zoos and to trade native and exotic wildlife among such operations. Present legislation to govern this kind of activity is woefully inadequate.

The inconsistency between our legislation and our administrative practice also is a matter of concern. Cases are legion of our failure to enforce or uphold standing legislation. Guidelines are virtually non-existent for administering in subject areas where legislation is inadequate.

Another issue of concern is the lack of consistency between provinces respecting legislation, policy, and administrative practice in dealing with wild animals in captivity. Although there are certain basic features common to legislation across the western provinces, there is considerable difference in how it is applied and difference in the detail of that legislation.

Another issue involves our role as managers of public property. When does wildlife cease to be public property and when does it, in fact, become private?

Big game ranching is another subject requiring clarification. This is a matter of growing interest in Manitoba as exemplified by the attached Departmental Conservation Comment on the subject. Yet our legislation and policy have not kept pace with developing trends in this field, perhaps due to the reluctance mentioned earlier of wildlife managers to embrace the concept of restraining heretofore free-ranging species.

The plight of non-status wildlife also must be considered with respect to the keeping of wild animals in captivity. Because certain species in Manitoba do not have status as fur-bearers, game birds or big game, they seem to be subject to captivity under almost any condition.

Some elements of society take the view that species which are threatened, rare or endangered should be kept in captivity to ensure their survival. This philosophy has not been adequately challenged by managers.

#### IV. Future Directions

In our view, there is need for some perceptive individual to set forth the philosophical basis upon which to justify the holding of wild animals in captivity. Needed is a thoughtful discussion paper outlining the reasons for allowing or for not allowing the holding of wild animals in captivity in Canada. This paper would provide the basis for developing legislation and policy to govern all aspects of the subject and provide for consistency of approach within and between jurisdictions.

The pet-shop trade is a large and demanding one. It is questionable whether any province presently has the manpower, money and expertise to fully regulate this activity. However, the time has come when we can no longer afford to ignore it. Therefore, we must segregate that activity into meaningful components and carefully begin to regulate, on a phased basis, those aspects most in need of control. Clearly, we must have control over exotics that are on rare and endangered lists. Also, we should place a priority on the regulation of exotics that could become a danger to the public or a nuisance on the landscape.

There is much justification for developing uniform standards for holding facilities for wild animals. Uniform standards for facilities would be more defensible in the eyes of the public and those requesting permission to keep animals in captivity. Standards so developed would be technically superior. Moreover, it would not be possible to play one province against the other in obtaining a permit. Because most provinces do not have the expertise to develop such standards, professional zookeepers should be involved in that aspect of the work.

There is likely to be a considerable research and development thrust in big game ranching in the near future. Therefore, it is important that guidelines for regulating such activities be worked out ahead of time. Ownership of captive game, sale of progeny, maintenance of genetic integrity, disease control, sale of meat and other products all must be considered.

Based on the discussion paper proposed earlier, criteria should be established outlining the reasons for holding wildlife in captivity.

In our view, wildlife could be held in captivity by recognized zoos, for propagation by governments or other approved agencies such as big game co-ops and fur farms, on shooting preserves or wildlife farms for hunting purposes or release into the wild to enhance local fauna.

Better mechanisms are required for regulating the flow of live wild animals between provinces and between the United States and Canada. Future management procedures must come to grips with non-status wildlife i.e., animals not included in the commonly designated categories of game bird, big game, small game, furbearers, etc. In our view, too many common wildlife species are being kept under inhumane, unsanitary and undignified conditions because they do not enjoy the benefit of status as "game" under existing legislation.

The manner in which we deal with "problem wildlife" also must be considered in developing future regulations and policies. Here, we would subscribe to a statement issued by Mr. W. W. Mair in May, 1971 when he was Deputy Minister of this Department, "As a matter of principle, I believe every living creature should be recognized and protected by basic law, and then be done in as necessary by virtue of permissions."

#### V. Recommendations

1. We recommend that someone be charged with the responsibility of preparing a philosophical background paper dealing with the basis upon which wild animals should or should not be kept in captivity in western Canada.
2. As an alternative (less desirable) to recommendation 1, a small committee could be formed to bring forward common criteria for permitting

or denying the holding of wild animals in captivity.

3. A working committee should be created to examine the feasibility of developing common standards for holding wild animals in captivity.
4. All research and management needs identified in this Seminar should be synthesized and prioritized for action by provinces and the Federal Government as each deems appropriate.

Winnipeg  
January 11, 1977

R. C. Goulden  
W. W. Squires

## MANITOBA REGULATION /75

Being a Regulation Under The Wildlife Act  
Respecting Wildlife Farms

(Filed: )

## 1. In this regulation

- (a) "Act" means The Wildlife Act;
- (b) "big game animal" means an animal of a species or type mentioned in Division 1 of Schedule A of the Act;
- (c) "commercial game farm" means a place where big game or furbearing animals are kept for propagation and for sale, gain or profit;
- (d) "department" means The Department of Renewable Resources and Transportation Services;
- (e) "farm" includes a commercial game farm, a restricted wildlife farm and a wildlife farm;
- (f) "fur bearing animal" means an animal of a species or type mentioned in Division 2 of Schedule A of the Act;
- (g) "game bird" means a bird of a species or type mentioned in Division 3 of Schedule A of the Act;
- (h) "game bird farm" means a place where game birds are kept for propagation and for sale, gain or profit;
- (i) "licence" means a restricted wildlife farm licence, a wildlife farm licence or a commercial game farm licence issued under this regulation;
- (j) "licensee" means a person to whom a licence is issued;
- (k) "minister" means the minister of Renewable Resources and Transportation Services;
- (l) "officer" means an officer as defined in the Act;
- (m) "restricted wildlife farm" means a place where wildlife or exotic animals or both, other than furbearing animals and ungulates are kept and where the aggregate of the wildlife or such exotic animals or both is less than 10;



(n) "wildlife farm" means a game bird farm or a place where wildlife or exotic animals or both are kept for educational or scientific purposes.

2. No person shall keep in captivity any wildlife or exotic animal unless he has a licence for the purpose.
3. (1) The minister or a person authorized by him may, subject to the provisions of the Act and regulations thereunder, issue or renew a commercial game farm, wildlife farm or restricted wildlife farm licence.
  - (2) The minister may in his discretion refuse to issue or renew any licence.
4. Every applicant shall pay a fee as set out in Appendix "A" hereto at the time that he submits his application for a licence or renewal thereof.
5. Every licence or renewal thereof expires on the 31st day of March following the date of issue.
6. (1) Every application by a licensee for a renewal of his licence shall be accompanied by a return showing the number and species of all wildlife and exotic animals on his farm as at the 31st day of January of the year of his application.
  - (2) Notwithstanding subsection (1), the licensee shall, whenever required to do so by the minister, file a return with the minister
    - (a) the number and species of all wildlife or exotic animals on the farm; and
    - (b) such other information as the minister may request with respect to such animals.
7. (1) The minister shall not issue a licence or any renewal thereof to any person unless
  - (a) the person is a resident of Manitoba;
  - (b) in the opinion of the minister or an officer, he complies with and meets the requirements of this regulation;
  - (c) if big game animals are involved, he is in possession of not less than 10 acres of contiguous land that is used or is to be used for the wildlife farm either

- (i) as registered owner thereof,
  - (ii) as a lessee of patented land under a lease in writing, or
  - (iii) as a purchaser under an agreement for sale; and
- (d) if big game animals or "hoofed" exotic animals are involved, the land is completely enclosed around its perimeter by fencing and gates that comply with section 8.
- (2) If big game animals or "hoofed" exotic animals are kept on a wildlife farm that is licenced for educational or scientific purposes, the following space requirements shall be met:
- (a) For bison, moose, elk or similar sized animals, not less than 10 acres of land per animal.
  - (b) For deer, antelope or similar sized animals, not less than 5 acres of land per animal.
- (3) The space requirements mentioned in subsection (2) shall not apply to a farm licensed for commercial purposes.
8. (1) The fence along the perimeter of a wildlife farm or commercial game farm shall be of sufficient height and constructed of material sufficient in strength to contain the animals therein.
- (2) Any gate constructed in a fence as described in section 8(1) shall be of the same height and material and equipped with an adequate latch or locking device to prevent the animals contained therein from opening it.
9. (1) Individual enclosures must be constructed so that the security, biological and aesthetic requirements of the wildlife or exotic animals are provided for.
- (2) The minister or an officer authorized by him, may declare any enclosure unsatisfactory and order that such improvements be made as to make the enclosure satisfactory.
- (3) The licensee shall make the improvements ordered in subsection (2) within the time specified in the order.

10. The licensee shall at all time permit the entry on all parts of his farm to an officer for the purpose of enforcing the Act or this regulation.
11. (1) No person shall import any wildlife or exotic animal into Manitoba other than those mentioned in Appendix "C", unless he holds a valid permit for the purpose issued by the minister.  
(2) The minister shall not issue a permit to a person under subsection (1), unless he is satisfied the export of the wildlife or exotic animal was duly authorized by a person authorized to do so, from the exporting jurisdiction.
12. (1) No wildlife or exotic animal shall be removed from a wildlife farm unless
  - (a) the wildlife or exotic animal is delivered under the documented terms of sale, barter or exchange to
    - (i) a person who operates a public park, zoological garden, zoo or menagerie wholly or partly maintained or financed by the use of public funds, or
    - (ii) a person who requires the animal for research or educational purposes, or
    - (iii) a person who holds a valid and subsisting licence, or
    - (iv) a person for domestic or commercial consumption, in which case the animal must be identifiable by a stamp or ear tag bearing the licence number of the farm.
  - (b) The licensee has obtained a permit from the minister to exhibit the animal in a parade or at a location to which members of the public have a right of access; or
  - (c) the wildlife is released to the wild in accordance with written instructions of an officer; or
  - (d) in the case of a commercial game farm licence, the licensee obtains
    - (i) a certificate of good health with respect to the wildlife or exotic animal issued by a veterinarian, and

- (ii) a permit from an officer where the wildlife or exotic animal is to be moved to a place within the province, or
  - (iii) authorization from the minister where the wildlife or exotic animal is to be moved to a place outside the province.
- (2) A person may kill a game bird raised and kept in captivity under the authority of a licence granted under this regulation by any method other than shooting.
13. (1) The minister may, upon application, grant to a licensee a permit to collect wildlife within the province to become his property subject to the following conditions:
- (a) The number of any wildlife to be taken under any such permit shall be shown thereon.
  - (b) The licensee shall with each application pay the fees prescribed by Appendix "B" of this regulation.
  - (c) The permittee shall within 30 days of expiration of a permit issued pursuant to this section submit a report to the minister specifying the number of wildlife or exotic animals taken under the permit.
  - (d) Wildlife or exotic animals taken under a collection permit shall be transported to a licensee's farm as soon as possible after capture.
- (2) Where under subsection (1), a person receives a permit authorizing him to collect a certain number of wildlife or exotic animals and the number collected is less than so authorized by the permit, the permittee is entitled to a pro rata refund of the fees paid by him for the permit.
- (3) Where a person who holds a licence under this regulation is issued a collection permit and the licence of that person expires and is not renewed or is cancelled, the collection permit issued to that person is, ipso facto, cancelled.
14. (1) Where the department comes into possession of any young wildlife or exotic animal that has been abandoned or is separated from its mother, the minister may authorize the delivery thereof to a licensee and if accepted, the licensee may retain permanent possession of the wildlife or exotic animal in accordance with the provisions of the Act and this regulation.

- (2) No licensee shall bring onto his farm or permit to be brought onto his farm any wildlife or exotic animal unless
- (a) it has been purchased from or exchanged with a licensed person or establishment;
  - (b) it has been captured from the wild by the licensee under the authority of a collection permit issued to him;
  - (c) it is delivered to the farm of the licensee pursuant to subsection (1); or
  - (d) it has been brought into the province under authority of a permit issued by the minister.
15. (1) Subject to subsection (2), no wildlife or exotic animal captured under authority of a permit mentioned in section 13, or held on a farm shall be slaughtered for consumption except under the written authorization of an officer.
- (2) Where
- (a) the licensee considers it necessary; or
  - (b) an officer directs the licensee;
- that any wildlife or exotic animal on the farm of the licensee should be destroyed because of disease or injury to the wildlife or exotic animal, or, for humane reasons to destroy the wildlife or exotic animal, as the case may require, the licensee shall at his own expense destroy the wildlife or exotic animal.
16. The licensee is responsible to ensure the good health of all wildlife and exotic animals on his farm and shall provide at his expense, the services of a veterinarian for any sick or injured wildlife or exotic animals.
17. (1) Notwithstanding anything in this regulation, the licensee is liable for any damage caused by wildlife or exotic animals held or kept by him under the authority of his licence.
- (2) The licensee shall save harmless and keep the Crown indemnified in respect of any actions, claims or demands that may be made or brought against the Crown in respect of anything done by the licensee in the exercise of any rights granted to him under his licence.

18. (1) Where a licence is cancelled by the minister or expires without being renewed the person who was the holder of the licence becomes a bailee of all the wildlife and exotic animals on the farm for the Crown in right of Manitoba.
  - (2) No wildlife or exotic animals shall be removed from the farm of a licensee whose licence is cancelled or has expired except at the direction of an officer and, such arrangements shall be completed within 60 days of cancellation.
19. Nothing in this regulation applies to or affects zoos, zoological gardens or menageries that are maintained or financed wholly or partly by public funds.
  20. Section 26, Part IV, and Section 56, Part VII of Manitoba Revised Regulation W140-R1 and Manitoba Revised Regulation W140-R3 are hereby repealed.

For each restricted wildlife farm licence and renewal thereof .....	\$ 5.00
For each wildlife farm licence and renewal thereof .....	10.00
For each commercial game farm licence and renewal thereof .....	100.00

APPENDIX "B"

FEEES FOR COLLECTION PERMITS

For each moose .....	200.00
For each elk .....	200.00
For each deer .....	50.00
For each polar bear .....	400.00
For each caribou .....	200.00
For each black or brown bear .....	50.00
For each timber wolf .....	100.00
For each wolverine .....	100.00
For each otter .....	50.00
For each coyote .....	10.00
For each fox .....	10.00
For each badger .....	10.00
For each marten.....	50.00
For each fisher .....	50.00
For each beaver .....	20.00
For each lynx .....	50.00
For each mink .....	10.00
Other wildlife, each animal .....	5.00

Mammals

Masked shrew  
 Water shrew  
 Pygmy shrew  
 Star-nosed mole  
 Keen's myotis (Keen's bat)  
 Big brown bat  
 Hoary bat  
 Snowshoe rabbit (snowshoe hare)  
 White-tailed jack rabbit  
 Least chipmunk  
 Richardson's ground squirrel  
 Franklin's ground squirrel  
 Fox squirrel (1)  
 Northern pocket gopher  
 Olive-backed pocket mouse  
 Northern grasshopper mouse  
 Heather vole  
 Yellow-cheeked vole  
 Southern bog lemming  
 Collared lemming  
 House mouse (2)  
 Western jumping mouse  
 Porcupine

Wandering shrew (vagrant shrew)  
 Arctic shrew  
 Short-tailed shrew  
 Little brown myotis (little brown bat)  
 Silver-haired bat  
 Red bat  
 Eastern cottontail  
 Arctic hare  
 Eastern chipmunk  
 Woodchuck (ground hog)  
 Thirteen-lined ground squirrel  
 Gray squirrel  
 Northern flying squirrel  
 Plains pocket gopher  
 Deer mouse  
 Gapper's red-backed vole  
 Meadow vole  
 Prairie vole  
 Northern bog lemming  
 Norway rat (2)  
 Meadow jumping mouse  
 Woodland jumping mouse  
 Raccoon

Birds

Rock dove (pigeon)  
 Common crow  
 House sparrow  
 Red-winged blackbird  
 Brewer's blackbird  
 Brown-headed cowbird

Black-billed magpie  
 Common starling  
 Yellow-headed blackbird  
 Rusty Blackbird  
 Common grackle  
 Clark's nutcracker (3)

Amphibians

Mudpuppy  
 Eastern tiger salamander (7)  
 Plains spadefoot toad  
 Dakota toad  
 Eastern gray treefrog  
 Boreal chorus frog  
 Green frog  
 Wood frog

Blue-spotted salamander  
 Gray tiger salamander (7)  
 American toad  
 Northern spring peeper  
 Southern gray treefrog  
 Mink frog  
 Northern leopard frog (7)



Reptiles

Northern red-bellied snake  
Eastern garter snake (7)  
Western plains garter snake (7)  
Common snapping turtle

Eastern smooth green snake  
Red-sided garter snake (7)  
Western smooth green snake  
Western painted turtle

APPENDIX 14

Paper on Captive Wildlife  
in  
the Yukon Territory



## Captive Wildlife in the Yukon Territory

### Introduction

The Yukon Territory has not had to deal with problems relating to wildlife in captivity on the same scale as have other jurisdictions. This is reflected in our lack of consistent policy in many areas relating to the capture and holding of wildlife. Legally, the Yukon Game Ordinance deals with 'fur farms' and 'live game'. It sets out a framework under which permits and requirements may be imposed for the taking of captive wildlife. An obvious gap in the ordinance is the omission of conditions under which wildlife must be kept while in captivity.

A present there are only 4 individuals in the territory with wildlife in captivity. Three of these have only single animals; two have wolves and one a snowshoe hare. The rest of captive wildlife in the territory are on the premises of the Yukon Game Farm at Whitehorse. The fact that virtually all of our action in this subject area have concerned the activity of a single individual has allowed us to deal with each instance according to circumstances.

In the future this will undoubtedly become more and more difficult. Provision exists for the taking of raptors for falconry in the Territory and the pressures in this regard mount every year. At present we have no firm policy and tend to discourage the activity simply because of the lack of management information. Pressures for the importing of exotic animals exist in the Yukon and in the past at least this activity has gone on with little comment from our Branch. A muskox farm is in the planning stages for the Whitehorse area. There is no doubt that the legal base exists in the Yukon for controlling these activities. The detailed policy and regulations relating to them have not been formulated. The problems relating to the subject are increasing and the Yukon is perhaps in a position to benefit more than most jurisdictions from an examination of the problem before it gets out of hand.

### 1. Reasons for captive wildlife.

In practice we have endorsed 4 basic reasons for capturing and holding wildlife. The first is research and probably needs little comment. The second is opportunity for public observation. We recognize the value of native wildlife in captivity accessible to the public (notably school children) for its educational value. We also recognize the need to control these 'farms' or 'zoos' and do not see a proliferation of them aimed at the tourist dollar as being healthy. The third reason must be termed 'commercial' for want of a better term. In the past dog breeders have held wolves for breeding purposes and the planned muskox farm is designed to sell products. Admittedly, not much thought has gone into the endorsement of these activities. However, at present there does not seem to be good biological arguments against them. The fourth reason includes falconry and is perhaps akin to 'pet' keeping although we would discourage that term. In instances where an animal is simply a pet, its use for this purpose should be discouraged and some domestic animal substituted.

### 2. Discouraging captive wildlife.

There is no doubt that capture and holding of wildlife should be discouraged; but it should not be prohibited. The very act of issuing permits to control the activity is a discouragement but must be viewed as a healthy activity instead of a negative reaction.

### 3. Ownership.

There is some disagreement among our staff on this point which tends to be more philosophical than practical. In practice, the animals captured in the territory for purposes outside of research activity have become the property of the captor. In most instances this was never actually legally stated but when animals were to be disposed of, the captor has always been apparently free to sell or dispose of the creature according to his will. There is a general feeling among our members that once an individual

has been given a permit to capture, has carried out the capture at his own expense, and has paid any fee we may impose, his 'rights' to the animal are fairly involved. We would favour a very detailed preliminary examination of the merits of a capture, its effect on the wild population., a meaningful fee for removal of the creature from the public domain and then transfer of ownership to the captor. As in the case of all wildlife taken dead from the public domain, this transfer does not release the owner from further responsibility relative to the care of the creature or other stipulations that may have been attached to the permit.

#### 4. Who can capture?

From a biological point of view it should make little difference whether an individual's motives for capture of wildlife are profit or non-profit oriented. If the same terms and conditions apply, and if adequate enforcement is possible, the problem does not seem real. We would favour limiting eligibility to capture to those individuals (private or otherwise) who have working knowledge of humane capture techniques and have facilities to provide near natural conditions in captivity.

As is the case in most resource utilization schemes, control and enforcement capability is often the limiting problem. The public has been trained to discount inadequacy of the management agency (perhaps because we are generally too proud to admit the problem) as not their worry. Perhaps it would be more meaningful to limit eligibility to those schemes which we are sure the managing agency can adequately inspect and control.

#### 5. Endangered species.

At present we are involved in a private endeavour to raise peregrine falcons in captivity. There seems to be real merit to this scheme, not only in the case of the peregrine but for all raptors, in that it could relieve the pressure on wild

populations for falconry. We know of no biological argument against the program. We are acutely aware that it could become an 'excuse' for having pet falcons and thus we closely control the activity and limit it to one individual.

6. Standards for capture.

In general, we agree that standards, perhaps for western Canada should be agreed upon. We feel our expertise is, however, not of the type that would allow us to set down in detailed form a suggested format. We would perhaps benefit more from an analysis of discussion from other jurisdictions. Each jurisdiction will undoubtedly have to develop standards uniquely suited to their own native wildlife and the limitations imposed by geography. Perhaps basic minimum requirements could be proposed and each province or territory could build upon them.

7. Legislation.

Section 27 of the Yukon Game Ordinance deals with the capture of birds of prey. Section 33 requires licences for taking live game animals, importing of fur bearing animals, and the operating of fur and game farms. A comparison with other jurisdictions would be valuable but outside our self-imposed limits here.

8. Zoos, exotics?

We have no expertise in this matter as there are no zoos per se in the Yukon. Our comments relative to eligibility for capture permits, etc., apply: (we feel that no special treatment is necessary for zoos, public or private).

9. Demands for trade in wildlife.

The 'demand' per se is outside our terms of reference as wildlife managers. If game farms or zoos which trade in wildlife meet whatever standards are set regarding facilities and care, then wildlife managers' roles are only to ensure that

capture from wild stock is done in such a way that populations are not damaged, and perhaps to ensure that wildlife transported long distances is disease free to prevent infection of wild stock with exotic diseases.

10. Diseases.

We have very limited expertise in this field.

11. Movements between borders.

This matter is of utmost importance. Wild creatures cannot be identified according to birthplace -- a universal dilemma among all having animals in captivity. At present movement of live wild animals across our borders is of such small volume that personal contact with the other jurisdiction involved is possible. In the future this may become more of a problem. A system of marking wildlife permanently with provincial or territorial 'seals' should be a matter of research priority.

12. Game Export Act.

One function that could be incorporated into a revised act would be the provision of disease inspection requirement for animals in transit. A permit for inter-provincial traffic could require certification that the animal is disease free. The actual control of movement is already incorporated into our and most other jurisdictional legislation.

13. Records.

Keepers of captive wildlife should as a minimum be required to keep a stud book and geneologies or family trees for the animals which they own or are in their custody. Inter-specific cross breeding except in controlled experiments should be discouraged.

14. Management requirements.

Management information that is necessary for the harvest



of wild creatures alive is much the same as for the dead harvest. Management problems seem to develop primarily with the release of captive creatures. In some instances this may be used as a management tool to reintroduce stock to abandoned range. Our philosophy toward game farms in the Yukon has always been tempered with this idea for the future. Consequently we have always tried to impress the permittee with his responsibility to supply animals to the managing agency in the future if required for reintroduction or research.

The other instance occurs when animals, notably exotics are released (accidentally or otherwise) and become members of the wild fauna. In virtually every case this activity costs the managing body money and in most cases, serious management problems. In the Yukon Territory we have need for management information on an introduced elk population and have no end of frustration with a wild horse population as two examples.

#### Research requirements.

a) Perhaps the most pressing and practical research activity should address the problem of permanently marking wildlife (particularly birds).

b) Our management information on some species in the territory is not sufficient to make decisions on the original capture. This applies to most of our raptors.

c) An unknown requiring study especially in alpine systems is the effect of disturbance at various times of the year on population performance. The activity of capture is often far more traumatic on a population scale than the shooting of an individual. Is this significant?

d) Nutritional requirements of animals in captivity is not the particular concern of a management agency but could become a concern if animals are to be used for management schemes such as reintroduction. At present there are no known nutritional regimes for many of the wild animals kept in captivity.

15. Problem wildlife.

In the Yukon problem wildlife is rarely of the type that needs to be kept in captivity for lengthy periods. The small volume that is held for some time is kept either by our staff or by the Yukon Game Farm according to a loose agreement. In most cases the agreement includes the release of the animal at some future date.



APPENDIX 15

Parks Canada Regulations and Policies  
Concerning Captive Wildlife



**Captive Wildlife Seminar****Parks Canada Submission****January, 1977**

The regulations pertaining to the wildlife in Canadian National Parks are contained in: 1) The National Parks Act and 2) National Parks Game Regulations.

The general policy is outlined in National Parks Policy. In addition to these numerous Operational Policy Directives exist including the following:

- 5.3 Immobilizing Equipment and Drugs
- 5.8 Salt Licks
- 5.9 Control of Animals Deemed Dangerous to Human Safety
- 5.18 Chemical Control of Pests
- 5.19 The Control and Disposal of Surplus Animals
- 5.20 Issuance of Permits to Collect Specimens
- 5.21 Reintroduction of Native Animal Species

This material is attached for reference. The National Parks Policy is presently under review and a Bear Operational Policy Directive has been prepared but is in draft form at the Ottawa level.

As general policy, captive animals including exotic pets other than cats and dogs are not allowed in our National Parks. This is not found in the existing regulations but they are being revised and pets will be covered more specifically. There are native animals (bison) in paddocks at Banff, Waterton, Prince Albert, and Riding Mountain National Parks. No new displays of their type are intended, however existing facilities may be retained due to the historical precedence. The holding of some animals for interpretive purposes may occur for short periods with emphasis placed on giving the visitor a better understanding of the natural environment.

Problem animals are handled according to the relevant Directives. The majority of attention is focused on bear-man conflicts in backcountry as well as developed areas.

Bears that become associated with developed areas, campgrounds and highways are usually relocated. In 1976 the following numbers of black and grizzly bear relocations were recorded: Banff - 21, Jasper - 75, Kootenay - 10, Yoho - 34, Waterton - 4 and Revelstoke/Glacier - 5.

Problem bears are generally not destroyed unless a) there has been a loss of life from an unprovoked attack b) there is immediate danger of human life or serious injury from a bear c) a bear has been involved in two or more incidents d) a bear is proven incorrigible after three repeated relocations or e) if the bear is severely injured. A total of 7 grizzly and 23 black bears were destroyed in 6 parks during 1976.

Animals deemed surplus according to Directive 5.19 are disposed by live capture or slaughter. Elk Island National Park is the only Park that control measures are necessary. In most other parks, animal populations are allowed to fluctuate and to establish a form of natural balance with the various influences exerted on them. Animals that are slaughtered are made available to Indian Affairs for distribution to native people. Animals that are live captured are made available to other government agencies or publicly owned zoos. Bison have been made available to the general public by tender in an attempt to establish breeding herds but these were generally unsuccessful. Animals are slaughtered or captured by Parks Canada staff and are made available to the receiving agency. Skeletal material and hides are made available to museums and universities as it is available. Parks Canada does not have an export permit but will provide a letter of authorization.



CANADA

OFFICE CONSOLIDATION

*of the*

**NATIONAL PARKS  
GAME REGULATIONS**

as established by

P.C. 1954-1431

and amended by

P.C. 1956-712

P.C. 1958-1496

P.C. 1959-1567

P.C. 1960-382

P.C. 1961-941

P.C. 1962-1041



**NATIONAL PARKS ACT**  
**National Parks Game Regulations**  
P.C. 1954-1431

PRIVY COUNCIL  
CANADA  
AT THE GOVERNMENT HOUSE AT OTTAWA

WEDNESDAY, the 22nd day of September, 1954.

PRESENT:

HIS EXCELLENCY

THE GOVERNOR GENERAL IN COUNCIL:

His Excellency the Governor General in Council, on the recommendation of the Minister of Northern Affairs and National Resources and pursuant to the National Parks Act, is pleased to order as follows:—

1. The Regulations respecting game in the National Parks of Canada other than Wood Buffalo Park, established by Order in Council P.C. 1954-1215 of 18th August 1954, are hereby revoked; and
2. The annexed "Regulations respecting Game in the National Parks of Canada other than Wood Buffalo Park" are hereby made and established in substitution for the regulations hereby revoked.

Certified to be a true copy

(Signed) R. B. BRYCE  
Clerk of the Privy Council.

The Minister of Northern Affairs and  
National Resources.

REGULATIONS RESPECTING GAME IN THE NATIONAL PARKS  
OF CANADA OTHER THAN WOOD BUFFALO PARK

1. These regulations may be cited as the *National Parks Game Regulations*.

*Interpretation* /

2. In these regulations,
- (a) "Director" means the Director of the National Parks Branch of the Department of Northern Affairs and National Resources;
  - (b) "game" means all wild mammals, amphibians, reptiles and wild birds within any Park, and the heads, skins and any or every part of such mammals, amphibians, reptiles and wild birds;
  - (c) "Minister" means the Minister of Northern Affairs and National Resources;
  - (d) "Park" means any National Park;
  - (e) "Park officer" means a person to whom the duty of assisting in the enforcement of these regulations has been assigned by the Superintendent;
  - (f) "Park warden" means any official appointed under the provisions of the Civil Service Act, whose duties include the enforcement of regulations for the protection of forests and game;
  - (g) "Superintendent" means the Superintendent of a Park and includes any person authorized to act for or in the name of the Superintendent; and
  - (h) "resident" means a person who resides in a Park for more than thirty days in a calendar year.

*General Provisions*

3. These regulations apply to all National Parks except Wood Buffalo National Park.

4. Except as otherwise provided in these regulations,
- (a) no person shall at any time molest, chase, harass or pursue, hunt, shoot at, trap, take, wound, kill, capture or destroy any game within a Park;
  - (b) no person shall have in his possession, or in the possession of his servant or agent, or any other person on his behalf, any game killed or procured within a Park;
  - (c) no person shall have in his possession within a Park any game no matter when or where procured, during a closed season for that game, established by the Province in which the game was captured or killed, or a closed season for that game, established under the Migratory Birds Convention Act;

- (d) no person shall in a Park handle, disturb, destroy, or remove from a nest any wild bird, or egg, or have the same in his possession;
- (e) no person shall wilfully disturb or destroy any wild bird or the nest of any wild bird in a Park; and
- (f) no person shall touch or feed bears or entice them to approach by setting out sweets or other foodstuffs.

5. (1) Every person holding a permit in writing from the Superintendent, for which a fee of \$7.00 is payable, may, between one-half hour before sunrise and one-half hour after sunset on each Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday of the open season for wild duck, prescribed for that part of Ontario by the Regulations under the Migratory Birds Convention Act, shoot wild duck in that portion of Point Pelee National Park, described in the Schedule hereto.

(2) No permit shall be issued by the Superintendent of Point Pelee National Park to any person other than a Canadian citizen who holds a licence to hunt game birds issued under authority of the Game and Fisheries Act of Ontario.

6. No person within a Park shall have in his possession the head, horns, antlers or any part of game unless he furnishes evidence satisfactory to the Superintendent that

- (a) such trophies were lawfully obtained, or
- (b) were in his possession prior to the first day of December, 1919.

7. (1) The Director may authorize

- (a) a Park warden or other person to take or kill game within a Park for scientific or propagation purposes;
- (b) a Park Superintendent to take or destroy any game when such action is considered advisable for game management purposes; and
- (c) the sale or other disposal of the products resulting from such game taken or destroyed.

(2) The Director may authorize the destruction of any dangerous game damaging property but in an emergency the Superintendent may authorize a Park warden to destroy dangerous game.

(3) Where a Park warden had destroyed dangerous game, the Superintendent shall submit promptly to the Director a full report of the circumstances leading to the destruction of such game.

(4) The Superintendent may grant permission to any person to keep unsealed firearms on his premises provided statements satisfactory to the Superintendent are furnished to show that danger may be expected to life or property from a dangerous game, and in an emergency, such person may shoot to kill any such dangerous game.

(5) The Director may authorize the Superintendent to destroy any aged or diseased game in a Park for the purpose of saving the heads and hides or for purposes of game management.

*Cats and Dogs*

8. No resident shall keep an unspayed bitch in a Park. Revoked and  
new.  
P.C. 1961-941,  
June 29,  
1961.
9. (1) No resident shall keep a dog or cat in a Park unless that animal is licensed in accordance with subsection (2). Revoked and  
new.  
P.C. 1961-941,  
June 29, 1961.
- (2) The Superintendent may, upon application and payment of three dollars, issue a licence and metal tag for a dog or cat. Revoked and  
new.  
P.C. 1961-941,  
June 29, 1961.
- (3) Every licence expires on the thirty-first day of March next following the date of issue and while the licence is in force the licensee shall keep the tag fastened to the animal. Revoked and  
new.  
P.C. 1961-941,  
June 29, 1961.
10. (1) No person who is the owner of a dog shall permit that dog to run unleashed in a Park. Revoked and  
new.  
P.C. 1961-941,  
June 29, 1961.
- (2) A police officer, Park officer or Park warden may impound any dog Revoked and  
new.  
P.C. 1961-941,  
June 29, 1961.
- (a) that is running unleashed in a Park,
- (b) that is not licensed in accordance with these Regulations, or
- (c) that is, in the opinion of the Superintendent, a nuisance.
11. The Superintendent may destroy on sight any dog where Revoked and  
new.  
P.C. 1961-941,  
June 29, 1961.
- (a) that dog is chasing or molesting game;
- (b) the Superintendent has attempted to seize the dog and has been unable to effect seizure; and
- (c) the Superintendent
- (i) has attempted to determine the ownership of that dog and has been unable to determine the ownership, or
- (ii) has notified the owner of the dog and the owner has not forthwith apprehended the dog.
12. Where any animal is forfeited to Her Majesty pursuant to section 8 of the Act, the animal may be disposed of as the Superintendent directs. Revoked and  
new.  
P.C. 1961-941,  
June 29, 1961.
13. No impounded animal shall be released until the person claiming the animal has paid an impounding fee of five dollars, together with a boarding fee of fifty cents for each day or part thereof that the animal has been impounded, but no impounding fee is payable if the animal has been impounded for the first time. Revoked and  
new.  
P.C. 1961-941,  
June 29, 1961.
14. Revoked. P.C. 1961-941, June 29, 1961.
15. (1) Revoked. P.C. 1961-941, June 29, 1961.
- (1a) Revoked. P.C. 1961-941, June 29, 1961.
- (2) Subject to section 9 the Superintendent may authorize any Park warden to keep within a Park any dog suitable for tracking or trailing poachers or other violators of Parks regulations or for hunting coyotes, wolves or other predatory animals.
16. Revoked. P.C. 1961-941, June 29, 1961.

*Firearms*

Revoked and new. P.C. 1960-382, March 21, 1960.

17. (1) No person while within a Park shall have in his possession a firearm or a device for capturing or destroying game unless the firearm or device is sealed by the Superintendent, a Park warden or a Park officer.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply to

(a) a Park warden;

(b) a person holding a permit referred to in section 5 while within that area of Point Pelee National Park described in the Schedule during the open season for wild duck in that area;

Revoked and new. P.C. 1962-1041, July 25, 1962.

(c) a person travelling by motor vehicle through Elk Island, Mount Revelstoke, Glacier, Fundy, Prince Edward, Cape Breton Highlands or Terra Nova National Park during the hunting season in the province where the Park is located if all firearms and devices in his possession are kept within the vehicle and are unloaded and dismantled; or

Revoked and new. P.C. 1960-332, March 24, 1960.

(d) a person holding a permit referred to in subsection (4) of section 7.

18. (1) The head guide in charge of a group of persons shall ensure that all rifles, guns or other firearms in the possession of such persons when in a Park are sealed.

(2) In the absence of a guide a person having a rifle, gun or other firearm in his possession in a Park shall have such rifle, gun or other firearm sealed by a Park warden except when otherwise authorized by the Superintendent.

19. Any person proceeding through a Park or portion thereof, with firearms, to shoot or hunt in an area outside of such Park shall show, when requested to do so by any Park officer, the necessary hunting licence issued by the authority governing such area.

20. No person shall have in his possession in a Park any poison, poisonous substance or gas for taking, injuring or destroying game in a Park.

21. No person shall obstruct, hinder or in any way interfere with or wilfully furnish false information to any Park warden or Park officer in the discharge of his duties.

*SCHEDULE*

All that parcel or tract of land in Point Pelee National Park in the Province of Ontario which may be more particularly described as follows:

Beginning at a point on the north boundary of the said Park distant 5,280 feet easterly from the point where the said northerly boundary intersects the easterly limit of the main road which enters the Park along the westerly side of the Park; thence easterly along the north boundary of said Park to the easterly boundary of the said Park; thence southerly following the easterly boundary of the said Park to its intersection with the northerly limit of the road running east and west between Lots 4 and 5 as shown on the plan of the Squatters' Holdings on the Naval Reserve at Point Pelee in

the Township of Mersea, County of Essex, Ontario, as surveyed by G. McPhillips, D.L.S., dated at Windsor, Ontario, July 30, 1889, and approved and confirmed by E. Deville, Surveyor General, on the 6th November, 1889; thence westerly following the north boundary of said road to its intersection with the easterly boundary of said Lot 5; thence northerly following the easterly limits of Lots 5, 7 and 8 to the intersection of the easterly limit of Lot 8 with the southerly limit of Lot 11; thence easterly following the southerly limit of Lot 11 to the southeast corner of said Lot 11; thence northerly following the easterly boundary of Lots 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17 and 18 to the northeast corner of said Lot 18; thence westerly following the northerly boundary of said Lot 18 to the northwest corner of said Lot 18, all said lots being as shown on said plan of the Squatters' Holdings on the Naval Reserve at Point Pelee; thence northerly in a straight line to point of commencement.

P A R T 1

---

---

CANADA  
DEPARTMENT OF NORTHERN AFFAIRS  
AND NATIONAL RESOURCES  
NATIONAL PARKS BRANCH  
NATIONAL PARKS AND HISTORIC SITES SERVICES

THE NATIONAL PARKS ACT  
CONSOLIDATED FOR OFFICE PURPOSES

(R.S.C. 1952, c. 189 as amended by 1953-54,  
cc. 4, 6 and 1955, c. 37)



OTTAWA, 1956

---

---



CANADA

## Office Consolidation

## THE NATIONAL PARKS ACT.

R.S.C. 1952, c. 189 as amended by 1953-54, cc. 4, 6  
and 1955, c. 37.

An Act respecting National Parks.

## SHORT TITLE.

1. This Act may be cited as the *National Parks Act*, Short title.  
1930, c. 33, s. 1.

## INTERPRETATION

2. In this Act
- |  |   |
|--|---|
|  | Definitions,                            |
| (a) "Minister" means the Minister of Northern Affairs and National Resources;  | "Minister."<br>1953-54,<br>c. 4, s. 12. |
| (b) "Park" means any National Park of Canada;  | "Park."                                 |
| (c) "Park warden" means any official appointed under the provisions of the <i>Civil Service Act</i> , whose duties include the enforcement of regulations for the protection of forests and game; and  | "Park<br>warden."                       |
| (d) "public lands" means lands belonging to Her Majesty in right of Canada or of which the Government of Canada has power to dispose including any waters on, upon or flowing through the said lands and the natural resources of the said lands. 1950, c. 45, s. 1. | "Public<br>lands."                      |

## PART I.

## NATIONAL PARKS OF CANADA.

## ESTABLISHMENT OF PARKS.

3. The lands described in the Schedule constitute the National Parks of Canada. 1948, c. 18, s. 1. Parks.

## GENERAL PURPOSES.

4. The Parks are hereby dedicated to the people of Canada for their benefit, education and enjoyment, subject to the provisions of this Act and the regulations, and such Parks shall be maintained and made use of so as to leave them unimpaired for the enjoyment of future generations. 1930, c. 33, s. 4. Parks to  
be public  
possessions.



Administration,  
management  
and control.  
Rep. and new.  
1953-54,  
c. 6, s. 1.  
Powers of  
constable.

5. (1) The administration, management and control of the Parks shall be under the direction of the Minister.

(2) Every Park warden and any other Park Officer designated by the Minister has all the powers of a police constable.

Park officers  
provided  
with free  
transportation.

(3) Every Park officer whose duties include patrolling a line of railway under construction or in operation shall be furnished, by the person constructing or operating such railway, with free transportation on all trains running on such railway in a Park and while in the discharge of his duty, whether they are passenger, freight or construction trains.

Governor  
in Council  
may appoint  
stipendiary  
magistrates.

(4) The Governor in Council, on the recommendation of the Minister of Justice, may appoint, by Commission under the Great Seal, one or more fit and proper persons to be stipendiary magistrates within the Parks, and such magistrates are at liberty to exercise any jurisdiction that may be conferred upon them by provincial authority in matters coming within the exclusive legislative jurisdiction of the province, insofar as the exercise of such powers may be consistent with the powers hereby conferred.

Powers of  
stipendiary  
magistrates.

(5) Every such stipendiary magistrate has and shall exercise within the limits of the Parks, all the powers, authority and jurisdiction by law appertaining to stipendiary magistrates, including the powers and authority of a police magistrate and two justices of the peace, and including the jurisdiction given to magistrates by the provisions of the *Criminal Code* relating to the summary trial of indictable offences by magistrates with the consent of the person charged.

Governor  
in Council  
may appoint  
justices  
of peace.

(6) The Governor in Council may appoint persons resident within the Parks to have, for the purposes of this Act, all the powers of a justice of the peace. 1930, c. 33, s. 5.

#### PARK LANDS.

Restrictions.

6. (1) Public lands within the Parks shall not be disposed of or located or settled upon, and no person shall use or occupy any part of such lands, except under the authority of this Act or the regulations.

Sale or  
lease of  
public  
lands.

(2) The Governor in Council may authorize the sale, lease or other disposition of public lands within a Park when such lands are required for

- (a) the right of way or station grounds of any railway;
- (b) the right of way of an oil or gas pipe line or any tanks, reservoirs, pumps, racks, loading facilities or other facilities connected with an oil or gas pipe line; or

- Leases.  
Rep. and new.  
1953-54,  
c. 6, s. 3.
- Leases  
outside of  
townsites and  
subdivisions.  
Rep. and new.  
1953-54,  
c. 6, s. 3.  
Rep. and new.  
1953-54, c. 6, s. 3.  
Grazing.  
Removal of  
sand and  
gravel.  
Removal of  
timber.
- Use of water.  
Rep. and new.  
1955, c. 37,  
s. 1(1).  
Use of  
mineral  
water.  
Camp  
grounds.
- Utilities.  
Rep. and new.  
1955, c. 37,  
s. 1(2).
- Roads and  
ways.
- Buildings  
and  
properties.
- (ii) the whole or any part of the expense of any fire protection carried on by the Minister in pursuance of this Act along or near such railway while under construction;
- (g) the granting of leases of lots in townsites for the purposes of residence, trade, schools, churches, hospitals and places of entertainment, and of lots in other subdivisions for the purposes of residence during the period beginning on the 1st day of April and ending on the 31st day of October;
- (h) the granting of leases or licences for public lands outside townsites or other subdivisions for the purposes of schools, hospitals, churches, and the entertainment of persons visiting the Parks;
- (i) the granting of permits for
- (i) the grazing of horses and cattle,
  - (ii) the removal of sand, stone and gravel for construction purposes within a Park,
  - (iii) the cutting and removal of dead or diseased timber and such green timber as may be necessary for the protection and management of forests in a Park,
  - (iv) the use in the Parks of water for domestic, business and railway purposes,
  - (v) the use and disposal of mineral waters for recreational and therapeutic purposes, and
  - (vi) the use of public camp grounds by persons visiting the Parks;
- (j) the establishment, operation, maintenance and administration by the Minister of public works and utility services and the use of the same within the Parks, including water supply, sewage, telephone, electric power, natural gas service, streets, street-lighting, sidewalks, fire protection, garbage removal, cemeteries and any other works, improvements or services of a public character;
- (k) the administration and use of roads, streets, sidewalks, trails, wharves, docks, bridges and other ways within the Parks, and the circumstances under which such ways shall be open or may be closed to public traffic or use; but the establishment or use of any existing road or way or any additional road or way shall in no case operate to withdraw the same from the Park within which it is situate;
- (l) prescribing the conditions under which any building, sign, placard, advertisement or other structure may be erected, the design and location of any

such structure and the materials of which it may be constructed; the general maintenance and improvement of properties in the Parks that have been leased; the defining of zones for residential buildings, business buildings, or areas in which only buildings of fire proof or fire resisting construction may be erected;

- (m) controlling trades, traffic, business, amusements, sports, occupations and other activities or undertakings, and prescribing the places where any such activities or undertakings may be carried on; and the levying of licence fees in respect thereof; Business, amusements, and other activities.
- (n) the summary removal from a Park and the preventing of the return thereto of any person guilty of an infraction of such provisions of the Park Regulations or the *Criminal Code* as the Governor in Council may specify; Conduct.
- (o) the preservation of public health and the prevention of disease; Sanitary measures.
- (p) authorizing agreements with a province for supplying to the residents of the Parks in that province any health and welfare services supplied by that province to its residents outside the Parks; Health and welfare services.
- (p) authorizing agreements with the appropriate authorities for the provision of hospital services to any residents of a Park; Hospital services. New. 1955, c. 37, s. 1(3).
- (q) levying taxes on any residents of a Park or on the interest of any persons in land in a Park in order to defray in whole or in part Rep. and new. 1955, c. 37, s. 1(3).
  - (i) the cost of health and welfare services supplied to such residents by a province pursuant to an agreement made under paragraph (p) or supplied to such residents by the Government of Canada, and
  - (ii) the cost of hospital services supplied to such residents of a Park in a province pursuant to a municipal hospital scheme established under the laws of that province;
- (r) levying taxes upon the interest of any person in land in a Park in order to defray, in whole or in part, the cost of the establishment, operation, maintenance and administration of any public works, improvements or utility services referred to in paragraph (j) and prescribing that such taxes may be levied with respect to any or all of the following lands,
  - (i) all lands in the Park,
  - (ii) lands in such area or areas in the Park as may be designated by regulations, and

- (iii) lands benefited by such public works, improvements or utility services;
- (s) the sale or forfeiture of lands for nonpayment of taxes;
- (t) the abatement and prevention of nuisances;
- (u) the survey and resurvey of public lands in a Park and the making and alteration of plans thereof, subdividing such lands for townsites, subdivisions or cemeteries and for designating surveyed areas as townsites or subdivisions and the cancellation of such designations;
- (v) the granting of plots in cemeteries;
- (w) authorizing agreements with a province or any person for the development, operation and maintenance in a Park of telephone, telegraph and electrical, other than hydro-electrical, and natural gas services for use only in the Park;
- (x) authorizing agreements with a province or any person for the development, operation and maintenance in a Park of hydro-electrical power pursuant to the *Dominion Water Power Act* for the use of such power only in the Park;
- (y) authorizing agreements with municipalities or water districts adjacent to a Park for the supply of water from the Park; and
- (z) authorizing agreements with persons residing on land adjacent to a Park for the supply of water from the Park for domestic purposes and for use in establishments providing tourist accommodation. 1930, c. 33, s. 7; 1938, c. 53, s. 3; 1947, c. 66, ss. 8, 9; 1950, c. 45, s. 3.
- (2) The purposes for which taxes may be levied under subsection (1) include provision for uncollectable taxes, for taxes that will not be collected during the year in which they are levied and for the costs and expenses of assessment and collection.

Survey, plans and designation of townsites, etc.  
New.  
1953-54,  
c. 6, s. 3 (2).

Plots in cemeteries.  
New.  
1953-54,  
c. 6, s. 3 (2).

Telephone, telegraph, electrical and natural gas services.  
New.  
1953-54,  
c. 6, s. 3 (2).

Hydro-electrical power.  
New.  
1953-54,  
c. 6, s. 3 (2).

Rep. and new.  
1955, c. 37,  
s. 1 (2).

New.  
1955, c. 37,  
s. 1 (4).

Purposes of taxes.  
New.  
1955, c. 37,  
s. 1 (5).

Penalties.

#### PENALTIES AND PROCEDURE.

8. (1) Any person violating any provision of this Act or any regulation, in addition to any civil liability thereby incurred, is liable on summary conviction to a penalty of not more than five hundred dollars, and in default of immediate payment of such penalty and of the costs of prosecution, such person may be imprisoned with or without hard labour for any term not exceeding six months.

(2) Any constable or any person having the powers of a constable under the provisions of this Act or the regulations may, Arrest, search and seizure.

- (a) on view, arrest any person found committing an offence against this Act or the regulations or found committing within a Park any unlawful act;
- (b) without warrant or other legal process at any time enter and search any building, premises, structure, camp, vessel, boat, vehicle, conveyance, or other place, and open and examine any trunk, box, barrel, parcel, or other package or receptacle, whether within or without the boundaries of any Park, where he has reason to believe there is any fish, mammal or bird or any parts thereof, or any firearms, traps or other devices for capturing or destroying fish, birds, or mammals in respect of which a breach of this Act or of the regulations may have been committed;
- (c) on view, seize, whether within or without the boundaries of any Park, any timber, hay, mineral, fish, mammal or bird, or any part thereof, arms, ammunition, explosives, traps, nets, rods, vessels, boats, vehicles, equipment, outfit, appliance, or any other article whatsoever that he has reason to believe are or have been possessed or used in connection with the commission of a violation of any of the provisions of this Act and the regulations.

(3) Where any chattel is seized under the provisions of this Act the same shall, without undue delay, be taken before a magistrate or two justices of the peace who, upon satisfactory proof that such chattel was in possession or used contrary to the provisions of this Act or was used in connection with the commission of any offence under this Act and the regulations, may order same to be forfeited to Her Majesty; or, in the case of timber, trees, hay or minerals, to be held for such time as may be deemed proper, pending payment of any penalty in lieu of forfeiture. 1930, c. 33, s. 8. Disposal of things seized.

9. All timber berths in National Parks that were disposed of prior to the 30th day of May, 1930, shall remain subject to the same obligations, terms and conditions as were in force prior to that date and nothing in this Act shall be construed to interfere with, prejudice or take away any rights granted to the holders of such berths but such obligations, terms and conditions shall be subject, at the date of each yearly renewal, to such changes as the Governor in Council may prescribe and shall be subject to all regulations made by the Governor in Council under this Act. 1950, c. 45, s. 4. Timber berths.

## PART II.

Historic  
sites.

**10.** The Governor in Council may set apart any land, the title to which is vested in Her Majesty, as a National Historic Park to

- (a) commemorate an historic event of national importance, or
- (b) preserve any historic landmark or any object of historic, prehistoric or scientific interest of national importance,

and may from time to time make any changes in the areas so set apart which he may consider expedient. 1930, c. 33, s. 11.

Application  
of sections.

**11.** The Governor in Council may, by order, apply to the areas set apart under this Part such provisions of sections 5, 7 and 8 of Part I as he may, from time to time, consider advisable. 1930, c. 33, s. 12.

© Crown Copyrights reserved

Available by mail from the Queen's Printer, Ottawa,  
and at the following Canadian Government bookshops:

HALIFAX  
1735 Barrington Street

MONTREAL  
Æterna-Vie Building, 1182 St. Catherine Street West

OTTAWA  
Daly Building, Corner Mackenzie and Rideau

TORONTO  
221 Yonge Street

WINNIPEG  
Mall Center Building, 409 Portage Avenue

VANCOUVER  
657 Granville Street

or through your bookseller

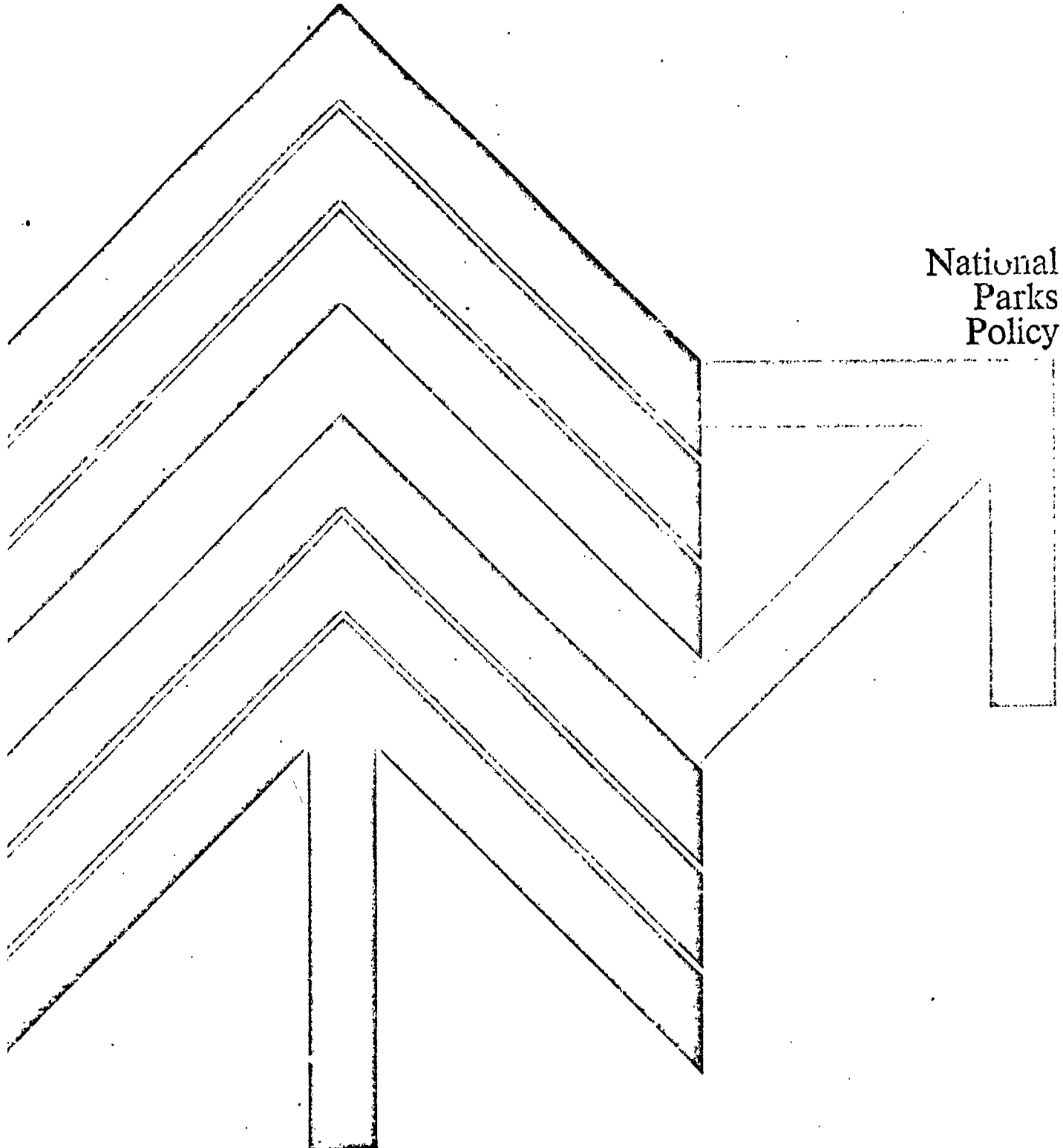
Price: 25 cents      Catalogue No. YX74-159/1955

Price subject to change without notice

Queen's Printer for Canada  
Ottawa, 1970

# National Parks Policy

National and Historic Parks Branch  
Indian Affairs  
and Northern Development





---

**Table of Contents**

	<b>Introduction, 3</b>
<b>I</b>	<b>Purpose of National Parks, 4</b>
<b>II</b>	<b>Nature, 5</b>
	Policy on Wildlife and Nature, 5
	Policy on Forestry, 6
<b>III</b>	<b>Access to Parks, 6</b>
	Railroads and Commercial Highways, 6
	Park Roads, 6
	Airfields, 7
	Waterways and Boating, 7
	Trails and Footpaths, 8
	Aerial Transportation, 8
<b>IV</b>	<b>Permanent Visitor Accommodation, 8</b>
<b>V</b>	<b>Camping, 9</b>
<b>VI</b>	<b>Group Camping Developments, 10</b>
<b>VII</b>	<b>Research and National Utility</b>
	Installations, 11
<b>VIII</b>	<b>Education and Interpretation, 11</b>
<b>IX</b>	<b>Culture, 12</b>
<b>X</b>	<b>Private Dwellings, 13</b>
<b>XI</b>	<b>Recreation, 13</b>
<b>XII</b>	<b>Townsites, 15</b>
	Townsite Growth, 15
	Townsite Planning and Domestic
	Utilities, 16
	Community Organizations – Year-Round
	Townsites, 16
	Special Events and Facilities Related
	to Townsites, 17
<b>XIII</b>	<b>Park Zoning, 17</b>
<b>XIV</b>	<b>Financial, 18</b>
	Expenditure, 18
	Revenue, 19
	Visitor Charges, 19
	Charges to Residents and Businesses, 19
<b>XV</b>	<b>Criteria for National Parks, 21</b>

## Introduction

For some time it has been felt that it would be useful and desirable to review and revise the policies which have evolved regarding National Parks and to organize the basic policies into a statement of National Parks Policy. The preparation of long-range plans for the development of a sound National Park system and for each of the parks and historic parks in the system must take into consideration legislation, desirable amendments to legislation, present and anticipated visitor use demands, potential additions to the system, character and capacity of individual parks, and, most important, the ultimate objectives of each of the National Parks and of the system as a whole. A clear conception of National Parks purpose and policies is therefore required not only to give direction toward sound planning and development of the individual units and of the National Parks system, but also to guide administration.

While some policies are applicable to National Historic Parks and Sites, the present statement is intended to cover National Parks only.

Section 4 of the Act, which describes the general purposes of National Parks, is very general. It has been interpreted in many different ways over the years and these differences have caused conflict of purpose in the administration as well as in the development of the individual units of the system. It is clear that planning cannot proceed toward sound objectives without the guidance of firm policies.

This does not suggest that there have never been policies to guide the administration. The fact is that policies have been developed piecemeal and have not been adequate to assure that the real objectives will be maintained or reached. Often policies were developed to correct a situation rather than to avoid it. What we have sought to establish is a positive, organized and coherent statement of policy. If it is to serve a worthwhile purpose as far as the planners and administrators are concerned policies must have stability and continuity beyond the term of office of a government, the tenure of a particular group of senior officials or the changing demands of commercial interests. Policies must be established only after the most careful consideration and study by National Parks Branch officials and others. Once established, the basic tenets of policy will not be in danger of change without thorough study and consideration.

The individual units of the National Park system are presently administered on the

basis of considerable variation in purpose and use. The extremes might be Prince Edward Island and Riding Mountain on the one hand and Glacier and Yoho on the other. Each park has been set aside primarily to preserve for all time representative samples of the country's terrain which, by reason of their outstanding physical or historical qualities, have national significance. However, because of the character of the areas, Prince Edward Island and Riding Mountain are particularly suitable for family recreation, while Glacier and Yoho are more suitable for the enjoyment of natural scenic beauty.

Since there are only two categories in the system, National Parks and National Historic Parks and Sites, the diversity in purpose and use of National Parks and the demand for "contrived or urban" type recreation facilities, as distinguished from enjoyment of nature, create a basic problem in establishing policies for the system as a whole and in applying general policies to individual units. Many of these difficulties would be resolved if there were more extensive classification of the areas which are now or which may be comprehended in the system. For the purpose of discussion it could be suggested that there might be provision for four or five classifications of national areas, such as:

- (i) National Parks—areas of outstanding natural features (scenery, wilderness, geography, geology or flora and fauna) which should be preserved forever as part of the national heritage for the benefit, education and enjoyment of present and future generations.
- (ii) National Shorelines—major units of ocean shoreline or the shoreline of very large lakes, which, due to their unique quality, are of national significance.
- (iii) National Recreation Areas—areas which are primarily useful for recreational purposes and in which the obligation to preserve the natural state is distinctly secondary. This might also include areas suitable for recreation by reason of man-made developments such as power developments.
- (iv) National Nature Preserves, Sites, or Monuments—areas, sites or features (scenic, geographic, or scientific) which it is appropriate for the nation to preserve but which perhaps for lack of size or other reasons do not qualify as National Parks.
- (v) National Historic Sites, Features or Areas.

(The above classifications and designations are entirely tentative and are advanced simply for the purpose of discussion.)

Classification of areas would make it easier to define and state the purposes of each type of area and to develop consistent policies for each. It would assist in preservation where this is a prime consideration and would facilitate use of individual units to the best advantage. Proper classification of areas would enable the Department to undertake an educational program to inform the public on the ideals and purposes governing the establishment and management of each type of area and so bring about a better understanding and wider acceptance of sound objectives.

However, for the purposes of this policy statement the term "National Parks" will be used. The policies as stated relate to the present situation and the existing terms of reference since there is an immediate need for definite policies and it is clearly advisable to agree on the general principles applicable to the basic problems common to all parks in the system.

The adoption of the general policies will assist in the preparation of long range plans for each park. The application of policies to each of the parks will of course be in general accordance with the accepted policies for the park system, but each long range plan will contain a section which describes any peculiarity in the application of policy to that particular park. Following are fifteen subjects which require a policy statement. Each subject has been discussed by the Guidance Committee for Planning and its recommendations accepted.

## I - Purpose of National Parks

Section 4 - National Parks Act - "The Parks are hereby dedicated to the people of Canada for their benefit, education and enjoyment, subject to the provisions of this Act and the regulations, and such Parks shall be maintained and made use of so as to leave them unimpaired for the enjoyment of future generations."

The above is the only statement in the Act on the general purposes of the National Parks. Such broad terms as benefit, education and enjoyment leave ample grounds for varying opinions as to exactly what the legislators had in mind. Hence the administrators have never had the benefit of a clearly defined park purpose to guide them. The first step should be to arrive at a sound interpretation of the intention of the Act. The purpose of National Parks must be agreed upon before attempting to deal with policies on the various developments within the parks. This subject is of primary importance to the establishment of National Park ideals.

National Park purpose is associated with the recognition of recreation as a major resource use. Each unit of the National Park system was established because, defining recreation in the broadest possible terms, it represented a major recreation resource worthy of preservation by the nation for public enjoyment.

Thus the National Parks are a special kind of resource. It is recognized that the best and highest resource use for these areas lies in recreation and they are set apart and preserved for this purpose. Like other resources, the National Park resource is valuable to man only when he can utilize it. However, parks differ from other resources chiefly in the nature of their products. While mineral and forestry resources yield material products required for commerce, parks yield the recreation, refreshment, aesthetic enjoyment and knowledge essential to national health and well being. The only way these products (benefits) can be assured is through reserving sufficient areas of high quality and providing for intelligent and appropriate use of park resources by people.

Preservation and use are often difficult to reconcile. Since the park values are supplied by the natural scene unimpaired, maintaining and preserving the parks for future generations is also a basic part of our obligation.

The popular interpretation of the general purposes section of the National Parks Act has been to permit, in fact to encourage, artificial recreations and to develop parks

to quite an extent along summer resort lines. This interpretation has not completely ignored the value of nature. That value has, however, taken a decisive second place.

It is not surprising that the value of nature has not been emphasized in the administration and policy of our National Parks. After all Canada is a young nation and it was not many years ago that a significant percentage of the population lived in or very close to wilderness, or at least in rural surroundings. Even now many citizens, but not all, are within convenient reach of large natural areas. There is not at present, among Canadians in general, a strong desire to seek wilderness enjoyment. This seems apparent by the small proportion of park visitors who participate in hiking, riding and camping in the isolated areas of the parks. The demand of the majority is still for modern accommodation with all of the recreational facilities common to life in the cities.

We in Canada are in a position to benefit from the experience of other more heavily populated countries as far as the reservation and preservation of park areas is concerned. With the growth in population and increasing urbanization, the need for natural areas and their value will become more evident. It is, therefore, of primary importance to recognize these values now and take account of them in proposing policy on the purpose of National Parks.

The dedication clause of the National Parks Act cites three main requirements. Firstly the areas are dedicated to the people of Canada (all of the people). Secondly they are for the benefit, education and enjoyment of the people of Canada. Thirdly they are to be maintained and made use of so as to leave them unimpaired for the enjoyment of future generations.

Being dedicated to all of the people of Canada cannot possibly mean that National Parks are required to provide for every kind of use requested by the public. Similarly, it is reasonable to assume that the words benefit, education and enjoyment were not intended to mean anything more than the benefit, education and enjoyment which is associated directly with the products of nature or history. Since benefit, education and enjoyment apply not only to the present but also to future generations, our obligation to protect the areas against impairment implies not only protection against private exploitation, but also guarding against impairment by over-use, improper use and inappropriate development.

It is important that we recognize the basic purpose of National Parks as distinguished from the many secondary uses that have become established. Certain secondary uses can be accepted and are in harmony with, or at least do not detract from, the basic purposes of a park. Other uses are not acceptable. The fundamental purpose of a National Park is comparable to that of a museum or an art gallery. Museums and art galleries have their fundamental purposes but do not permit certain related uses. They do not allow activities on the other hand which are out of harmony with their real purpose.

Our National Park system has as its basic purpose to preserve, for all time, outstanding natural areas and features as a national heritage. This statement represents the broad purpose of the system. It requires further clarification and definition for the successful application of policy to each of the several areas. Each area in the system has been, or should be, chosen for certain specific reasons. These reasons should be definable and clearly understood for each area. It would be insufficient to use as the main criteria for a park that it had recreational and scenic quality. The reasons for its establishment must be clear and definite so that the area may be administered in a positive and objective manner. Within the broad purpose of preservation then we should, for each area, specify the reasons for choosing the particular area and therefore the particular features that are first consideration for protection and preservation. These reasons may be geographical, biological, geological or historical. Once the purpose for each of the areas has been defined, any development or activity within the boundaries of that park should be consistent with the established purpose.

The variation in nature and extent of National Parks also suggests that certain parks can be subjected to secondary uses, such as artificial outdoor recreations, i.e., golf, tennis, lawn bowling, skiing and similar participant sports, without detracting from their real purpose, while others cannot. In establishing the overall plan for each park it will be necessary to include the reasons for establishing that particular park, the limits of use that should be encouraged, and the uses that should not be permitted. Unless this is done inappropriate use patterns may continue or develop and the parks will not attain the objective for which they were dedicated.

## II - Nature

### *Policy*

1. The basic purpose of the National Park system is to preserve for all time areas which contain significant geographical, geological, biological or historic features as a national heritage for the benefit, education and enjoyment of the people of Canada.

2. The provision of urban type recreational facilities is not part of the basic purpose of National Parks. Such recreation facilities in harmony with the purpose and preservation of a park may be introduced as required to meet recreational needs; but always so as to minimize impairment and not at all if substantial impairment is inevitable.

Our most fundamental and important obligation in the administration of the Act is to preserve from impairment all significant objects and features of nature in the parks. This is the very reason the parks were established.

A brief look at our parks will immediately suggest that we have been only partially successful in meeting this obligation. Some natural features have been mutilated almost beyond recognition; others have been altered to suit the requirements of park developments. In some cases administrative and visitor services have been constructed over or on a feature and have thus reduced its natural quality or capacity to yield value to the visitor.

While facilities for large numbers of visitors to enjoy a park do inevitably mean some impairment, this can be minimized by careful planning. With increased visitation and visitor demands, the impact of numbers will become more critical and planning must be focussed on providing the opportunities for park enjoyment while preserving the areas from impairment by mass visitation.

### *Policy on Wildlife and Nature*

1. Objects of nature in National Parks are important parts of the national heritage and should be preserved unimpaired for the benefit, education and enjoyment of future generations.

2. The flora, fauna, soils and waters form the natural ecological communities in National Parks. To limit fire, to maintain healthy forest and other vegetative cover, to control erosion and to preserve recreational and aesthetic values may require the management of any or all components of such communities. Such management should be kept to a minimum to maintain aesthetic values of a quasi-natural environment.

3. It is part of National Park purpose to maintain the quality and beauty of wildlife in National Parks, i.e., to maintain healthy populations of native animals in balance with their environment. In a completely natural situation this would be accomplished by the steady pressure and persistent attrition of predators on animals of poorer condition. Modern hunting methods tend to reverse the process of natural selection by favoring survival of the less fit. For this reason where game populations exceed the carrying capacity of the range their numbers should be reduced by a selective kill of the poorer specimens carried out by park staff under scientific direction.

4. National Park planning should give full consideration to character, size, shape and location of park areas in order to provide for,

(i) year-round ecological requirements for the indigenous animal species, especially those with migratory habits and,  
(ii) preservation of representative and unique geological formations and other natural history objects.

5. The following activities are detrimental to natural history values and should not be permitted in a National Park:

(i) Grazing of domestic stock,  
(ii) Pollution of air, soil or water,  
(iii) Construction and operation of hydro-electric power installations and other water diversions or impoundments for industrial purposes,  
(iv) The mining or harvesting of the resources of land or water for the primary purpose of commercial gain.

6. The construction of highways, fire roads, hiking trails, fences, townsites, artificial recreational developments and the like are detrimental to natural history values in National Parks, but, if essential, should be developed so as to have the least possible impact on nature and natural features.

7. Impairment to nature in general, caused by visitor use or developments aimed at improving visitor use of a park, should be kept to an absolute minimum. Any such impairment should be accepted only if it is justified by increased, improved or broadened use of the park in accordance with park purposes.

8. The character of special features of a park should not be altered. Artificial developments required to assist the visitor to enjoy the feature should be located or effected so as not to interfere with its natural appearance or character. This would exclude the alteration of a feature so that, in effect, the alteration itself becomes the thing of interest.

9. Conflicts between wildlife and other park interests including human safety should be resolved if possible without destruction of wildlife. For example adequate handling of garbage should replace destruction of garbage-fed bears, and feeding of bears by visitors should be stopped. When removal or destruction of animals is decided upon on the basis of research findings, it should be done by departmental employees and as promptly and unobtrusively as possible.

10. Good quality angling for visitor recreation should be provided and maintained through modern methods of habitat man-

agement and fish culture, where such is economically feasible and appropriate to the area and where it can be done without detriment to the aesthetic values of the areas concerned. Stocking should be carried out only in waters which allow the species being introduced to thrive under natural conditions.

11. Scientific research should be considered an integral part of National Park purposes where,

(i) data are required to establish appropriate public activities and sound management of the natural features,

(ii) the areas concerned offer suitable locations for study of ecological problems and where such study is in harmony with parks policy,

(iii) the research is being undertaken or sponsored by an accredited scientific organization.

Notwithstanding (ii) and (iii) above, no research, other than for park purposes, should be carried on in a park if suitable areas for its conduct can be found elsewhere.

12. Public appreciation of natural history values must be developed through provision of nature trails, nature museums, nature guides, leaflets, lectures and other interpretative activities. Data essential to such interpretative programs should be developed by well planned research.

#### *Policy on Forestry*

13. The forests of the National Parks should be protected and maintained to preserve their natural recreational, scenic and other aesthetic values, and any use made of them should leave them unimpaired for the enjoyment of future generations.

14. No single detailed forest policy is applicable to all of the National Park forests. The type of management depends upon the most desirable use of the area. A wilderness zone should contain a completely natural forest. An area around a townsite or campground should be managed so as to maintain a forest that will withstand the necessary visitor use without altering the natural scene appreciably.

15. Only forest operations which are primarily concerned with the management of the forests for the protection and maintenance of National Park values should be permitted. Forest operations whose sole or main object is the cutting and removal of timber products for this commercial value alone should not be permitted.

16. Permissible forest operations include those whose primary aim is:

(i) The removal of dead, diseased or infested timber whose presence threatens the health of adjacent forest, constitutes a real fire or visitor safety hazard, or seriously reduces the recreational, scenic or other aesthetic values of an area used extensively by park visitors.

(ii) Artificial reforestation of areas where a forest is desirable and natural regeneration of former or existing stands is not occurring naturally. Natural meadows or barrens should not be planted with trees. Only species native to the area should be used for reforestation or similar plantings. Planting of exotic trees and shrubs should be limited to ornamental or landscape use in built up areas.

(iii) Cultural cutting of green timber to develop or maintain healthy recreational forests in areas where public use makes such forests desirable to satisfy park purposes. This type of management is acceptable in and around developed areas, along scenic drives and in areas where there is a risk of losing a high proportion of the forest cover at one time.

All forest operations should be planned and carried out by the park administration or under its direct supervision and in such a manner that park values of the area do not suffer long lasting damage.

17. The existence of licensed timber berths is not consistent with the purposes of National Parks and cutting rights presently held should be extinguished. Where it is practicable to do so, timber berths should be acquired by negotiation, but failing this the holders should be notified to complete their operations so that the berths can be extinguished as soon as possible. No further timber cutting rights of this type will be granted in any National Park.

#### **Railroads and Commercial Highways**

In several of the parks there are railroads located within the park boundaries. In each case the railroads were constructed prior to the establishment of the area as a National Park. Insofar as parks policy is concerned railroads which presently exist in parks have to be accepted as necessary in the national interest. However the yards and buildings in several cases require extensive improvements to bring them up to an acceptable standard. To this end, negotiations between the Department and the railroads should be undertaken and the means of reaching the desired objective agreed to.

Trunk highways passing through a park and designed for through or commercial traffic represent an intrusion.

#### *Policy*

1. The construction of a railroad does cause impairment to nature and is therefore not desirable in a National Park. This will be taken into account when establishing new parks. The area should be chosen so that its location will not prevent the construction of a railroad in the region of the park but will avoid the necessity of locating the railroad within its boundaries.

2. Railroads located in a National Park, in common with individuals and other organizations, are required to comply with park regulations.

3. The only grounds on which a trunk highway for through or commercial traffic can be accepted in a National Park is if it is of sufficient importance that the sacrifice of park values can be justified.

4. In locating new parks, existing and future commercial transportation networks should be carefully studied so that these intrusions can be avoided.

#### **Park Roads**

A system of roads within a park, although an impairment, is necessary to allow visitors access to the park features so that they can enjoy and benefit from them. This impairment is accepted on the basis that the increased use and enjoyment of the park made possible by the construction of a road outweighs the reduction in park values caused by the impairment. However the roads must be located so as to reduce general impairment as much as possible. Borrow pits and spill areas must be selected in such a manner and with sufficient screening to prevent the impairment of scenic values and destruction of important natural features.

Roads should be designed to a good standard for safe driving but not a sufficiently high standard to encourage high speed travel. The mixing of high speed traffic and sight-seeing traffic results in a high accident rate.

The standard of the road should be in keeping with the character of the park and the purpose of the road.

#### *Policy*

5. Roads are the accepted means of access to and within the parks. The design of park roads requires high quality construction but width, grade and alignment should be adequate for moderate speeds only. Park road standards should conform to a carefully prepared classification system in which the volume of traffic, type of vehicle and desired speed of travel are considered. The location, design and construction of park roads must keep impairment of the landscape to an absolute minimum and avoid interference with special park features. The extent of the park road system should conform to the zoning plan prepared for each park.

#### *Airfields*

We can anticipate that the use of small aircraft as a common means of transportation will increase and requests for landing facilities within the parks will result. A policy of accepting such facilities could result in major intrusions through gradual development of airports and navigation aids. There would also be demands for associated facilities such as terminals, fuelling and repair depots, car rentals and the usual amenities associated with airports.

Further, the use of aircraft as a means of transportation by visitors to and within the park would detract from the natural and primitive atmosphere since the sight and sound of low flying aircraft would lessen the opportunity for others to enjoy the natural scene. Its effect on wildlife would be detrimental to National Park values.

#### *Policy*

6. Sightseeing from the air or use of aircraft by the public in the parks should not be permitted. However aircraft may be used for administration, operation or protection of the park.

7. Demands for the use of air transportation to parks can and should be met by privately owned landing facilities outside park boundaries.

8. If landing strips are required in parks

for administrative purposes these should be listed by the Department of Transport as emergency strips to exclude regular public use.

#### *Waterways and Boating*

Like roads and trails, travel by boat is an acceptable method of facilitating access to park features and allowing visitors to enjoy and benefit from them. The aim or purpose guiding the development of boating in National Parks then is that it should contribute to the benefit, education and enjoyment of the park and nature without significant impairment. To the extent that it satisfies this purpose, travel by boat should be encouraged.

In carrying out this purpose we should try to see that enjoyment of the park by boat is readily available to the greatest number consistent with the capacity and character of the water bodies and that such travel is not restricted by providing facilities which may be applicable only to special groups. In practice this will mean that we should provide primarily for canoes, rowboats and the smaller powered craft commonly used by visitors, plus similar boats available for hire, and, in certain situations, sightseeing cruisers. The overall development plan will set up a priority of facilities.

Generally the launching ramp will assume top priority in the development with lower priority being given to stay-over docking. Public boat rentals would also have a high priority in most cases as compared to dock space for private boats. The situation may also occur where public cruise boats would have top priority. In all cases due to its restrictive nature seasonal docking for private craft would be assigned the lowest priority if not excluded entirely. The application of the policy will differ from park to park since the requirements for large bodies of water or cruising off the shores of ocean parks will differ from those of smaller lakes and waterways. The policy does not preclude the prohibition or restriction of power boating where the safety of swimmers, the limited size of water body, or the wilderness character of an area renders this necessary.

#### *Policy on Waterways*

9. Since travel by boat is an acceptable means of park use and enjoyment and a means of access to points of interest in the parks, improvements to waterways which do not create significant impairment are justifiable.

Such improvements may take the form of landing docks, offshore mooring, minor dredging or improvements to portages such as light railways, all designed to create waterways or canoe routes and result in better use of the park. Waterway improvements may be made only if necessary and in such a way as to alter the natural appearance as little as possible. Unless there are special circumstances, improvements should be designed to facilitate navigation by canoes, rowboats and small power boats. 10. The nature and extent of improvements should be considered in relation to the purpose of the park and the use or zoning of the particular area as described in the approved plan for the park.

11. Where factors such as the safety of swimmers, the limited size of a water body, or the wilderness character of an area require it, power boating may be limited or non-powered craft only may be permitted.

#### *Policy on Boat Accommodation*

12. The provision of accommodation for boats such as launching ramps, docking and associated shore facilities such as parking areas and toilet buildings, is an acceptable form of park development where it will facilitate park purposes. Such facilities must be separate from swimming developments since the two uses are quite incompatible.

13. Docking, fuelling and storage accommodation for commercial boat services should be designed to park standards and be built and owned by the government. The facilities might then be leased to a concessionaire. The concession should also include the rental of slips to private boaters who require overnight docking or docking for a week or two. Boat-rental and cruise services will require winter storage facilities and facilities for overhaul.

14. Accommodation for private boaters should be designed primarily for the small boats brought to the park by the touring visitor or vacationer. It should include launching ramps and parking space for cars and boat trailers as well as parking space for the overall boating accommodation. It should provide temporary docking facilities for day users which should be free of charge. Overnight docking slips for transient visitors or vacationers should be provided for those who require overnight docking or docking during a stay of a week or so. These spaces might form part of a concession and be handled by the concessionaire on the basis of a fair commercial charge for the service provided.

The Department should not attempt to provide seasonal docking or storage and repair facilities for private boats.

15. The location, type and extent of boat- ing accommodation and its relation to over- all park development will form part of the long-range plan for each park.

#### **Trails and Footpaths**

Travel by foot and horse has been the tradi- tional means of transportation for those visitors who wish to use and enjoy the natural values of parks. The proportion of visitors who make use of trails is not large and one of the reasons for this may well be the lack of attention that has been di- rected toward the values thus received.

#### *Policy on Trails and Footpaths*

16. Travel in parks by foot and horse should be encouraged. While the construc- tion of trails and footpaths does not appre- ciably impair the landscape, care should be taken to avoid its impairment.

17. Location and standards of trails and footpaths should be in harmony with park zoning. The only zone where constructed trails would not be permitted is in scientific or research areas. In wilderness zones trails would be of a rudimentary nature, sufficient only to make the terrain passable on foot or horseback, and to give direction.

18. It should be a general policy to sepa- rate foot traffic from equestrian traffic especially in those areas where both ac- tivities are fairly heavy.

#### **Aerial Transportation**

This form of transportation has already been introduced into the National Park system by the installation of several lifts.

Irrespective of precedent what we are seeking is a policy that will most adequate- ly serve this and future generations. Before deciding whether aerial lifts properly be- long in national parks it is necessary to weigh the advantages and disadvantages from the standpoint of park purposes.

For the purpose of enjoying spectacular scenic views aerial lifts serve the same basic function as a road. Lifts provide easy ac- cess to one or two points of interest which visitors might not otherwise enjoy for rea- sons of time, cost or physical inability. It can be argued that lifts are modern con- veniences which, in common with paved highways and the more elaborate and com- fortable types of accommodation, enable those who need or desire ease and comfort to enjoy a particular aspect of the park scene.

On the other hand, roads and other means of travel are general means of ac- cess, bringing the visitor into closer contact with more of the enjoyment and benefits the park has to offer. Lifts serve a more restricted purpose, which is enjoyment of the view from the top of a particular moun- tain. A lift can create a very prominent scar and detracts from the natural scene. Roads too are impairments, but a road is less objectionable only because it is a neces- sity in the age of automobiles to enable visitors of all degrees of physical ability to have access to the parks and the means of benefitting from them. The very function of a lift suggests that it will be located on the face of a mountain, in an area where visitation is heavy, and where the scarring and the installation could be particularly conspicuous.

#### *Policy*

19. Aerial lifts cannot be permitted in Na- tional Parks unless it is quite clear that a lift will assist substantial numbers of visi- tors to enjoy and benefit from the natural attractions of the park. Proposals for lifts must satisfy strict examination as to the benefits from a National Parks standpoint, aesthetics and economic feasibility. Loca- tion to minimize scarring or impairment of the park scene must be rigidly controlled by the Department.

Although the purpose and intended use of National Parks has not changed since their inception, the social, economic and cultural characteristics of the people have and will continue to change. This changing way of life has made it necessary to alter park policies to maintain the role the parks were dedicated to play in the lives of the people of Canada, while at the same time ensur- ing that those things which represent the purpose of the parks will not be encroached upon. Examples of these changes are the acceptance of modern roads and overnight sleeping accommodation.

The need for roads to enable the public to enjoy National Parks has already been discussed. The same general comments ap- ply to the subject of overnight accommoda- tion. To use, enjoy and benefit fully from the many park values it is necessary to remain in the larger parks for several days at a time. It is important therefore to have accommodation to encourage people to derive the benefits which the parks are intended to provide. This need requires policies governing the type of accommoda- tion that can be permitted without inter- fering with the function of the park.

The type of accommodation required, and indeed the need for overnight accom- modation at all, must be determined by the character of the park. Some parks are of such size, shape or character that the development of permanent accommodation facilities is unnecessary and would in fact be detrimental to the purpose of those parks. Others require and without appre- ciable interference with their purpose, can, allow certain types of permanent accom- modation.

The provision of accommodation in the National Parks has not in all cases devel- oped in the best interests of all concerned. A well defined general policy will help, but it is a matter that will require careful plan- ning and study for each of the individual park areas. Such matters as type and loca- tion of accommodation in relation to park features, grouping of developments, archi- tecture, services, administration and own- ership should be included in the studies.

#### *Policy*

1. Overnight accommodation should be provided if it will encourage enjoyment and proper recreational use of the park without undue impairment. In providing for such accommodation consideration should be given to the varying tastes and the range of economic capacity of the visitors to the National Parks.

## V - Camping

Overnight accommodation may have to be prohibited in certain cases if the size or character of the park so requires.

2. Development and operation of permanent accommodation in National Parks should be by private enterprise. Only in cases where it is in the best interests of the park to have permanent accommodations, and such are not being provided by private industry, should the Department undertake to construct accommodation. In such cases the Departmental involvement should be strictly limited, i.e., government ownership with the development leased to an operator.

3. Permanent accommodation developments will be located in accordance with the overall development plan for the particular park. Acceptable architecture and landscaping sketches should be prepared to guide the developer. Both architecture and landscaping should be on a theme which is in harmony with the National Park, not prominent and yet not completely hidden or enveloped by the surroundings. The location and appearance of a development should be such that it does not intrude or detract from the natural features of the park.

4. Motels, cabins, lodges, etc. should, wherever possible, be grouped with serviced campgrounds and any other necessary facilities, such as grocery stores, to minimize impairment to the park and to simplify servicing. The installation of services to such a planned development should be by the Department, utility company or a combination of the two. The objective should be to gradually eliminate the many scattered developments that now exist.

5. Where at all practical, especially in the smaller parks, overnight accommodation involving such major facilities as motels, hotels, stores and related services should be encouraged in areas outside the park boundaries. These areas might take the form of special zones where lands may be purchased by private individuals but development would be controlled by federal-provincial agreement on zoning regulations.

Visitors to the National Parks who use the tent or trailer type of accommodation represent a wide variety of social, economic and cultural backgrounds. They have come to the park for an equally wide variety of reasons. The objective in providing camping facilities should be to provide a fairly wide range of campsites based not only on popular demand but also related to the park values which stand out as being the main purposes of the particular National Park. Using this as a general guide the system of campgrounds throughout the parks will vary from the most primitive campsite, having only an open grill in which to build a fire, to the compact modern campgrounds and trailer parks with electricity and modern toilet and laundry facilities.

The variation in acceptable use of parks referred to in other parts of this submission does bear a direct relationship to the type and location of campgrounds. For example a campsite to serve visitors who wish to explore isolated sections of a park should be the primitive type. At the other extreme would be the modern serviced campground and trailer park located near a developed recreational area for the convenience of those who wish to enjoy those activities. Other campgrounds of appropriate design, layout and size would fill the requirements for visitors whose interests lie between the two extremes.

The larger serviced campgrounds do lack some of the camping atmosphere but many people prefer to have the conveniences. We can and should provide for both tastes, those who want conveniences and those who desire something more primitive. Cost of construction, maintenance and operation are factors to be considered in resolving this problem. The most important factor is, however, that the campground design be appropriate to its location and therefore to the park uses its patrons have come to enjoy.

As mentioned under Permanent Accommodation For Visitors there are advantages in grouping visitor services and accommodation facilities. This thought applies to the larger serviced campgrounds but would not apply to the semi-serviced and primitive camping areas described below.

The location of the planned accommodation and camping developments in parks which adjoin one another, besides meeting the general requirements already mentioned, should take into account convenience of moving from one development to another. This is particularly applicable to

campers since distance between campgrounds does determine to quite an extent their enjoyment of the visit to the park.

In line with the above it is considered that there should be three distinct types of campgrounds in National Parks:

*Serviced Campgrounds*—where a formal layout is provided, but retaining tree cover as much as possible. This type of campground would be equipped with such facilities as flush toilets, electricity, heated water, shelters, and possibly play equipment. It would have separate zones for tents and travel trailers with sewage, water and electrical hook-ups for the latter. In nearly all cases these serviced, urban-type campgrounds would be part of, or adjacent to, a Visitor Services Centre.

*Semi-serviced Campgrounds*—located in the vicinity of the main travel routes and destination points throughout the park. These would not be located immediately adjacent to the main roads or immediately adjoining choice lake frontage but would be closely accessible to both. The objective here would be to provide near natural camping conditions in prepared sites with only basic facilities provided. The individual sites would be spaced about a loop system of roads in such a manner as to retain as much vegetation as possible between sites. A minimum of 75 to 100 feet between sites might be the standard. Generally not less than 60 units nor more than 240 units would be provided in any one campground. (Less than 60 units is generally uneconomical to maintain). Facilities provided would be piped water, flush toilets if possible, and kitchen shelters if required. Each unit would have a parking spur, tent site, table and fireplace. No electricity would be provided other than perhaps lighting of toilet buildings and no special services for trailers. The units would be so designed as to accommodate both travel trailers and tents without any special zones for either.

Such campgrounds would give a better distribution of use throughout a park, make many semi-wilderness areas usable at low capital cost, and, more important, provide the visitor with a true park experience in keeping with the purpose of the National Parks as opposed to the present tendency to simply perpetuate everyday urban experience in the slightly different surroundings of a park townsite. Another advantage is that very large numbers of persons would be accommodated in this manner close to prime attractions without seriously impair-



ing those attractions or introducing incompatible structures and facilities.

*Primitive Campgrounds* - would consist of little more than designated camping spots along side trails and wilderness routes. They would be largely protective in that camping would have to take place in areas brushed out for that purpose. Thus a haphazard pattern of camping with its usual occupancy of prime sites and resulting deterioration of those sites could be avoided. Facilities would consist of designated tent sites, garbage pit, designated water collection point and pit toilets. In some regions Adirondack-type shelters might be required.

#### *Policy*

1. Camping is an activity closely related to the basic purposes of National Parks. Facilities and regulations for camping should therefore be carefully planned to encourage this form of park use without sacrificing the natural park values that the camper has come to enjoy.

2. Campgrounds with varying degrees of services are required. While the larger campgrounds with modern services are necessary at certain points to meet the demand, it is desirable to avoid undue expansion of these campgrounds and provision of too many services and luxuries. There is undoubtedly a loss of the camping atmosphere in the large campgrounds. As far as practicable we should provide more of the semi-serviced and primitive campgrounds rather than the large mass camping areas.

To encourage real camping and camping trips it is advisable to stress establishment of small and relatively primitive campsites along hiking trails, canoe routes, or secondary roads.

3. Only when a National Park or a particular area within a park is so small or fragile that the presence of a campground would impair the natural features that form the basic purpose for establishing the park should camping not be permitted.

Group camping has been considered in the past to be quite acceptable and a desirable use of National Parks. There has been some difference of opinion however on the acceptability of permanent buildings and leased sites for this purpose. The lack of a sound long-range policy has resulted in permission being granted to some organizations to lease land and erect permanent buildings while similar requests from others have been refused. Examples of such permanent establishments in the parks are the Cadet Camp at Banff, the Canadian Youth Hostels in Banff and Jasper, the church camps in Riding Mountain, and The Alpine Club of Canada developments throughout the mountain parks.

The acceptability of such group developments in National Parks bears a relationship to the purposes of the particular park and the way in which the group intends to use it. If the group has established the development for the purpose of enjoying those things that the park has to offer, it would certainly be more acceptable than a group which intends to use their development merely to train or pursue the objectives of their organization quite apart from the purposes of the park.

The problem that has been introduced by permitting the organizations, mentioned above, to hold leases and construct permanent buildings in parks is one of precedence. There are many types of organizations which could be considered acceptable insofar as the manner in which they intend to use the park is concerned. However it would certainly not be in the best interests of the parks to allow every such organization the privilege that has already been extended to a few. It is equally unfair to extend a privilege to one organization and not to another. Allowing a private organization to occupy and control a portion of a National Park for an indefinite period, is not consistent with either National Park principles or sound administration of publicly owned property.

It is important that the groups who wish to use the park in accordance with its purposes be permitted to do so and that adequate facilities be made available for that demand. Large organized groups require more elaborate accommodation than normal campgrounds in order to provide space for messing and group activities, particularly during wet weather. Our objective should be to meet this need in a manner consistent with other uses of the parks and sound administration of publicly owned lands.

#### *Policy*

1. The leasing of land, and the construction of permanent buildings by private organizations (youth organizations, churches, clubs, etc.) should not be permitted in National Parks.

2. Nevertheless group camping oriented toward the benefit, education and enjoyment to be gained from the natural attractions of a park is one of the most desirable forms of park use. However, campground facilities suitable for organized group camping are desirable. Group camping areas should be specially designed, developed and maintained by the Department to be made available to suitable groups. In some cases this may mean the construction of permanent recreation and messing buildings.

3. The removal of existing establishments such as church camps, youth hostels and alpine clubs should be effected in a manner that will inconvenience the users as little as possible and only as departmentally owned facilities are made available to meet the demand.

## VII - Research and National Utility Installations

### Research

The Department, over the years, has had requests from a wide variety of organizations to permit developments in the parks for the purpose of conducting research programs. Some of the requests have been granted and many have not. There is presently in Banff the Department of Public Works Soils Laboratory; a National Research Council Cosmic Ray Station; and a Department of Agriculture Forest Entomological Station. In Fundy the Department of Agriculture has an experimental potato farm.

Decisions on whether or not a particular research installation or program should be permitted in National Parks have been guided by the purpose of the particular park, the relationship and value of the research to the park, its importance to the nation and the impairment caused by the installation. These principles, if applied with park values foremost in mind, will adequately safeguard the parks against unnecessary intrusion.

### National Utility Installations

There are other types of installations which cannot be classified as research but which are in the same category as some of those described above as far as their effect on a park is concerned. Examples are radio beacons, microwave relay stations and oil or gas pipe lines. The same principles should apply to the group.

### Policy

1. Scientific research for park purposes, such as management of the flora and fauna of the parks and the provision of data for park interpretation, is considered an integral part of park operations.
2. No research, other than for park purposes, should be carried on in a park if suitable areas for its conduct can be found elsewhere. If a suitable area cannot be found elsewhere and the information or service is of national importance the program should be accepted only if its importance outweighs the resulting reduction in park values. In any case the impairment and effect on the park is to be kept to an absolute minimum.
3. National utility installations should not be permitted in a park if suitable areas can

be found elsewhere. If a suitable area cannot be found elsewhere and the service provided by the installation is of national importance it should be accepted only if its importance outweighs the resulting reduction in park values. In any case the impairment and effect on the park is to be kept to an absolute minimum.

## VIII - Education and Interpretation

As National Parks are "dedicated to the people of Canada for their benefit, education and enjoyment" appropriate provision to carry out this educational function is required. What then is the intention of the National Parks Act concerning this statutory responsibility for "education"? What kind of education is meant and how should this function be carried out?

Basically National Parks are preserved so that the various natural phenomena may be observed, studied and enjoyed by present and future generations. It is assumed that such observation, study and enjoyment is the kind of education and understanding the legislators had in mind.

Since the Act stipulates that National Parks are "to be maintained and made use of so as to leave them unimpaired for the enjoyment of future generations" they must be preserved as far as possible in their natural state protected from all actions which might result in permanent impairment. Parks are maintained as nature sanctuaries so that the flora, the fauna and the geological features of each area may remain in perpetuity as outdoor museums of living nature for the education of the Canadian people. Thus the "education" specified in the Act as one of the purposes of parks refers to education in the evolution of nature as exemplified in the National Parks.

Interpretative services and qualified naturalists are therefore required to assist the public to know and appreciate the varied aspects of the natural scene. Methods of encouraging and helping park visitors to know and enjoy the natural features should include information on specific locations where various natural phenomena may be seen and studied. Details of the wonders of nature in each park should be made available to visitors through publications for self-guided tours, and directly by trained naturalists. A system of nature trails with various species identified on them is essential, with trail-side exhibits where convenient. Graphic displays, illustrated note sheets and pictorial panels in visitor centres as visual aids should augment this material. In campgrounds, museums and other buildings, naturalists should be equipped to give interesting nature talks illustrated by motion pictures and coloured slides.

Judicious encouragement and assistance in understanding the cycle of nature will undoubtedly enrich the experience of all park visitors. In addition, methods of mass communication should be used to acquaint Canadians generally with the purposes of

## IX - Culture

National Parks, their uses and the benefits which may be derived from appropriate use.

Only when Canadians become fully educated concerning the proper functions of their National Parks will they have an adequate understanding of this valuable part of their national heritage. Through such understanding there will be developed a well-informed body of public opinion to give strong support to the long-term objectives of the National Parks Act.

*Policy*

1. Educating the public in the purposes of national parks and how to use, know and enjoy them is recognized as one of our basic purposes.

2. Interpretative services and qualified naturalists are essential to encourage and assist the public to understand, appreciate and enjoy all forms of nature which are preserved in these sanctuaries.

3. Education and interpretation will involve planned and coordinated use of various aids, such as publications, photographs, special structures, etc., and the assistance of wardens and others.

4. Museums where desirable should exemplify and illustrate natural history and historical values directly related to the park and its purposes. Museums should be provided and administered by the Department.

The value of Canada's natural features as a source of creative inspiration has always been recognized as part of the National Park idea. It is a quality which is very much a part of the general purposes of parks and one which, in the interests of the cultural development of the nation, must be allowed to benefit Canadians.

The inspiration for the creative mind provided by the park atmosphere has been demonstrated by the interest of artists and the work they have created as a result of their visits. Although this interest applies to several of the parks in the system, only two (Banff and Fundy) have permanent establishments for accommodation and instruction. In the other parks interest in art has taken the form of individual visitors pursuing their hobbies as part of their vacation. This interest may be primary or secondary, but the important difference between this type of use and that at Banff or Fundy is the formality and organization involved.

The acceptance of types of park uses which are considered to be in accordance with the purposes of a park is always associated with decisions which qualify the extent to which permanent privately owned establishments for that use can be permitted. The use of a park for the pursuit of the fine arts is no different than its use by naturalist groups, mountain climbers, Boy Scouts, other youth organizations or biologists. All are recognized as desirable uses of parks in accordance with their most fundamental purposes. Certain users have been favoured with permission to develop permanent establishments in some of the parks. Recommendations on this subject have already been made under "Camping" that this privilege be discontinued for the reason that it could not be extended to all groups without interfering with park values and purposes. The recommended policy for the fine arts type of use must not contradict the principles used in establishing policy for other equally acceptable types of use.

In Banff the School of Fine Arts has developed into an institution for formal education and is continuing to grow rapidly. If expansion continues the school could reach university proportions. The situation is similar at the School of Arts and Crafts at Fundy. The policy on this must give first priority to the best interests of the National Park system. However the fact that certain institutions have already been established must be taken into account. From a practical standpoint we have to accept the permanent establishments at

Banff and Fundy. These should be permitted to function and expand to accommodate the demands of the arts and crafts only. Expansion should not be permitted for the purpose of accommodating other types of formal education: although in order to make full use of the facilities, courses other than those associated with the arts and crafts may be carried on in the off season provided such courses of study do not involve expansion or addition to existing facilities.

*Policy*

The National Parks should accept and encourage fine arts and cultural activities carried on by groups pursuing their interests in these activities as part of a vacation, providing privately owned permanent facilities are not required. This is the basic policy.

Two general classifications of private dwellings presently exist in the National Park system; those which are or can be occupied the year round and those in which only seasonal occupancy is permitted. Both types are in several instances as old as the parks in which they are located. The development and use of several of the parks has been closely related to the policy which encouraged the erection of summer or year round residences.

The purpose of this section is to deal with the subject of private dwellings in parks quite apart from the larger question of townsites. The reason for this is that the principle or policy involved for private dwellings should not be affected by their location whether within or outside of a townsite.

#### Year-Round Dwellings

The policy of permitting the erection of permanent year-round residences in parks was introduced with the early Acts under which the parks were administered. These early Acts, as well as the one presently in effect, recognized the desirability of services in the parks in order to allow visitors to enjoy the park values more fully. Permanent residences may in some cases be a necessary part of a year-round visitor service establishment. However permanent residence in a National Park should be looked upon, not as a right for those providing services, but as a privilege to be extended only if it is not feasible to commute from residential areas outside the park. Modern transportation makes commuting practical from greater distances, e.g., many employees in industry and government do travel considerable distances to work. There is the problem of deciding when and where residence outside a park is feasible and practical, also other problems such as inflation of property values within a townsite when residence is severely restricted.

#### Summer Dwellings

Years ago when the population of Canada was much smaller and the numbers using the parks comparatively few, there seemed to be ample space in National Parks for every purpose and hence certain choice areas were set aside for private summer cottages. As recently as 25 years ago private cottages were being encouraged as a very desirable use of parks. This policy has resulted in large developments of summer cottages in several of the parks. In Prince Albert, Riding Mountain and Jasper

to mention only three, choice areas are blocked off from public use. The obvious question is—Is it fair to allow a few individuals the right to occupy land and enjoy summer cottages within National Parks when these parks are set aside, preserved and maintained by the taxpayers as a national heritage for the enjoyment of all citizens? Clearly this privilege cannot be extended to all applicants, or be maintained, without impairment of park values and a critical reduction in the park lands and facilities which should be available for public use. It is now evident that this was a serious mistake and there seems to be no alternative but to reverse the policy.

#### Policy

1. Year-round residences are required and should be permitted in parks which are used by visitors both summer and winter.
2. The number of permanent residents should be kept to the minimum required to provide basic services to the visitors and to the community.
3. Whether a park is used by visitors the year round or only seasonally, any personnel required continuously for park administration or to attend to a national utility established in the park may be permitted permanent residence.
4. Whether or not a particular park is used by visitors year-round or seasonally should be determined by its purpose. This decision should be made before the park is established to avoid indecision and mistakes in the application of this policy.
5. Permanent summer dwellings should not be permitted in National Parks and no further leases whatever are to be issued for this purpose.
6. It should be a long term objective to gradually acquire all existing private summer home sites.

Undoubtedly this will not be easy to carry out but the sooner the program is started the better. Properties do become available from time to time; further some public spirited owners may be disposed to favour sale or gift to the government, feeling that in this way they are making some contribution to park improvement and the national welfare. Offering to buy properties on the basis of extending life occupancy to the present owners should assist in this program.

The general purposes section of the National Parks Act is sufficiently general to allow a choice of interpretations. The popular interpretation has been that which permits the development of urban type recreational facilities in the parks. In the whole system the only parks that do not have such facilities are those which are too small in area, have been established only recently or have been inaccessible. To many Canadians a National Park without artificial or urban type recreational facilities would be without purpose. This indicates a lack of understanding—or a lack of public acceptance—of the fundamental purposes of National Parks. While we must regard suitable forms of recreation as an integral part of parks purposes we should by leadership and education strive to bring about a broader understanding of the other purposes and benefits.

Reference was made in the section on "Purpose" to the necessity for clear definition of the purposes of the park system and of each individual unit of the system. Without such a definition it is impossible to specify the activities and uses that should be permitted in a park. Artificial recreation is only one of many uses and is secondary to the basic function of the system. The provision of facilities for those recreations which are commonly available in communities throughout the country is not the main purpose of National Parks, but this fact does not suggest that no artificial recreations should be permitted. It does suggest that an artificial recreational development should be introduced only if such a development is in harmony with the planned use and purpose of the park. The basic purpose of the park must always receive first consideration.

In view of the significant variation in types of National Parks in the system it is not possible to specify what recreations are or are not appropriate for the system as a whole. The best that can be done in this regard is to provide general guidelines from which a decision can be made for each individual park according to its nature. The following is in way of explanation and introduction of the policy recommendations.

Parks in the system can be divided into three general categories on the basis of purpose and use:

(a) Parks which are basically scenic and nature parks. This includes Banff, Jasper, Yoho, Kootenay, Glacier, Mt. Revelstoke and Cape Breton Highlands.

(b) Parks which are basically family holi-

day parks with a variety of activities in addition to their natural features. This category includes Waterton Lakes, Prince Albert, Riding Mountain, Fundy, Terra Nova and Prince Edward Island.

(c) Parks established to preserve a specific type of fauna or flora; or an area of special geological, historic or geographical interest. This category would include Elk Island, Point Pelee and St. Lawrence Islands.

Several of the parks have a purpose and use that qualifies them in varying degrees for more than one of the categories listed. The breakdown is general and intended only to assist in establishing a general appreciation of which types of artificial recreations should be accepted for each of the general categories. The comments which follow do not take into consideration the recreation facilities which are required by permanent residents of townsites.

(1) The types of recreations that are acceptable in all parts are those which are primarily natural. Such recreations as boating, swimming, hiking, trail riding and fishing are examples of natural recreations closely related to National Park purposes. The extent of facilities for these recreations should be determined by their effect on the individual park.

(2) The wholesome outdoor recreations such as golf, tennis, lawn bowling and horseshoe pitching are particularly acceptable in the recreational and family holiday parks. They should not be developed as a means of attracting visitors to the park but to satisfy the variation in tastes and capacities in a family group. Such facilities should be provided only to meet the reasonable needs of the visitors, and only if the park does not suffer appreciable impairment or reduced potential to supply natural enjoyments to visitors who have come for that purpose.

This type of outdoor recreation should be considered acceptable in certain of the parks listed in category (a) also. Such activities as golf and tennis do not form as essential a part of the purpose of a scenic and nature park as they do in a family holiday park. They should therefore be introduced only after careful consideration of the purpose of the park and the effects of such developments on that purpose.

Location, character and size of the parks as well as established precedents must however be considered in this matter. Banff, Jasper and Cape Breton Highlands have already allowed the development of one or more of the types of artificial recreations referred to. The acceptability

of such developments in these three parks can be defended on the basis that their location suggests a need for family holiday facilities which includes some artificial recreation; their size and character are such that the developments do not detract from the quality of the area as a sight-seeing or nature park. In general artificial recreations should be developed in parks listed in Categories (a) and (c) only to the extent that it can be done without prejudice to the purpose and quality of the park.

(3) Skiing, skating and tobogganing are acceptable uses of parks in which special conditions for those recreations are available. The effect of these developments on the park, the availability of equally favourable conditions for the development elsewhere, and the need for the development, should be considered before making the decision for an individual park. In any case artificial facilities such as ski tows should be located and constructed in such a way as to impair the park as little as possible.

(4) The provision of recreational facilities in the National Park system has in the past been somewhat stereotyped. Each park or group of parks has its own individual character and the development within it should therefore be in harmony with that purpose or theme. This will lead, through education, to an informed public who will choose the park they wish to visit according to what it has to offer and their tastes or inclinations.

(5) Artificial recreations that should not be permitted in National Parks are those which by noise, appearance or character create a carnival or midway atmosphere. This type includes roller skating rinks, drive-in theatres, shooting galleries and fish ponds. From a parks standpoint facilities for visitors to view individual or team sports, such as curling, hockey, baseball, football, are not essential or desirable. However residents of townsites are, of course, entitled to enjoy the same facilities for local sports as they would in a similar townsite outside a park.

(6) Regular (commercial) motion picture theatres are permissible within year-round townsites - no impairment is involved and the residents are entitled to the normal amenities and means of entertainment. Thus these facilities are also available for visitors who desire them. However commercial motion picture theatres - either enclosed or drive-in theatres - are not considered necessary as a facility specifically for visitors. In place of commercialized entertainment which is available at home,

we should try to give the visitor a unique park experience by providing activities more closely related to park purposes such as showings of nature films, informal talks at camp fire gatherings and similar organized recreations. Many people require or want some guidance and leadership to encourage full enjoyment and appreciation of park features. In order to meet this need and to provide enjoyable activities (day and evening), which demonstrate the purposes and functions of the parks, it is planned to expand and strengthen the Interpretative Services. This will mean more and better qualified naturalists, more nature trails and interpretative facilities and a stronger program of conducted tours and informal talks. This is covered in VIII Education and Interpretation.

(7) Swimming pools are acceptable in parks which are listed in Category (a) or (b), except where there is adequate natural swimming. In each case their acceptability should be determined by the nature of the park, how it is used or intended to be used and the need.

Pools constructed to allow bathing in natural hot mineral springs are acceptable where such springs exist. High standards of sanitation are necessary. Where the flow of water is insufficient to maintain a satisfactory standard of sanitation under heavy use it will be necessary to either, (a) restrict the type of use, i.e., use as plunge or bathing pools rather than conventional swimming pools, or (b) keep the number of users per day to the maximum number the pool can handle consistent with health standards, or (c) treat the water where practicable to maintain sanitary conditions.

#### Policy

1. Artificial or urban type recreational developments will not be permitted in National Parks if their presence is not in harmony with park purposes, or causes impairment of significant natural or scenic values, or lessens the opportunity for others to enjoy the park.
2. Only the wholesome outdoor types of recreation which are compatible with the natural atmosphere will be permitted. This is intended to rule out the noisy, gaudy or tawdry elements and amusements commonly associated with a midway or amusement park atmosphere.
3. Artificial recreations in the individual parks should not be introduced to attract visitors who would otherwise not visit the park, or as a means of increasing visitation.

## XII - Townsites

Their main function should be to provide a diversity of healthful enjoyment to meet the widely varied needs and desires of a family group who have come to the park primarily to enjoy nature and the outdoors.

4. Developments for specialized recreational activities in which only a small minority of visitors can participate - for example ski jumping - should be judged on the basis of impairment of park values, the availability of conditions outside the park for this type of development and the importance of such developments to the nation.

Reference to the several Acts which have governed the administration and development of the National Park system indicates that from the beginning the need to provide accommodation and services for park visitors was realized and provision was made for the leasing of land for this purpose.

Recognizing the generality of Section 7 of the present Act, it is necessary to determine the proper function of townsites and the extent of the visitor service developments which they should be allowed to provide consistent with park purposes.

### Townsite Growth

Visitor attendance to the National Parks has been rising ever since the end of World War II. In parks where townsites are required to provide services to the visitors, the townsites have increased in size and capacity to cope with the increasing demands upon them, e.g., Banff now has a permanent resident population of 3,400.

The lack of agreement on a clearly defined purpose for National Parks and the failure to establish a well defined purpose in the public mind has resulted, over the years, in the acceptance of a wide variety of facilities for recreation, entertainment and service of park visitors. The number and variety of facilities being demanded has increased with the surge of visitor attendance that has taken place since 1945. Only a portion of the demands has been satisfied but still the effect on the individual parks is reason for concern.

The greatest single effect of meeting the demands of the rapidly increasing number of visitors for recreation, entertainment and more services has been the change in the type of park use. Weekend visitation has increased a great deal and a high percentage of the total number of visitors use only the area of the park in which urban type facilities have been developed. This tendency, if continued, will suggest the need for more amusements which in turn will attract more visitors. The result will be larger concentrations of facilities and permanent or seasonal populations to provide the necessary visitor services. In accordance with our obligation under the National Parks Act the direct and indirect effects of such developments on the parks and on the purpose of the parks deserve careful appraisal.

The growth of townsites in the individual parks has not been due to the introduction of any one particular form of activity. All of the artificial and natural recreations have played a role. The policy recommen-

dations made on the subjects of recreation, accommodation, private dwellings, camping and others took into account the effects that such developments and associated activities have on visitation, size of townsites and the park in general. The factors which have caused townsite growth to increase have been: -

- (a) Extent of visitor conveniences,
- (b) Extent of entertainment facilities provided,
- (c) The number of establishments providing the same service,
- (d) The number of persons engaged in supplying visitor services who are permitted to reside in townsites.

In accordance with recommendations that have been made on other policy subjects, certain basic conveniences are necessary to allow the visitor to use and enjoy the park. Several of the year-round as well as seasonally occupied townsites have gone far beyond minimum requirements in the directions listed above. These townsites have been developed to the extent that a very significant percentage of the visitors to the park come primarily to enjoy the developments within the townsite. This is contrary to the ideal established earlier that services and recreational facilities should complement rather than compete with or detract from acceptable park use as described under "Purpose".

The cost of construction, operation and maintenance of townsite utilities and facilities represents a high proportion of the annual budget for the park system. In the interest of the taxpayer and the park user, and considering National Park purposes, it is necessary to plan and guide the development of townsites so that they function primarily as Visitor Services Centres.

### Policy

1. The need or acceptability of a townsite in a park should be determined by the character and specific purposes of the individual park. A townsite is an intrusion and should be permitted to develop in a park only if, by reason of the services it provides, the visitor is better able to enjoy the park for what it is.
2. The development of park townsites should be governed by the present and future needs of visitors to the parks. A townsite if required should be developed to provide the necessary visitor services and recreations in accordance with the purpose of the park. It should not provide the extra entertainments and services common to urban living throughout Canada. Delica-

tessens, too numerous curio stores, specialized clothing or dry goods stores, are examples of services considered to be over and above minimum requirements. A townsite should not be permitted to expand in service and entertainment facilities to a point where visitors, who would otherwise not come to the park, are attracted.

3. The number of establishments providing the same service should be sufficient only to satisfy demand and ensure competition. For example the number of service stations in a townsite should be just sufficient to meet both of the above requirements.

4. Only persons engaged in the administration of the park or the supply of necessary visitor services and their dependents should be permitted permanent residence in a park and then only if residence outside the park is not practicable.

5. Channelling of townsite growth and redevelopment toward the best and most appropriate land use from a parks standpoint should be done in such a way as to avoid economic hardship to the residents. The control of lease transfers is one means of achieving this objective.

#### Townsite Planning and Domestic Utilities

The character and purpose of a park, the amount and type of use, and the extent of visitor conveniences that are necessary to ensure full enjoyment of the particular park, must all be considered in planning townsites and domestic utilities. It is evident that the number of visitor services centres or townsites, their location and layout, and the type and quality of domestic utilities in them, would vary from park to park depending on the above considerations and other local conditions. The purpose here is not to lay down specifications for the planning of townsites and utilities but to deal with the subject in a general way, leaving details to be established in the long-range planning report for each individual park.

Reference was made under accommodation and camping to the many advantages of concentrating visitor services into planned areas instead of spreading them throughout the park. That idea applies not only to accommodation and camping facilities but to the accepted recreation developments and other conveniences considered necessary for park enjoyment. This has been done to some extent in several of the parks. In fact concentration has in two instances (Banff and Jasper) been carried to the point of establishing communities

with a permanent population of between 2,000 and 3,000. In each of these instances there are, in addition to the one concentrated development area, numerous individual developments scattered throughout the park. The course of development in both parks is open to criticism for the scattering of individual visitor services on the one hand, and on the other permitting the main townsite to develop its visitor conveniences and recreational facilities, in variety and quantity, beyond the actual requirements.

In recent years the extent and quality of public utilities in the townsites has been increased considerably. This is particularly true for water and sewer utilities which affect public health, but includes also electric power, telephone, natural gas, streets, sidewalks and storm sewers. The Department has accepted the responsibility of installing and maintaining water, sewers, sidewalks and streets in townsites. Power, telephone and natural gas are usually supplied by private utility companies. The scattered developments outside the townsite, have been responsible for their own installations to a standard acceptable to the Department. The whole question of financial responsibility and charges for those utilities which have been installed by the Department is complex and policies in effect have not been entirely satisfactory or equitable. Although improvements to existing utility systems have been made, the lack of sound policy has been detrimental to planned improvement programs.

#### Policy

6. With the exception of primitive and semi-serviced campgrounds, and picnic areas, the scattering of visitor services and recreational facilities throughout a park should be avoided. The extent of the services and recreations needed for the particular park should first be determined. They should then be grouped into one or more planned areas chosen and laid out in harmony with the character and purpose of the park.

Such a planned group of developments (visitor services area) may consist of campgrounds, cabins, motels, grocery stores, restaurant, store, outdoor amphitheatres, recreation facilities, riding establishment etc., and of course the necessary roads, parking lots and public utilities. In a park which is used by visitors the year round one such centre could include permanent residences, administrative headquarters and community developments.

7. Modern utilities such as water, sewer, power and telephone are conveniences

which should be available in all Visitor Service Centres or townsites. Water and sewer services especially should be of acceptable quality for protection of health.

The extent of services such as roads, streets, sidewalks, street lighting, etc. should be influenced by the requirements of the individual townsite. The construction and maintenance of all such services provided by the Department should be to a high standard, both for appearance in some cases and also to reduce long term costs.

#### Community Organizations, Year-Round Townsites

The acceptance of specific services and recreational facilities as a requirement to ensure full enjoyment of a park by visitors leads, in some parks, to year-round residence for a number of families. These people are needed to provide visitor services, just as departmental employees are required to administer and operate the park for the people of Canada. This suggests that the Department has a responsibility to create a climate in which comfortable community living is possible. It does not suggest that the Department has an obligation to subsidize the residents.

Year round park townsites, unlike towns or villages outside the park, do not have a municipal government. The objective of the Department is to reconcile as far as possible the natural desires of the residents to have a greater voice in townsite matters with the peculiar character and requirements of the parks. At present the Department does in effect take the place of a municipal government. As such and in accordance with its responsibility to create a climate for comfortable community living, the Department has an obligation to administer plebiscites and collect taxes for community projects in accordance with local wishes. This refers to community projects only, as distinguished from utilities, roads, streets, parks, etc.

Community organizations is a broad term and is used so that all community endeavours will be included. Examples of such organizations and activities are the Boy Scouts, the Red Cross, public library, curling rink, skating and hockey rinks, playing fields, etc. It is reasonable and desirable that activities such as these should function in a year-round park townsite. The position of the Department would be to encourage and cooperate with the local people in their efforts to develop community institutions which they as a community group wish to undertake and support, but not to become involved financially.



### Special Events and Facilities Related to Townsites

The development of facilities in a park to accommodate the Olympics or other major sports events is not in accordance with National Park purposes. If however a park area is particularly suitable or has necessary characteristics which are not available elsewhere, the development required by, for example, the Winter Olympics should be permitted in the national interest. This might suggest a possible obligation to permit the development of facilities for the Olympics, F.I.S. or other major skiing competitions on the basis that National Parks may contain areas which are particularly suitable and not available elsewhere in the region.

Apart from any national obligations that a park may have to be host to international skiing competitions, there is an obligation to provide skiing facilities for Canadians. Parks contain areas that are accessible and which provide excellent skiing. These conditions are not available in many cases other than in parks. In the interest of providing healthful recreation and opportunities to develop physical fitness, skiing should be permitted and encouraged in parks having those characteristics, but the emphasis should be on mass participation and skiing for the average skier or family groups.

Since curling is a team game and a form of recreation not related to parks purpose, the provision of facilities for curling is a function of community or private enterprise.

Skating is a healthful outdoor recreation and, like skiing or golf, may be regarded as an acceptable form of recreation to add variety to the activities available to the visitor. Facilities for skating should however not be provided for the purpose of attracting visitors. If the demand from visitors who have come for other park activities justifies it, skating facilities would be warranted. Usually community facilities for skating will accommodate visitors as well.

It is not part of the National Park purpose to provide facilities for conventions. Those attending conventions use the park and enjoy it as do other visitors. Their enjoyment of the park is however a secondary activity, and as such does not rate encouragement by direct subsidization of the necessary facilities. The provision of facilities for conventions is therefore a proper function of private enterprise.

### Policy

8. The Department has an obligation to

the permanent residents of park townsites to create conditions under which comfortable community living is possible. The special purposes of the parks, and the national interest in their preservation for these purposes, introduce conditions that make the ordinary operation of municipal self-government impossible for the townsites. Moreover, the expenditures by the federal government in the townsites for general park purposes involve a degree of direct participation in normal municipal operations that makes full municipal control equally impossible. There is no completely satisfactory solution to this problem but through Advisory Councils and other means a continuous effort is made to effect sound and reasonably satisfactory working arrangements. In lieu of a municipal government the park administration may if necessary administer plebiscites and collection of taxes for community projects in accordance with local wishes, but should not interfere with, or assist financially in community projects except to the amount that special park requirements increase the cost of a project over what an equal facility would cost in a similar community outside the park.

9. Curling and skating rinks and other community developments which are common to most communities across Canada, are quite acceptable as community supported enterprises. Sites for such developments should be made available by the Department. Departmental control on such projects should be limited to the prevention of developments which would be detrimental to the park.

10. Recreational developments considered necessary for full visitor enjoyment of a park should be constructed and administered by the Department. Townsite residents should be permitted to use the facilities at a reasonable charge.

11. The development of facilities in a park to accommodate international events such as the Winter Olympics or other large scale meets or competitions is not in accordance with the purposes of National Parks. If it becomes established that a particular area of a park is best suited for such an event, and it is in the national interest such an event be held in Canada, then the National Parks should permit the intrusion. However, the Department should control all related development to assure minimum impairment of park values and maximum post event utilization of facilities for park purposes.

People differ greatly in their habits and desires and therefore will wish to make use of a park in different ways according to age, family circumstances, inclinations and abilities. Most of the existing parks have characteristics that will allow flexibility of use without causing appreciable impairment or sacrifice of purpose. The concept of zoning is introduced as a means of providing administrative and development control that will ensure a proper balance between visitor use and purpose for each park.

Long-range planning cannot go forward, with assurance that the desired objectives will be met, without the guidance of an established zoning plan. Specifically the purpose of a zoning plan is to define areas within the park in accordance with acceptable use and development. It would detail not only type and extent of acceptable use and development, but also acceptable means of access to each of the zoned areas. The extremes of a zoning plan would be a wilderness area on one hand, and a permanent townsite on the other, but either extreme would not necessarily be part of a zoning plan for every park. Without such a plan each succeeding administration will add to the already complicated development pattern. Lacking a zoning plan, eventually parks may find themselves without a suitable wilderness area, without lakes or valleys that are accessible only by foot, horse or canoe, or without other of the many qualities that are part of the reason for their establishment.

Essentially what is involved is a plan for land use within the purposes of each of the parks. It is assumed in such planning that, in the future, the pressure on the parks as a whole will be very great, as the population of Canada grows and especially as the demand for recreational use increases. It is therefore essential that recreational resource and recreational land use studies be carried out, in order that the lines of development for each park may make the optimum use of the land available within the limitations of the basic park purposes.

It is clear that zoning within a park should be based on certain priorities in preservation and use, i.e.,

- (i) outstanding park features must be preserved in their natural state for public benefit, education and enjoyment.
- (ii) areas adjacent to outstanding park features are to be preserved as part of the scene or reserved to facilitate public use and enjoyment of the feature.



## XIV - Financial

(iii) facilities for the convenience of visitors such as parking areas, rest rooms, picnic areas and campgrounds, etc. may be located near a feature but not so close as to detract from the natural feature or its setting.

(iv) in general, beaches and their backshores should be reserved for day use.

(v) Visitor Services Centers: areas containing accommodation such as motels, cabins, hotels, campgrounds, trailer parks, and stores, restaurants, service stations, etc. should be located in reasonably attractive surroundings where the services available will assist in enjoyment of the park. Such areas should not occupy or encroach upon outstanding natural features.

(vi) Residences for park staff: these should have a reasonably attractive area but they may not be sited on or near park features and attractions. Preferably the location should be inconspicuous and off the main stream of traffic.

(vii) Park Maintenance: compounds and other purely servicing establishments should be sited where the buildings and activities can be completely concealed.

#### Policy

A zoning plan for each park will be prepared in accordance with the statement of purpose for that park. Actually zoning is basic to the long-range plan for every park and forms an integral part of the long-range plan. No violations or exceptions whatsoever should be allowed to occur. The zoning plan should not be unchangeable, but changes will only be made after thorough study.

Financial policy affects park use, development and administration. In general the aspects of the subject that we are most concerned with here are subsidization, expenditure and revenue. Even this part is very complex. Unlike most commercial and many government operations, the National Parks system is complicated by values which cannot be measured in monetary terms. It is like a cultural institution within which economic units exist. The financial policies have long been a source of difficulty. The reasons for the various charges made, the extent to which the charges should cover costs, and the principles which should determine townsite administration, have not been analyzed as one integrated subject. Such an analysis, if made after consideration of all the facts, should assist greatly in reducing administrative work and public criticism. More important, it would have a significant effect on future park objectives, since financial policy can be used as an indirect control.

Theoretically financial policy could be based on two extremes:

(a) to determine policies on revenue and expenditure in relation to the economic value of the park system, or

(b) to regard the National Park system as a freely available public service.

The first basis is clearly not in accordance with park ideals. Furthermore, the economic value of a park, even if it could be determined, is not the real value. The intangible values are recognized as being more important and of course cannot be evaluated for use in any economic formula.

The second basis does meet the highest ideals of the National Parks. It suggests that the cost of administering and operating the system to the high standards adopted should not be related to the miscellaneous revenues received. This principle, although sound enough from the standpoint of our obligation to preserve the national heritage, is not entirely sound for the operation of visitor-use facilities. The thought that the general taxpayer should not be responsible for the full cost of special services and facilities which are demanded and used most extensively by local or regional visitors or by special categories of visitors must also be considered.

It seems clear that the proper basis for determining financial policy is close to (b) above, but must be tempered with judgment to avoid unfair subsidization of local residents and users of special facilities and services such as golf courses, pools, dock-

ing space for boats etc. The practices that have been followed do not conform to any established set of principles. They have created inequities and have not always been in the best interests of park objectives. The purpose of this appraisal will be to develop principles which will be fair to all.

#### Expenditure

Parks are a national asset established, improved and protected for the use and enjoyment of the present, as well as the future generations. Financial responsibility for this asset should therefore rest mainly with the taxpayer. The taxpayer however do not benefit equally from some categories of expenditure, which suggests a user responsibility. The three main expenditure categories will be commented on individually with regard to the responsibility of the user as compared with the general taxpayer.

*Capital Expenditures*, whether for a new installation or replacement of an old one, represent improvement of a public property, thus increasing its potential to provide enjoyment and benefits to Canadians. These expenditures therefore can be considered a legitimate charge to the taxpayer.

*Administrative Cost* is an inseparable part of the responsibility undertaken by the nation in establishing the park system. It represents part of the cost of protecting parks and making them available for use by present and future generations. This expenditure too is a legitimate charge to the nation as a whole.

*The Operation and Maintenance* category of expenditure does not lend itself to the same distinct application of responsibility as the other two. This category is more closely associated with and affected by visitor use. Not all taxpayers are in a position to benefit equally from parks or from specific facilities, and there is reason therefore to charge the user, according to the amount of use, for the benefits he receives from facilities provided by the nation. The determination of the division of responsibility between the user and the nation as a whole is complicated by the many types of operation and maintenance charges. The relationship of the facility or operation to the visitor, the effect of use on the operation and maintenance cost, and the ease of assessing and collecting a charge must all be considered.

A general analysis of the problem

first suggests two theoretical methods of approach:

(x) To apportion the responsibility for operation and maintenance costs between the user and the nation by an analysis of cost accounts, using judgment in the many cases where no clear cut separation is possible; then to regulate revenue from existing sources to balance the total expenditure for which the user is found to be responsible, or

(y) With no attempt to relate expenditure and revenue, to examine each facility or service individually and assess charges in relation to established economic values.

The first method would obviously be very difficult to apply. Charges to visitors (users) determined on this basis would be relatively high, sufficiently so to discourage use of the parks by many who are taxed for their upkeep. Any attempt to relate revenues to expenditures should be done with a full realization of the reasons for establishing the parks in the first place.

The second basis for considering the problem, accepts subsidization of the system as a general policy. It suggests that undue subsidization should be avoided by assessing charges for the facilities or services most directly associated with the user; these facilities would be assessed for charges on their individual merits rather than the general analysis referred to in (x).

This approach takes into account the reasons for the establishment of the National Park system. It rejects the principle that parks should be operated and developed as an economic unit; it suggests that extent and quality of development and visitor service be considered in relation to park ideals and purposes rather than economic considerations. If the nation is financially unable to administer and develop the system to meet its high ideals, then developments should be postponed rather than cheapened and made less effective.

#### Policy

1. Park development must be considered primarily on the basis of need and desirability in relation to park purposes. Economic considerations should affect only timing of the individual developments.

2. The basic financial policy for National Parks should be payment out of the general revenues, modified by charges for the purpose of:

- (i) administrative control
- (ii) effecting visitor realization of value
- (iii) requiring users of special facilities to pay a portion of costs

(iv) placing local residents in roughly the same economic position as if they lived in comparable communities outside the park.

3. Capital expenditures and administration of the park system should be charged to the nation as a whole.

#### Revenue

Under the present system the charges made fall into two general categories; those assessed directly against the visitor and those which are levied against residents and businesses.

(1) *Visitor charges* consist of transient motor licences, recreational fees (golf, tennis, lawn bowling, swimming pool etc.), camping fees and fishing licences or other miscellaneous permits.

*The transient motor licence* is a charge made on all motor vehicles entering a park. If the basis for determining charges described under (x) were employed to establish this entrance charge it would, under the present system, have to cover the cost of highway maintenance as well as all of the operation and maintenance costs for which it is not possible to assess direct charges. This, it was suggested earlier, would result in charges that would not, in effect, be consistent with the purposes for which the system was established.

Using basis (y) the charge would be determined by consideration of the individual circumstances. Unlike most charges made, the one for entering a park does not represent a definable service. It is not possible therefore to compare with similar charges outside the park. The question then must be considered on the basis of the effect of such a charge on the park and its visitors.

If there is reason for imposing a park entrance charge it must be for administrative control, and to cause the visitor to realize that the park is a special area to be wisely used and held in trust for future generations. The amount of the charge should be determined by judgment; high enough to effect realization of park value, yet not so high that visitor use would be restricted. This method of determining the fee for transient motor licences is anything but specific. It is nevertheless based on an important principle, i.e., entrance fees are not intended to cover specific expenditures.

*Recreational developments* (for example golf courses, tennis courts, swimming pools, overnight boat docking etc.) are the best example of facilities which provide un-

equal benefits to the taxpayer. These developments, which are costly to construct and maintain, are desired and used by special groups and therefore charges for their use should be imposed as a means of removing unfair subsidization.

It has been suggested earlier that all capital costs for park development be accepted as a responsibility of the nation. This principle is sound enough for general development but in the case of recreational (sports) facilities there is merit in assessing the individual facility by comparison with similar facilities outside the park. The charges thus determined should take quality into consideration and be tempered by the desire to avoid restriction of use. The averaged operation and maintenance costs of the particular facility for all of the parks, and the usual charges outside for comparable facilities, could be used as two points of reference.

*Camping Permit Fees:* It would be difficult to determine these by comparison with facilities outside parks. In general campgrounds will fall into two categories:

(i) Campgrounds with minimum services—These are campgrounds with no services other than a source of water, pit privies and a cooking area (possibly sheltered). There should be no charge at these campgrounds on the basis that such camping facilities are a minimum service (like a road) that should be freely available.

(ii) Serviced campgrounds—these are campgrounds with amenities such as piped water, sewage facilities, fully modern comfort stations, washrooms, showers, etc. Fees for this kind of camping should be charged by reason of the substantial cost of the additional services which are provided as a special convenience to those who want them.

*Fishing Licences* and miscellaneous permits cannot be related to similar licences outside the park, since charges based on this comparison may tend to restrict the activity. A high percentage of the visitors to a park stay only a short while which suggests a nominal charge only be made for activities such as fishing. These charges would be purely for the sake of control and information.

(2) *Charges to residents and businesses are those associated with year-round and seasonal townsites and the operation of businesses in parks.* These vary widely but can be grouped for the purpose of this analysis

into two general categories. The first category includes those Miscellaneous Licences and Permits issued for the purpose of administrative control such as building permits, permits for the installation of utilities, sand, stone, gravel or water permits, etc. The second category includes all of the Utility and Service Charges, Business Licences and Community Taxes (School and Hospital Taxes).

The first category needs no analysis. The type of permit mentioned is necessary for control and it is appropriate that a nominal charge be made to cover cost of issuance.

The second however embraces a very complex group of facilities and services which demand careful analysis for the determination of fair charges. Such an analysis is complicated by variations in park townsites and the quality of services and utilities, as well as whether the townsite is occupied the year round or only seasonally. Since the permanent townsites are the most involved as far as this subject is concerned they will be used as the basis of discussion.

At present the several types of charges levied against residences and businesses are not based on any one financial policy. Utilities such as power and telephone, supplied by private companies, are charged for on the basis of a fair profit return; water and sewer services are owned by the government and are charged for on a basis of a percentage of the real cost; many services such as streets, sidewalks, boulevards and street lighting are not charged for directly at all. Attempts have been made to calculate fair charges for some of the individual services but these attempts have not proven to be feasible due to the complexity of the division of responsibility between the local resident and the visitor. A land rental is charged for each lot in a townsite. It is not designed to cover any specific service and its amount is therefore arbitrary, varying in accordance usually with its size, quality and zoned use. Business licenses also are arbitrary charges depending on the type of business and are not determined on any financial basis. The system is complicated, difficult to administer and impossible to defend on the basis of real economic values.

Townsites represent a joint effort by the government and private enterprise to provide visitor services and suitable living conditions for personnel involved in providing services and administration. Subsidization of townsite facilities such as

water supply, sewage, streets, etc., is justified to the extent that they are required to accommodate the visitor load or for administrative needs generally. However the resident or businessman has no right to expect the federal taxpayer to provide him with free or subsidized services - he should expect to be in approximately the same economic position as a resident or businessman enjoying services of similar quality in towns outside the parks. The objective then is to place residents and businessmen on a par with people outside the park as far as financial responsibility for civic and municipal services is concerned. The general approach to the problem would be to assess residents and businesses approximately the same overall amount as they would pay for public services of equivalent standards in communities outside the park. The amount which a community, such as Banff or Jasper, should pay for civic services could be determined by an analysis of assessments in communities with comparable services outside the park, with adjustments for variations in conditions. This would provide a basis for levying assessments on properties within a park townsite. Application of the charges would have to be made carefully and, for businesses, in accordance with the type of business. It may, for example, be advisable to reduce charges for establishments such as accommodation, in order to promote investment in needed motels or cabins, which involve fairly large capital outlay with the disadvantage of a short season in which to secure an adequate return. This added freedom to adjust subsidization of businesses, depending on their importance to the park, would be an effective control of commercial growth.

Any attempt to reduce subsidization of park townsites (especially year-round townsites) to an amount that could be considered fair to the nation as a whole will no doubt be opposed on the grounds that local residents do not have representation. Certainly it would not be in the best interests of the park, or fair to the federal taxpayer, to allow local residents, through a municipal government, to control and decide upon the use of funds which are basically federal funds. There is no completely satisfactory solution to this problem; but there are ways of easing the difficulty, and giving the local residents some voice in matters relating essentially to residence, rather than to services or facilities for visitors.

### Policy

4. Operation and Maintenance costs should be divided between the user and the nation in accordance with the following:

- (i) An entrance charge should be made at all National Parks. The amount should not restrict use but should indicate a value.
- (ii) Charges for recreational facilities (golf courses, tennis courts, swimming pools, lawn bowling, etc.) are to be based, in a general way, on operation and maintenance costs and comparison with charges for similar facilities elsewhere, taking into account also the desire to encourage general use.
- (iii) Fees for serviced campgrounds and for modern trailer parks should be based on the same factors as in (ii).
- No fees should be charged for camping at campgrounds with minimum services.
- (iv) Charges for miscellaneous natural recreation such as fishing should be nominal for the purpose of control only.
- (v) Charges for miscellaneous permits required for administrative control should be nominal.
- (vi) As a general principle, it is considered that charges to residents and businesses for utilities, civic services, facilities and conveniences, should be made on the basis of comparison with charges for equivalent facilities in towns or cities in the region but outside of the park.

The determination of criteria for the establishment of individual National Parks must recognize two distinct national obligations:

- (a) To preserve the Canadian heritage.
- (b) To ensure this and future generations of Canadians the opportunity to use, enjoy, and benefit from the values of natural wilderness.

Both of these obligations may be satisfied in many cases by the same area. However this will not always be true, since a feature or area that should be preserved as part of our heritage does not always afford natural wilderness values. Features which represent a part of the national heritage should be chosen primarily for the characteristics which make them worthy of that function. Their potential to provide abundance of visitor use, and therefore location in relation to populated areas, should be a secondary consideration. The second obligation can be satisfied by areas having characteristics which are more general. These areas should of course represent the most interesting and significant from the visitor-use point of view; but since the value of parks established to satisfy obligation (b) above is related to the amount of use, benefit and enjoyment they provide, location is therefore an important consideration.

As a practical means of satisfying the regional needs for wilderness recreation and nature values there should be at least one National Park in each province. It is particularly desirable to acquire areas now in the Yukon and Northwest Territories and in other less settled parts of Canada. In these regions the land is still available, population will grow in the future, and transportation changes may well put them within reach of people in all parts of Canada. Generally speaking National Parks of a size and character that will provide these values should be located so that no one living in the populous areas of Canada is more than 300 miles (or one day's trip) from such a park.

In deciding upon an area for a National Park the potential commercial value of natural resources in the area is an important consideration. There is no formula that can be used to compare National Park values with commercial resource values. New parks should be chosen so as to avoid, as far as possible, serious conflict of interest with resource development. Once a park is established, its value to the nation as a heritage and its potential to supply healthful enjoyment to the Canadian people should ensure its preservation, subject only

to considerations of overriding national importance.

Of necessity, the definition of criteria as a guide to the establishment of new National Parks must be very general. The effect of the criteria in meeting the obligations as stated in the first paragraph will depend to some extent on methods or policies followed in acquiring new areas. Timing would have an effect on the quality of area acquired. If the acquisition of park areas is not planned many years ahead of need, the development of the system will be blocked or inferior areas will have to be accepted. The matter of initiative can also determine the quality or type of area that can or will be acquired. For the National Parks administration to wait for the provinces to offer areas for National Parks implies that we have no specific requirements other than that the land be donated free of encumbrances. On the other hand a planned system of National Parks would suggest that certain areas are desirable for inclusion in the system, either for their value as part of the national heritage, or to satisfy the need of wilderness areas in a particular part of the nation. To meet the obligations and objectives of the system it is therefore imperative that we take the initiative in selecting suitable areas and arranging to have them set aside as National Parks. This will require very close federal-provincial cooperation on a matter of national importance which is also of direct concern, interest and benefit to the individual provinces.

#### Policy

Based on the above approach, the following are established as criteria for a National Park:

1. To be considered as a potential National Park an area must be worthy of preservation. This means that it should:
  - (i) be an outstanding example of the best scenery in Canada, or
  - (ii) have unique scenic, geographical or geological features of national interest, or
  - (iii) have outstanding examples of flora and fauna of national interest, or
  - (iv) provide outstanding opportunities for enjoying appropriate non-urban forms of outdoor recreation amid superb surroundings.
2. Preferably and in accordance with its purpose, it should be large enough to support indigenous flora and fauna.
3. Depending on the size of the area and the purposes of the proposed park, it is usually desirable that the area or part of it

be suitable for recreational purposes and for accommodation or other visitor services.

4. It must be evident that the area is of sufficient value now or for the future to justify the expenditure required for preservation and development.

PART 5RESOURCE CONSERVATIONSection 5.3 - Immobilizing Equipment and DrugsPARTIE 5CONSERVATION DES RESSOURCESSection 5.3 - Matériel de contention et tranquillisants5.3.1 PURPOSE

To provide guidelines for the use of equipment and drugs for immobilizing animals.

5.3.2 GENERAL

1. The use of immobilizing equipment and drugs by National Parks staff has proven to be a useful management tool.
2. Extreme care and special techniques are necessary in immobilizing wildlife and handling immobilized animals if a very high mortality rate is to be avoided. Additionally, the drugs used can be fatal to any human accidentally receiving an injection. For these reasons it is essential that only personnel who have been specially trained be permitted to use or handle immobilizing drugs and equipment.
3. With its continued use by specially trained personnel, immobilization by drugs will contribute to wildlife management research, transplants, and control of problem animals.

5.3.1 OBJET

Etablir des principes directeurs concernant l'utilisation de matériel de contention et de tranquillisants pour immobiliser les animaux.

5.3.2 GÉNÉRALITÉS

1. L'utilisation de matériel de contention et de tranquillisants par le personnel des parcs nationaux s'est avérée un moyen pratique pour l'administration.
2. Vu le danger de provoquer une hausse du taux de mortalité, on doit procéder avec beaucoup de soin et employer des techniques spéciales pour immobiliser les animaux et les transporter. Il faut également se rappeler qu'un être humain recevant une injection par erreur pourrait en mourir. C'est pourquoi seuls les employés ayant subi un entraînement spécial devraient être autorisés à administrer ces tranquillisants.
3. L'administration par un personnel compétent et permanent, des drogues de cette nature, favorisera la recherche sur la conservation de la faune, tout en facilitant le déplacement et la surveillance des animaux dangereux.

Immobilizing equipment and drugs will be used in National Parks for approved wildlife management and research programs, but only by personnel qualified by special training in the use of immobilizing equipment and drugs, the safe and proper handling and transportation of immobilized animals, as well as special first aid training.

5.3.4 GUIDELINES

1. Immobilizing should not replace trapping but should be used when live trapping is impractical.
2. Qualified personnel authorized by the regional director should determine the conditions and timing under which an animal is to be immobilized.
3. In the interest of personnel safety, all immobilizing operations should be carried out by a team of not less than two trained personnel.
4. Since the drug effect time can vary, personnel engaged in immobilizing operations of dangerous animals should be accompanied by a warden armed with a rifle capable of destroying the animal if the need arises.
5. Each park should submit all immobilization data to the regional office for recording and analysis.

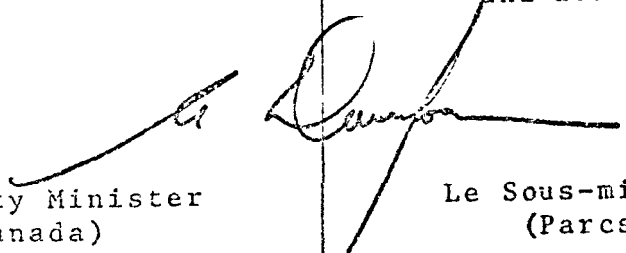
5.3.3 LIGNE DE CONDUITE

L'utilisation de matériel de contention et de tranquillisants dans les parcs nationaux sera autorisée pour des programmes approuvés de recherche et de conservation de la faune, mais l'exécution ou la surveillance des opérations liées à l'administration de tranquillisants ne sera confiée qu'à des personnes formées spécialement à cette fin et initiées au secourisme.

5.3.4 DIRECTIVES

1. L'emploi des tranquillisants ne doit pas remplacer le piégeage, sauf lorsque celui-ci se révèle peu pratique.
2. Le directeur régional nommera un agent compétent qui déterminera dans quelles conditions et à quel moment un animal pourra être immobilisé.
3. Pour la sécurité du personnel, toutes les opérations visant à immobiliser des animaux seront exécutées par une équipe d'au moins deux personnes compétentes.
4. Comme la rapidité du résultat peut varier, les employés chargés d'administrer des tranquillisants à des animaux dangereux seront toujours accompagnés d'un gardien armé d'un fusil afin de pouvoir abattre l'animal, advenant que la chose soit nécessaire.
5. Chaque parc doit faire tenir au bureau régional copie de ses données sur l'usage des tranquillisants, pour classement et étude.

6. Parks using immobilizing equipment and drugs should standardize equipment, drug mixture, and techniques to ensure uniform and exchangeable data between parks.
7. Immobilizing drugs used in the National Parks should be restricted to those which have been satisfactorily tested and which do not have an accumulative effect. Experiments to test the effects of drugs on wildlife should not be carried out in the National Parks.
8. Liaison with the Canadian Wildlife Service should be maintained in order to keep fully informed on new techniques and drugs. Personnel involved in immobilizing should have access to recent scientific publications on the subject.
9. Personnel involved in immobilizing operations should be made well aware of the lethal effects these drugs can have on humans, and that it is imperative that all safety precautions be practised and observed. Untrained personnel should not be allowed to handle immobilizing equipment and drugs, or immobilized animals.
6. En utilisant des tranquillisants et des drogues, on doit employer des techniques, des dosages et du matériel courants afin d'assurer l'uniformité des données et de permettre la comparaison entre les parcs.
7. On limitera l'usage de ces drogues à celles qui ont déjà été expérimentées avec succès et qui ne produisent pas d'effets cumulatifs. Les expériences pratiquées sur les animaux pour observer l'effet des drogues doivent se faire en dehors des parcs nationaux.
8. On maintiendra des liens constants avec le Service canadien de la faune, afin de se tenir au courant des nouvelles techniques et des nouvelles drogues. Le personnel qui est mêlé à ces opérations doit avoir libre accès aux documents récents sur ce sujet.
9. Le personnel affecté à l'administration des tranquillisants doit être bien renseigné sur la nocivité de ces drogues pour les humains, de manière à observer et à faire observer toutes les mesures de précaution. On refusera à ceux qui ne sont pas initiés, la permission de manipuler le matériel et les drogues, ou de toucher aux animaux tranquillisés.

  
Assistant Deputy Minister  
(Parks Canada)

Le Sous-min' t adjoint  
(Parcs Canada)

A.T. Davidson

## RESOURCE CONSERVATION

## CONSERVATION DES RESSOURCES

## Section 5.8 - SALT LICKS

## Section 5.8 - Terrains salifères

5.8.1 PURPOSE:

To provide guidelines on the use and management of natural and artificial salt licks in the National Parks.

5.8.2 BACKGROUND:

1. Salt is very attractive to many forms of wildlife. Places where it occurs naturally are frequented by these animals and are known as natural salt licks. Artificial salt licks have been used to attract game animals or cattle to certain areas.

## 2. In the National Parks:

- (a) Concessionnaires have, on occasion, been using artificial salt licks to attract animals to the vicinity of their establishments where they often became dependent upon handouts and artificial feeding. Such concentrations of animals are unnatural and facilitate infection with parasites and diseases. Therefore, artificial salt licks conflict with the purposes of the National Parks.

5.8.1 OBJET:

Fournir des directives relatives à l'utilisation et à la gestion des terrains salifères naturels et artificiels dans les parcs nationaux.

5.8.2 DONNÉES:

1. Le sel présente un attrait considérable pour un grand nombre d'animaux sauvages. Les lieux où il se présente à l'état naturel sont fréquentés par ces animaux et sont dénommés terrains salifères naturels. Les terrains salifères artificiels ont servi à attirer le gibier et le bétail vers certaines régions.

## 2. Dans les parcs nationaux:

- (a) Les concessionnaires ont parfois utilisé les salignons artificiels dans le but d'attirer les animaux vers leurs établissements; les animaux y sont devenus dépendants de l'homme et tributaires de la nourriture artificielle. De telles concentrations d'animaux ne sont pas naturelles; elles facilitent la contagion par les parasites et augmentent le risque de maladies. On peut donc dire que les terrains salifères artificiels desservent les buts des parcs nationaux.



(b) Salt is being used by wardens and trail riders to keep their horses from wandering off at night during camping trips. Wardens also use salt to keep their horses near their cabins. Sometimes salt blocks are left at one location for a long period of time and become, by neglect, artificial salt licks with the same detrimental effects on wildlife as outlined above.

(c) Artificial salt licks are sometimes used on a temporary basis for certain wildlife management projects that without salt licks would be difficult to complete. The hazards of habit-forming by maintaining such salt licks for extended periods of time are the same as with other artificial salt licks and must be avoided.

(d) Road salt used to control ice on highways is also attractive to wildlife regardless of the type of salt used. The resulting congregation of animals on or near highways is a public safety hazard and also endangers the

(b) Les gardiens et les cavaliers utilisent le sel afin d'empêcher que les chevaux ne s'écartent la nuit, lorsqu'ils vont camper. Les gardiens utilisent aussi le sel pour retenir les chevaux près des cabanes. Parfois, des salignons sont laissés en un lieu pendant une longue durée et, par suite de la négligence, ils donnent naissance à des terrains salifères artificiels qui exercent sur les animaux sauvages les mêmes effets néfastes que ceux qu'on vient de décrire.

(c) Les salignons artificiels servent parfois provisoirement à établir des contrôles de la faune difficiles à réaliser sans terrains salifères. Les risques de créer des habitudes en maintenant de tels terrains salifères pendant de longues périodes sont les mêmes qu'avec les autres terrains salifères artificiels et doivent être évités.

(d) Le sel utilisé pour empêcher la formation de glace sur les routes attire également les animaux sauvages, quel que soit le type de sel employé. Le rassemblement d'animaux qui en résulte sur les routes ou à proximité de

animals.

- (e) Natural salt licks are found in several National Parks. They are usually fed by small saline springs and cover much larger areas than artificial salt licks. The risk of infection is therefore much less than at artificial salt licks.

5.8.3 POLICY:

1. Natural salt licks in National Parks are accepted as part of the natural scene.
2. Artificial salt licks may not be used in the National Parks except as stipulated in the following guidelines.
3. The use of road salt is to be restricted to safety requirements and the search for a satisfactory replacement of road salt is to be expedited.

5.8.4 GUIDELINES:

1. Natural salt licks may not be modified except with the Director's approval.

celles-ci, constitue un danger public et met également les animaux en péril.

- (e) On trouve des terrains salifères dans plusieurs parcs nationaux. Ces terrains sont ordinairement alimentés par des sources salines et recouvrent de bien plus grandes superficies que les terrains salifères artificiels. Le risque de contagion est par conséquent moindre que dans le cas des terrains salifères artificiels.

5.8.3 DIRECTIVES:

1. Dans les parcs nationaux, on considère les terrains salifères comme partie intégrante de la nature.
2. On ne peut recourir à l'emploi de terrains salifères artificiels dans les parcs nationaux, sauf dans les cas stipulés par les règles données ci-dessous.
3. L'utilisation du sel sur les routes doit se limiter aux exigences de la sécurité et il faut accélérer la recherche d'un produit qui remplacerait le sel répandu sur les routes.

5.8.4 RÈGLES:

1. On ne peut modifier les terrains salifères naturels qu'avec l'approbation du directeur.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>2. Artificial salt licks may not be maintained on a permanent basis.</p> <p>3. Artificial salt licks may not be maintained by concessionaires.</p> <p>4. Trail riders on overnight trips may be permitted by the Superintendent to use portable salt licks for their horses while camping.</p> <p>5. Wardens on overnight camping patrol may use portable salt licks for their horses.</p> <p>6. Wardens may maintain salt licks to keep their horses near their cabins. They must be removed at the same time as the horses.</p> <p>7. The Regional Director may permit the temporary use of artificial salt licks for Wildlife management purposes. In such cases the Superintendent is to ensure the removal of the salt licks after completion of the project.</p> <p>8. Artificial salt licks may not be placed in direct contact with the ground.</p> | <p>2. Il n'est pas permis d'entretenir des terrains salifères artificiels permanents.</p> <p>3. Les concessionnaires n'ont pas le droit d'entretenir des terrains salifères artificiels.</p> <p>4. Le surintendant peut autoriser les cavaliers à utiliser des salignons portatifs destinés à leurs chevaux, lorsqu'ils campent au cours de leurs pérégrinations nocturnes.</p> <p>5. Les gardiens qui campent au cours de leurs patrouilles nocturnes peuvent utiliser des salignons portatifs destinés à leurs chevaux.</p> <p>6. Les gardiens peuvent utiliser des salignons afin de retenir leurs chevaux près de leurs cabanes. Ils doivent les enlever en même temps qu'ils emmènent les chevaux.</p> <p>7. Le directeur régional peut autoriser l'usage temporaire de terrains salifères artificiels pour le contrôle de la faune. En pareils cas, le surintendant doit se charger d'enlever les salignons après l'achèvement du projet.</p> <p>8. On ne peut pas placer les salignons artificiels en contact direct avec le sol.</p> |
|--|--|

RESOURCE CONSERVATIONCONSERVATION DES RESSOURCESSection 5.9 - Control of Animals  
Deemed Dangerous to  
Human Safety.Section 5.9 - Animaux jugés dangereux pour  
l'homme5.9 PURPOSE

To outline procedures to be taken when animals have been deemed dangerous in the National Parks operations and define the term "dangerous animal".

5.9 OBJET

Définir l'expression "animal dangereux" et préciser la manière de procéder lorsque de tels animaux se trouvent dans un parc national.

5.9.2 GENERAL

1. The Department's policy on wildlife and nature states that conflicts between wildlife and other park interests including human safety should be resolved if possible without the destruction of wildlife. As visitors gain access to the most remote areas of the National Parks, encounters with animals are bound to increase. Some of these encounters will be with animals which could, under certain circumstances, be dangerous.

2. Many kinds of animals found in the National Parks could be termed dangerous or potentially dangerous in varying degrees at varying times under varying circumstances. In some cases a porcupine is a dangerous animal. Large animals during the rutting season could present a danger to park visitors under certain conditions. However, these examples, as well as many more that could be cited, are natural conditions.

3. Following the intent of our policy we should not interfere by attempting to control animals that act in a natural way in their natural environment. As an example, if a visitor places himself between a female of any wild species and her young and as a result is injured, the animal should not be labelled a rogue and either destroyed or removed. However, if a diseased,

5.9.2 GENERALITES

1. La ligne de conduite du Ministère au sujet de la faune et de la nature précise que les incompatibilités entre la faune et d'autres éléments liés aux parcs, notamment la sécurité de l'homme, doivent être résolues, si possible, sans destruction de la première. Il est évident qu'au fur et à mesure que les visiteurs d'un parc national s'avancent dans les zones les plus reculées d'un tel lieu, les risques de rencontrer des animaux sauvages se font de plus en plus nombreux. Quelques-uns de ces animaux, peuvent être dangereux dans certaines circonstances.

2. Nombre d'espèces d'animaux que l'on trouve dans les parcs nationaux, peuvent être qualifiées de dangereuses ou de virtuellement dangereuses, à divers degrés, à divers moments et dans diverses circonstances. Ainsi, en certains cas, un porc-épic peut même être un animal dangereux. Pendant la saison du rut et dans certaines circonstances, certains gros animaux peuvent constituer un danger pour les visiteurs des parcs. Toutefois, ces cas, comme de nombreux autres que nous pourrions citer, sont fonction des conditions naturelles.

3. Selon l'esprit de notre ligne de conduite, nous ne devrions pas essayer d'intervenir lorsque des animaux se comportent normalement dans leur milieu naturel. Ainsi, si un visiteur se trouve entre la femelle et n'importe quelle espèce d'animaux sauvages et son petit et qu'il se fait attaquer, l'animal ne doit

jured or disabled animal becomes potentially dangerous to park visitors, this conflict must be resolved.

It is necessary to clarify a "dangerous Animal" in an operational sense, i.e., in the context when the National Parks administration will undertake direct control measures on wildlife in a National Park.

#### DEFINITIONS

1. In this section:

- a. "Naturally Dangerous Animal" means an animal in its natural, native environment that acts in a natural, predictable manner when faced with encroachment into its domain by man. Examples of these natural occurrences would include the animal parent's defence of its young, the belligerent animal in rut, etc.
- b. "Unnaturally Dangerous Animal" means an animal, due to unnatural causes or situations, that is hazardous or potentially hazardous to park visitors or residents.
- c. "Unnatural Causes or Situations" for the purpose of this directive means:
  - (1) disease, injury caused by any means, disability caused by old age, etc.
  - (2) an animal found in an artificial environment such as a high-use area (campground, townsite, etc.) that reacts or is likely to react in a dangerous manner and,

pas, pour autant, être traité de mauvais, ni être abattu ou déplacé. Toutefois, si un animal malade, blessé ou estropié devient dangereux pour les visiteurs d'un parc, des mesures doivent alors être prises.

4. Il est nécessaire de préciser ce que l'on entend par "animal dangereux" dans le contexte du fonctionnement d'un parc national, c'est-à-dire de définir les cas où l'administration d'un tel lieu devra prendre des mesures directes pour se déarrasser d'un animal.

#### 5. DEFINITIONS

1. Dans la présente section

- a. (animal naturellement dangereux) désigne un animal qui, dans son milieu naturel et d'origine, se comporte d'une manière prévisible lorsque l'homme empiète sur son domaine. Ces phénomènes naturels comprennent la protection des petits par les parents, l'humeur belliqueuse à la saison de rut, etc.
- b. (animal naturellement non dangereux) désigne un animal qui, en raison de causes ou de situations anormales, est dangereux ou peut l'être pour les visiteurs ou les habitants d'un parc;
- c. (cause ou situation anormale) comprend les cas suivants:
  - 1) maladie ou blessure causée de quelque manière, incapacité due à la vieillesse, etc.
  - 2) la présence d'un animal qui, dans un milieu aménagé, tel qu'une zone très fréquentée (terrain de camping, lotissement urbain, etc.), réagit ou est susceptible de réagir d'une manière dangereuse;

- (3) <sup>a</sup> untypical behaviour that poses a definite threat to human safety.

#### 5.9.4 POLICY

The control of naturally dangerous animals will be limited to making the visitor aware of areas or situations where predictable, natural actions of animals pose a potential danger to him. Unnaturally dangerous animals will be controlled in a way compatible with the National Parks policy on wildlife.

#### 5.9.5 GUIDELINES

1. Where naturally dangerous animals in a National Park pose a potential danger to people, management will be limited to ensuring, through park interpretation and information services, public awareness of potentially dangerous situations and the reasons why they exist.
2. Where an unnaturally dangerous animal is found to present a hazard to people, the animal will be removed and relocated by departmental employees as promptly and unobtrusively as possible.
3. Following the removal of the animal, the probable reasons why it was placed in this situation and required preventive measures should be documented.
4. When the removal of the animal is likely to cause undue hazards to departmental employees and park visitors and no other course of action is available, the animal will be destroyed. This guideline will also apply to animals found to be injured or disabled to the point where natural recovery is doubtful.

- 3) un comportement anormal qui présente un danger certain pour la sécurité de l'homme.

#### 5.9.4 LIGNE DE CONDUITE

Les mesures à prendre dans le cas des animaux naturellement dangereux consisteront uniquement à informer les visiteurs des zones ou des situations où ces animaux peuvent être dangereux. Pour ce qui est des animaux naturellement non dangereux, on s'en débarrassera d'une manière compatible avec la ligne de conduite concernant la faune des parcs nationaux.

#### 5.9.5 LIGNES DIRECTRICES

1. Lorsqu'il existe des animaux naturellement dangereux dans un parc national, l'administration de ce parc se contentera de s'assurer que, grâce aux services d'information d'animation du parc, le public est mis au courant de ce fait et qu'il en connaît les circonstances.
2. Lorsqu'un animal naturellement non dangereux présente un danger, des employés du Ministère captureront cet animal et le relâcheront ailleurs le plus rapidement et le plus discrètement possible.
3. A la suite du déplacement de cet animal, on fournira des explications au sujet des circonstances qui ont rendu l'animal dangereux et ont obligé à prendre des mesures préventives.
4. Lorsqu'il est probable que le déplacement de l'animal cause des risques indus pour les employés du Ministère ou les visiteurs du parc, et qu'aucune autre mesure n'est possible, l'animal sera abattu. La même ligne de conduite s'appliquera dans le cas des animaux blessés à un point tel que leur rétablissement soit douteux.

5. When the removal or destruction of an animal has been deemed necessary, established guidelines on Wildlife Management, such as "Immobilizing Equipment and Drugs", etc., will be followed and reports in accordance with Section 7 (3) of the National Park Game Regulations must be submitted (see also Section 5.3 of this manual).

5. Lorsqu'on estime qu'il est nécessaire de déplacer ou d'abattre un animal, on suivra les directives établies au sujet de la protection de la faune, par exemple en ce qui a trait au matériel et aux produits d'anesthésie; et on présentera des rapports conformément à l'article 7, paragraphe 3), du Règlement sur le gibier des parcs nationaux (voir aussi la section 5.3 du présent manuel).

## RESOURCE CONSERVATION

## Section 5.18 - Chemical Control of Pests

5.18.1 PURPOSE

To provide criteria for the use of chemicals for controlling pests within all areas of the National Parks.

5.18.2 GENERAL

1. The term "pest" is generally defined as a troublesome or destructive living organism that competes with man's consumptive exploration of nature or that causes human discomfort or constitutes a health hazard.

2. Because National Park objectives do not include consumptive uses of natural resources, but rather stress their preservation in a natural or near-natural state, the concept of "pest" is much narrower. Indeed, most animals and plants usually termed pests are an integral part of the original ecosystem and thus warrant specific preservation in a park.

3. For the purpose of this section, a pest in a National Park includes:

- a. any non-native organism because it has been introduced by man and, therefore is not part of the native flora and fauna of the Park;
- b. any native organism such as poison ivy, wasps, etc., that under specific conditions is found to seriously interfere with park objectives.

## CONSERVATION DES RESSOURCES

## Section 5.18 - Moyens chimiques de lutte contre les organismes nuisibles

5.18.1 BUT

Établir des critères d'utilisation des produits chimiques pour lutter contre les organismes nuisibles dans toutes les régions des parcs nationaux.

5.18.2 GÉNÉRALITÉS

1. L'expression "organisme nuisible" désigne de façon générale tout être vivant indésirable ou dangereux qui gêne l'exploration profitable de la nature par l'homme, incomode ce dernier ou menace sa santé.

2. Vu qu'on n'envisage aucune utilisation profitable des richesses naturelles des parcs nationaux, mais qu'on essaie plutôt de les conserver intactes, la notion d'organismes nuisibles y est beaucoup moins étendue. En effet, la plupart des animaux et plantes habituellement qualifiés de nuisibles font ici l'objet d'efforts de conservation particuliers, du fait qu'il représentent des éléments constitutifs de l'écosystème initial.

3. Aux fins de la présente directive, on comptera au nombre des organismes nuisibles dans un parc national:

- a. tout organisme allogène introduit par l'homme et ne faisant pas partie, de ce fait, de la flore ou de la faune indigènes du parc;
- b. tout organisme indigène tel que l'herbe à la puce ou les guêpes, dont la présence est jugée dans certains cas nettement préjudiciable à la destination du parc.



4. The wide use of pesticides in National Parks has been of concern for some time. BRM 42-1, Vol. 1, Section 3.11 (old NPS-OPD No. 10, dated 5/6/69) laid down guidelines for mosquito abatement and at the same time discontinued the use of DDT and other persistent pesticides which were not enumerated. Since then, generalized applications and other extensive uses of a wide range of chemical products have accentuated the problem of a lack of direction. This section will not negate Section 3.11 of Volume 1.

### 5.18.3 POLICY

Subject to the following guidelines, chemical compounds will be used only when control is deemed absolutely necessary in order to preserve park values and when they are the least damaging to the ecosystem of all the available pest control methods.

### 5.18.4 GUIDELINES

1. No chemical will be used when the superintendent has reason for belief that:

- a) environmental quality will be significantly affected, or

4. Depuis quelque temps, on s'inquiète de l'usage intensif des pesticides dans les parcs nationaux. Les dispositions de la section 3.11 du premier volume du document BRM 42-1 (anciennement NPS. OPD No. 10, en date du 5/6/69) ont établi les principes applicables à la déoustication, tout en interdisant à l'avenir l'utilisation du DDT et d'autres pesticides à effet prolongé, non cités dans le document en question. Le manque de directives dans ce domaine a été rendu encore plus sensible, depuis, par les pulvérisations intensives et autres emplois massifs d'une vaste gamme de produits chimiques. Les dispositions de la présente section ne remplacent pas celles de la section 3.11 susmentionnée, relatives à la déoustication.

### 5.18.3 PRINCIPES

Sous réserve des dispositions ci-après, on n'utilisera des composés chimiques que lorsqu'on jugera que la lutte contre des organismes nuisibles est absolument indispensable à la protection des richesses du parc et lorsque, parmi toutes les techniques de lutte utilisables, cette méthode sera la moins dommageable à l'écosystème.

### 5.18.4 LIGNES DE CONDUITE

1. On n'emploiera aucun produit chimique lorsque le surintendant du parc aura des raisons de croire que:

- a) les caractéristiques naturelles s'en trouveraient gravement modifiées ou que

- b) hazards exist that will unnecessarily threaten plants, fish, wildlife, their food chains, habitats, other components of the natural environment and human safety.

2. Chemical control will be considered only after all mechanical or other non-chemical means of control have been assessed and found inadequate or unpractical. All efforts should be made to integrate chemical and non-chemical means. Convenience and moderate economy is not an acceptable justification for the use of chemicals;

3. When chemical control is necessary:

- a) no pesticide will be used that contains chemicals that have been shown to persist beyond their intended purpose in a way that is ecologically undesirable, see Appendix 5.18-1. Included here are such chemicals as:

- (1) organochlorine insecticides (Dieldrin, chlordane, etc.);
- (2) mercury based compounds or those of other heavy metal bases (mercuril, merfuson, etc.);
- (3) soil sterilants of all types;

- b) cette méthode présente des dangers inutiles pour la flore et la faune terrestre et aquatique, ses chaînes alimentaires, les biotopes en cause et d'autres éléments relatifs au milieu naturel ou à la sécurité de l'homme.

2. On n'envisagera l'emploi de produits chimiques qu'après avoir passé en revue tous les autres moyens de lutte, notamment mécaniques, et les avoir jugés inadaptés ou malcommodes. On s'efforcera de combiner les moyens chimiques et les autres. La commodité d'emploi ou une économie modique ne suffisent pas à justifier l'utilisation de produits chimiques.

3. Lorsqu'on devra employer des produits chimiques:

- a) on n'utilisera aucun pesticide contenant des produits chimiques dont on a prouvé que l'action se prolongeait bien au-delà et ce, d'une façon nuisible du point de vue écologique (voir annexe 5.21-1). Ces produits chimiques comprennent notamment:

- (1) les insecticides organochloré (dieldrine et chlordane, entre autres);
- (2) les composés à base de mercure ou d'autres métaux lourds (mercuril et merfuson, entre autres);
- (3) les produits de stérilisation du sol, de toute catégorie.

b) non-selective or broad spectrum chemicals should be avoided;

c) the chemical will be applied at the absolute minimum rate which will ensure effective control;

4. Chemical applications will be carried out only after a potentially serious infestation has been positively identified. Preventative applications should be discontinued except as necessary for golf course management. Caution is necessary when applying pesticides near roughs and water courses to avoid direct application to these areas."

5. Those chemicals that are prohibited and those that are acceptable chemicals (prepared by the Canadian Wildlife Service) are listed in Appendices 5.13-1 and -2.

6. Before using a chemical not mentioned as being acceptable or should uncertainties arise regarding control of a specific pest, the following steps will be taken:

a) Advice will be sought by the regional director from specialists in the Canadian Department of Agriculture, the Chemical Control Research Institute, Department of Environment or an equivalent provincial agency and recommendations obtained;

b) on évitera l'emploi de produits chimiques non sélectifs ou à l'usage spectre;

c) on n'emploiera ces produits chimiques qu'à la dose minimale permettant l'effet désiré.

4. "On ne pulvérisera de produits chimiques qu'après avoir acquis la certitude qu'il y a un danger grave d'infestation. On cessera toute pulvérisation préventive, sauf lorsque l'entretien des terrains de golf l'exige. La prudence s'impose lorsqu'on pulvérise les insecticides dans le voisinage des terrains accidentés et des cours d'eau afin d'éviter une pulvérisation directe sur ces surfaces."

5. Les annexes 5.13-1 et 2 énumèrent les produits chimiques qui sont interdits et ceux qui sont acceptables (d'après une sélection du Service canadien de la faune).

6. Avant d'utiliser un produit chimique ne figurant pas sur la liste des produits acceptables ou en cas de doute quant aux moyens les mieux adaptés à la lutte contre un organisme nuisible particulier, on effectuera les démarches suivantes:

a) Le directeur régional intéressé s'adressera aux spécialistes du ministère fédéral de l'Agriculture, de celui de l'Environnement de l'Institut de recherches sur la lutte chimique ou d'un organisme provincial analogue, en vue d'en obtenir des recommandations.

b) These recommendations will then be forwarded to the Toxic Chemical Section (T.C.S.), Canadian Wildlife Service for review by side-effects biologists, who will recommend to the Director their acceptance or rejection;

c) "Only after ratification by the Director of National and Historic Parks Branch will the chemical be used. In practice, this will lead to a fairly short list covering routine pesticide requirements and a special review of non-routine situations."

7. When locating and designing campground and picnic areas, consideration should be given to biting insect hazards as an integral part of site and land-scaping evaluation. Locations requiring insect control should be avoided.

8. An extensive public relations program should be carried on to encourage visitors to utilize personal insect repellents and to explain the ecological consequences of indiscriminate uses of pesticides.

b) Ces recommandations seront transmises à la Section des produits chimiques toxiques (S.P.C.T.) relevant du Service canadien de la faune; les biologistes chargés d'étudier les effets secondaires en feront un examen et proposeront au directeur de les accepter ou de les refuser;

c) Le produit chimique ne pourra être utilisé qu'après autorisation accordée par le directeur des parcs nationaux et historiques. En pratique, il en résultera une assez courte liste des exigences habituelles relatives aux insecticides, ainsi qu'une énumération des situations inhabituelles.

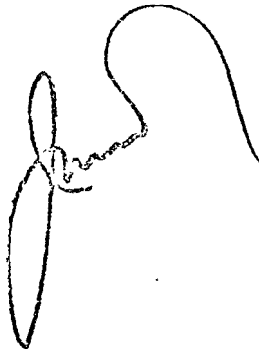
7. Lorsqu'on étudiera l'emplacement et la conception des terrains de camping ou de pique-nique, on tiendra compte des dangers présentés par les insectes piqueurs, partie intégrante de l'estimation des possibilités du site et de l'aménagement paysagiste. On évitera donc d'aménager de tels terrains aux endroits nécessitant une lutte contre les insectes.

8. On devrait lancer une vaste opération de relations publiques à l'intention des visiteurs, afin de les pousser à utiliser des insectifuges et de leur expliquer les conséquences néfastes, au point de vue écologique, d'une utilisation inconsidérée des insecticides.

9. With the exception of biting fly abatement operations, large scale ground applications, i.e., of more than five (5) acres, require the Director's approval.

10. If aerial application is proposed, approval of the Director and review by the Interdepartmental Committee on Forest Spray Operations (ICFSO) are required.

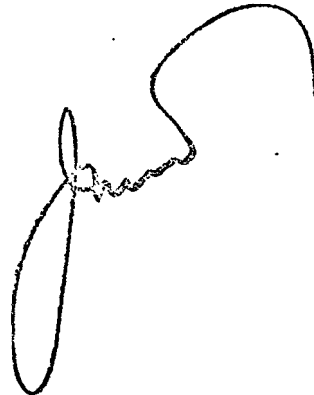
11. A list of chemicals approved for use in National Parks should be prepared and issued to all retail outlets in the parks, with strong recommendations that only these chemicals be promoted.



9. Les pulvérisations massives d'insecticides, par exemple sur plus de (5) acres, devront être autorisées par le directeur régional, sauf dans le cas des opérations de lutte contre les insectes piqueurs.

10. On n'effectuera aucune pulvérisation aérienne d'insecticides sans autorisation du directeur et étude du cas par le Comité inter-ministériel d'étude des pulvérisations en forêt.

11. On établira une liste des produits chimiques dont l'utilisation dans les parcs nationaux est approuvée, liste destinée à être diffusée à tous les points de vente au détail dans les parcs, l'utilisation des seuls produits mentionnés étant vivement recommandée.



LIST OF PEST CONTROL CHEMICALS WHOSE USE  
IN NATIONAL AND HISTORIC PARKS IS  
PROHIBITED

<u>Common Name</u>	<u>Chemical Name</u>	<u>Use</u>	<u>Remarks</u>
Aldrin		I	
Arcenical compounds	various compounds	I, H	
Baygon (Propoxur)	2-isopropoxyphenyl N-methylcarbamate	I	
Baytex (Fenthion)	dimethyl methylthiotolyl phosphorothioate	I	
BHC	benzene hexachloride	I	
Cadmium compounds	cadmium chloride, cadmium carbonate, cadmium sebacate	F	
Chlordane		I	
Chlorfluorene (Maintain CF 125)	methyl-2-chloro-9-hydroxy- fluorene-(9)-carboxylate		Plant growth retardant
Dieldrin (DDEO)		I	
DT	dichlorodiphenyl trichloro- ethane	I	
Dursban (Dowco 179)	diethyl trichloropyridyl phosphorothioate	I	
Endosulfan (Thiodan)		I	
Endrin		I	
Heptachlor		I	
Lindane	gamma-BHC	I	
Maleic hydrazide (Slo-Gro)		I	Plant growth retardant
Mercury compounds	various compounds	F, H	
Methoxychlor		I	
Picloran (Tordon)	4-amino-3,5,6-trichloro- picolinic acid	I	

(Français au verso)

<u>Common Name</u>	<u>Chemical Name</u>	<u>Use</u>	<u>Remarks</u>
Plant growth retardants	various compounds		See also chlorfluoreno- and maleic hydrazide
Soil sterilants	various compounds	H	A compound used to completely remove vegetation
Strychnine		Rodenti- cide	
2,4,5-T	2,4,5-trichlorophenoxy- acetic acid	H	
Toxarhene		I	

Legend: I - insecticide  
 F - fungicide  
 H - herbicide

(Prepared by Canadian Wildlife Service for National and Historic  
 Parks Branch - May, 1971)

303

I = INSECTICIDE  
 F = FUNGICIDE  
 H = HERBICIDE

Appendix 5.18-2  
 Page 1

LIST OF PEST CONTROL CHEMICALS WHOSE USE  
 IN NATIONAL AND HISTORIC PARKS IS  
 ACCEPTABLE

1. Pesticides are registered by individual use, and application rates are set for each use. Therefore, a pesticide cannot be applied;

- (a) at rates higher than those registered for the particular control problem being considered; or
- (b) to control pests for which its use is not registered.

2. Instructions regarding registered use and rates usually appear on the container or instruction sheet accompanying the container; complete information on use and rates for every registered pest control compound is available from the Canada Department of Agriculture.

<u>Common Name</u>	<u>Chemical Name</u>	<u>Use</u>	<u>Remarks</u>
Abate	O,O,O',O',-Tetramethyl O, O' thioldi-p-phenylene phosphorothioate	I	To control mosquito and blackfly larvae
fenoxyl (Dupont Tersan (1991))	Methyl linylylcarbamoyl 2-benzimidazole carbamate	F	
Chloroneb (Tersan SP)	1,4-dichloro-2,5- dimethoxybenzene	F	
Daconil	tetrachloro isophatalonitrile	F	
2,4-D	2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid	H	Restricted use: on lawns only
Malathion	O,O-Dimethyl S-1, 2-di (ethoxycarbamyl) ethyl phosphorodithioate	I	Not to be used to control biting fly larvae
Nicotine	L-1methyl-2-(3'-pyridyl) pyrrolidine	I	Also animal repellent
Personal insect repellents	various compounds	I	
Potassium permanganate		Vermi- cide	For sport control of earthworms on golf greens

(Français au verso)



<u>Common Name</u>	<u>Chemical Name</u>	<u>Use</u>	<u>Remarks</u>
Pyrethrum	extract of dried flowers of <u>Chrysanthemum cinerifolium</u>	I	
Rotenone (Derris)	extract of <u>Derris</u> or <u>Lonchocarpus</u>	I	
Sulphur, sulphide sulphur (lime sulphur)		I, F	

LISTE DES PRODUITS CHIMIQUES DONT L'USAGE EST ACCEPTABLE  
DANS LES PARCS NATIONAUX ET LES LIEUX HISTORIQUES

Les pesticides sont enregistrés pour des usages particuliers et les quantités à utiliser sont définies pour chacun de ces usages. En conséquence, un pesticide ne peut être employé

- (a) en quantités supérieures à celles qui sont prescrites pour l'usage considéré; ou
- (b) pour des usages qui n'ont pas été déclarés lors de l'enregistrement.

Les instructions concernant les usages et les quantités ayant fait l'objet de déclaration figurent habituellement sur l'étiquette ou le prospectus accompagnant le produit; des renseignements complets sur chaque pesticide enregistré sont fournis par le Ministère de l'Agriculture du Canada.

<u>Nom usuel</u>	<u>Nom chimique</u>	<u>Usage</u>	<u>Remarques</u>
...e	sulfure de bis-(thiophosphate de 0,0-diméthyle et de 0-p-phénylène)	I	pour lutter contre les larves de moustiques et de mouches noires
...moyl (Dunont Tersan (1991))	Methyl linthylcarbamoyle 2-benzimidazole carbamate	F	
...ronène (Tersan SP)	1,4-dichloro-2,5, diméthoxybenzène	F	
...nail	tétrachloro isophatalonitrile	F	
...D	acide 2,4-dichlorophénoxy-acétique	H	Usage restreint: pelouse seulement
...thion	dithiophosphate de 0,0-diméthyle et de S-1,2-di (éthoxycarbamy) éthyle	I	Ne pas utiliser contre les larves d'insectes piqueurs
...tine	L-1-méthyl-2-(3'-pyridyl) pyrrolidine	I	Egalement utilisé pour éloigner les animaux
...ectifuges	noms variables		

(English on other side)

PART 5

RESOURCE CONSERVATION

Section 5.19 The Control and Disposal of Surplus Animals

5.19.1 PURPOSE

To provide guidelines for the control and disposal of surplus animals, excluding bison.

5.19.2 BACKGROUND

In the past, it has been the practice to slaughter or capture animals without full knowledge of the needs of the system as a whole. Meat and by-products have been donated; live animals provided to zoos and game farms and used for restocking of deficient areas and carcasses provided for scientific, educational and display purposes.

5.19.3 DEFINITIONS

1. Surplus animals means mammals which are numerically excessive to the natural habitat carrying capacity but does not include normal cyclical population peaks.
2. Control means the action which will be taken to maintain a population in a state of natural balance with the habitat carrying capacity.
3. Disposal means the process of reduction of a population and could include live capture or slaughter.

5.19.4 POLICY

Control of mammal populations will be based on scientific studies which conclusively demonstrate an urgent managerial need. Disposal will be by live capture wherever possible and slaughter only as a last resort.

306

PARTIE 5

CONSERVATION DES RESSOURCES

Section 5.19 Contrôle et élimination des animaux excédentaires

5.19.1 OBJET

Etablissement de lignes de conduite pour le contrôle et l'élimination des animaux excédentaires, excepté le bison.

5.19.2 HISTORIQUE

Par le passé, on a abattu ou capturé les animaux sans une connaissance suffisante des besoins du système dans son ensemble. On a distribué la viande et ses dérivés; les animaux vivants ont été donnés aux jardins zoologiques et aux fermes d'élevage et utilisés pour le repeuplement de certaines régions. Les carcasses ont été utilisées à des fins scientifiques et pédagogiques ou pour fins d'exposition.

5.19.3 DEFINITIONS

1. L'expression "animaux excédentaires" désigne les mammifères qui sont en surnombre par rapport à la capacité de leur habitat naturel, exception faite des pointes normales des cycles de population.
2. Le terme "contrôle" désigne les dispositions que l'on prend pour maintenir une population dans un état d'équilibre naturel avec la capacité de l'habitat.
3. Le terme "élimination" signifie le processus de réduction d'une population par capture d'animaux vivants ou abattage.

5.19.4 PRINCIPES DIRECTEURS

Le contrôle des populations de mammifères sera fondé sur des études scientifiques qui démontrent de façon concluante le besoin urgent d'une intervention. L'élimination se fera par capture vivante aussi souvent que possible et par abattage en dernier ressort seulement.

1. The production, storage and distribution of meat and by-products will be phased out and will not be produced solely for distribution or sale.
2. Canadian Wildlife Service or any other agency's expertise will be sought whenever controls are indicated in a surplus animal situation and as deemed necessary by the Director of the Region concerned.
3. When the C.W.S. or other expertise is requested, they should be provided with positive objectives in line with National Parks policy and aims. Use of Park Resource Conservation staff should be stressed.
4. Each park will produce map overlays identifying areas of significant or special animal habitat, such as summer and winter range, migration routes, mating and denning areas and other locations deemed important in the natural life cycle of animals.
5. Established animal habitat areas should be listed and priorities set for determination of type and quantity of animal species which exist in each area.
6. Areas should be identified which are depleted or devoid of animal life and classified as to their potential as natural habitat areas.
7. Upon determination of current populations within individual habitat areas, research should be undertaken into the animal history of the area to discover what species were indigenous; what species have disappeared from the area and the reasons for the changes; what species are rare or endangered and what

1. On mettra fin progressivement à la production, l'entreposage et la distribution de la viande et de ses dérivés; on n'en produira plus uniquement pour la distribution ou la vente.
2. On exigera une expertise du Service canadien de la faune ou de tout autre organisme chaque fois que des contrôles seront indiqués dans des cas de surplus d'animaux et quand le directeur de la région concernée le jugera utile.
3. Lorsqu'une expertise sera demandée au Service canadien de la faune ou à un autre organisme, il faudra lui fournir des objectifs précis qui concordent avec les principes directeurs et les buts des parcs nationaux. On devra alors les inciter à utiliser le personnel de la Conservation des ressources des parcs.
4. Chaque parc présentera des calques de cartes pour délimiter des régions qui constituent des habitats typiques ou spéciaux des animaux, tels que les zones d'été et d'hiver, les itinéraires des migrations, les zones d'accouplement, celles où ils font leur tanière et les autres endroits qui sont jugés importants dans le cycle naturel de la vie des animaux.
5. On devra faire un relevé des zones établies des habitats des animaux et établir un ordre de priorité pour la détermination du type et de la quantité d'espèces animales qui existent dans chaque zone.
6. Les zones dépeuplées ou dépourvues de vie animale devront être identifiées et classées selon leur potentiel en tant que zones d'habitat naturel.
7. Après avoir déterminé les populations actuelles de chaque zone d'habitat, on devra entreprendre une recherche sur l'histoire de la vie animale dans cette zone de façon à savoir quelles sont les espèces indigènes; quelles sont les espèces qui ont disparu de la zone et les causes de cette disparition; quelles sont les espèces rares ou menacées et

management or other control measures<sup>308</sup> should be recommended.

8. In some cases, hunting pressure on adjoining Provincial lands disrupts the natural migration of animals out of the Parks. Provincial authorities should be approached, on a Regional basis, to adjust hunting boundaries and hunting seasons to encourage migration where this natural course has been disrupted and where this would be in the best interests of the Park.
9. A notation of surplus or deficient populations should be prepared by each Park and submitted to the appropriate Region.
10. Each Director should make comparisons of the needs or surpluses within their Region and initiate any park to park transfers which they deem appropriate. Copies of reports and transfers should be forwarded to Program Headquarters for information.
11. Program Headquarters should review all reports and recommend to Regional Directors any further transplants within the total system which may be feasible.
12. Each Director should be aware of all government, public and accredited agencies or institutions within their Region which may be recipient of surplus animals and should inform Program Headquarters accordingly.
13. This information shall be distributed by Program Headquarters to all Regions so that direct contacts may be made with clients when surplus animals, not accommodated by guideline 10, are available.
14. All requests for specimens received from foreign countries will be referred to Program Headquarters for decision.

quelles mesures de gestion ou de contrôle devraient être recommandées.

8. Dans certains cas, la chasse sur les terres provinciales attenantes gêne la migration naturelle des animaux. Il faudrait donc demander, à l'échelon régional, aux autorités provinciales de réviser les limites et les saisons de chasse de façon à favoriser la migration lorsque cet itinéraire naturel a été interrompu et lorsque cette mesure est dans l'intérêt du parc.
9. Chaque parc procédera à un inventaire de son stock animal et en enverra une copie à l'administration régionale.
10. Il incombera à chaque directeur de faire des comparaisons entre les besoins ou excédents de sa région et d'effectuer les transferts d'un parc à un autre qu'il jugera appropriés. On devra faire parvenir les rapports des dénombrements et transferts à l'administration centrale du programme.
11. L'administration centrale du programme utilisera tous les rapports et pourra recommander aux directeurs régionaux tout autre transfert réalisable dans l'ensemble du réseau.
12. Chaque directeur régional devrait se familiariser avec toutes les institutions ou organismes publics et attirés, susceptibles de recevoir les animaux excédentaires. Il devrait en informer, au besoin, l'administration centrale du Programme de la conservation.
13. L'administration centrale du programme fera parvenir tous les renseignements aux bureaux régionaux, pour faciliter les contacts directs avec les clients, lorsque le sort des animaux excédentaires ne pourra être réglé par la ligne de conduite 10.
14. Toutes les demandes de spécimens en provenance de l'étranger doivent être transmises à l'administration centrale du Programme, où une décision sera prise.

- Where animals are donated to domestic or foreign government agencies, universities or other public bodies, they will be made available live at designated pick-up points with operational costs being charged to the receiving agency.
16. Sales should be made to accredited game farms, private zoos and other organizations for the purpose of display or game herds and such animals will be made available live at designated pick-up points at bids above an established upset price.
17. Surplus animals for which no demand can be found, or diseased animals will be slaughtered on a selective basis ensuring well-balanced natural herd results and their carcasses disposed of by means of burial or consumption, i.e., natural scavenger consumption, natural decomposition, burial or chemical disposal. Chemical disposal shall be on the recommendation and under the supervision of qualified persons.
18. All approved requests for meat and/or animal by-products where this involves a reasonable volume will be met by means of live animals, the disposal of which will rest in the hands of the receiving party who must utilize the facilities of government-approved abattoirs.
19. When meat is available for disposal, priority will be given to requests from Indian Bands.
20. All capturing, herding and killing of animals for control purposes will be carried out by Resource Conservation personnel.
21. All equipment for capturing, herding and transporting of animals should be reviewed continually to ensure that the most appropriate, modern
15. Si l'on fait don de ces animaux à des organismes de l'Etat, à des universités ou à tout autre établissement public du Canada ou de l'étranger, ils devront être livrés vivants à des endroits désignés, tous les frais étant à la charge de l'organisme receveur.
16. On pourra vendre des animaux à des fermes d'élevage accréditées, à des zoos privés et à d'autres organisations dont le but est d'élever des animaux ou de les montrer; ces animaux seront livrés vivants à des endroits désignés et vendus aux enchères à un tarif supérieur au prix pré-établi.
17. Les animaux excédentaires qui ne pourront être vendus et les animaux atteints de maladies seront abattus selon les critères de sélection assurant un équilibre naturel des troupeaux, et leurs dépouilles seront enterrées ou détruites, c'est-à-dire livrées aux animaux nécrophages, à la décomposition naturelle, enterrées ou brûlées par des produits chimiques. La destruction chimique devra être effectuée sous contrôle et conformément aux conseils de personnes qualifiées.
18. Toutes les demandes approuvées de viandes ou de dérivés des animaux ou les deux à la fois, seront satisfaites chaque fois qu'il s'agira d'une quantité raisonnable. Elle consistera en animaux vivants dont l'abattage sera à la charge de l'acheteur, qui devra utiliser les services des abattoirs approuvés par le gouvernement.
19. Lorsque l'on dispose de viande, on accordera la priorité aux demandes présentées par des bandes indiennes.
20. Toutes les captures, les rassemblements et les abattages d'animaux à des fins de contrôle devront être faits par le personnel de la Conservation des ressources.
21. Il faudra réviser continuellement tout le matériel utilisé pour la capture, le rassemblement et le transport des animaux afin de s'assurer que les

## RESOURCE CONSERVATION

## Section 5.20 - Issuance of Permits to Collect Specimens

5.20.1 PURPOSE

To provide guidelines for the issuance of permits to collect specimens in National Parks and to state the conditions under which the permits may be issued. This section does not apply to the granting of collection permits to any individual, company or enterprise whose occupation, business or purpose is the commercial exploitation of natural resources.

5.20.2 GENERAL

1. The General Regulations under the National Parks Act authorize the Director to issue permits to collect flowers, shrubs and plants (no. 11) and to give written permission to collect rocks, minerals, fossils or other objects of natural curiosity or interest (No. 13). The Game Regulations empower the Director to authorize the taking of game (i.e. wild mammals, amphibians, reptiles and wild birds and any or every part of them) for scientific purposes (No. 7 (1) (a) except migratory birds).
2. The Migratory Birds Convention Act states that only the federal government authorities responsible for the application of this Act may issue permits for collection of migratory birds, their eggs, their nests or any parts thereof. Thus, the Director may issue permits to collect migratory birds in a National Park only after a permit has been obtained from the authorities responsible for the application of the Migratory Birds Convention Act.

310

## CONSERVATION DES RESSOURCES

## Section 5.20 - Emission de permis de cueillette ou prise de spécimens

5.20.1 BUT

Etablir des directives et des conditions concernant l'émission de permis de cueillette ou de prise de spécimens dans les parcs nationaux. La présente section ne s'applique pas à l'émission de permis de cueillette à des personnes, sociétés ou entreprises qui font l'exploitation commerciale des ressources naturelles.

5.20.2 GÉNÉRALITÉS

1. Le Règlement général établi en vertu de la Loi sur les parcs nationaux autorise le directeur à émettre des permis pour cueillir des fleurs, arbustes et plantes (n° 11) et à donner par écrit la permission de ramasser des pierres, minéraux, fossiles ou tout autre objet naturel suscitant la curiosité ou l'intérêt (n° 13). Le Règlement sur le gibier permet au directeur d'autoriser la capture du gibier (c'est-à-dire mammifères, amphibiens, reptiles et oiseaux sauvages, complets ou partiels) à des fins scientifiques (n° 7 (1) (a) à l'exception des oiseaux migrateurs).
2. La Loi sur la Convention concernant les oiseaux migrateurs stipule que seules les autorités fédérales responsables de l'application de cette loi peuvent délivrer des permis pour la prise d'oiseaux migrateurs, de leurs oeufs, de leurs nids ou de l'une quelconque de leurs parties. Le directeur ne peut donc délivrer un permis de capture d'oiseaux migrateurs applicable dans un parc national qu'après la présentation d'un permis délivré par les

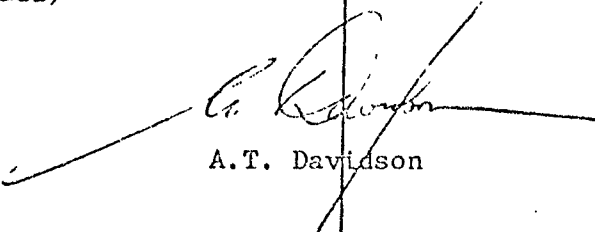
and effective means are available to each park from their own resources or a central pool.

311

parcs bénéficient des moyens les plus appropriés, les plus modernes et les plus efficaces, soit dans les parcs mêmes ou dans un dépôt central.

Assistant Deputy Minister  
(Parks Canada)

Le Sous-ministre adjoint.  
(Parcs Canada)



A.T. Davidson



autorités responsables de l'application de la Loi sur la Convention concernant les oiseaux migrateurs.

3. Previously, all applications for collecting permits have been referred to headquarters and permits have been issued by the Director. Correspondence with the applicant has been necessary in many cases to obtain the detailed information required, to ensure that the applicant qualifies and to determine from scientific experts that the applicant's project is valid and that results will be useful.
4. The conditions under which a permit is issued will be found in Appendix 5.20-1. An example of a permit is found in Appendix 5.20-2.

#### 5.20.3 POLICY

Region Directors will now assess, approve or reject applications and issue permits to collect specimens.

#### 5.20.4 GUIDELINES

1. Requests for permits from any individual, company or enterprise whose occupation, business or purpose is the commercial exploitation of natural resources will be referred to Program Headquarters for consideration.
2. Frequently, a student will apply, naming his university as sponsor. It has been found advisable to insist that the university apply on behalf of the student. The request must be signed by the pertinent university department head. If a final report is not submitted to the Region Director, the department head will be notified and no further permits will be issued to the students under that department head, until

3. Auparavant, toutes les demandes de permis de cueillette devaient être envoyées au bureau central et les permis étaient émis par le directeur. Il était souvent nécessaire de communiquer avec le candidat pour obtenir les informations permettant de s'assurer qu'il était admissible à l'obtention d'un permis et de faire évaluer le projet et les résultats par des spécialistes.

4. Les conditions attachées à l'émission d'un permis sont exposées en détail à l'annexe 5.20-1. L'annexe 5.20-2 contient un modèle de permis de cueillette ou de prise de spécimens.

#### 5.20.3 LIGNE DE CONDUITE

Il incombera désormais aux directeurs régionaux d'évaluer, d'approuver ou de rejeter les demandes et d'émettre les permis de cueillette ou de prise de spécimens.

#### 5.20.4 DIRECTIVES

1. Les demandes de permis provenant de personnes, de sociétés ou entreprises faisant l'exploitation commerciale de ressources naturelles, seront transmises pour étude à l'administration centrale du programme.
2. Fréquemment, une demande est soumise par un étudiant parrainé par une université. Il convient d'insister afin que ce soit l'université qui soumette cette demande au nom de l'étudiant. Cette demande devra être signée par le chef compétent du département de l'université. Si aucun rapport final n'est remis au directeur régional, on en avisera le chef du département et aucun autre permis ne pourra être émis par la suite aux étudiants qui relèvent

all due reports have been received. An effort should be made to establish, with those universities that regularly request permits to collect, a contact who will co-ordinate permit requests and ensure that reports are submitted on time.

3. The conditions under which the permit is issued, see Appendix 5.20-1 will be printed on the back of the permit in English and in French.
4. The permit will contain the information and authority detailed in Appendix 5.20-2. When signed, the original will be sent to the park superintendent and the applicant notified that his permit has been granted and must be obtained at the park superintendent's office before collections are undertaken.
5. A separate permit will be issued for each Park in which collecting will be effected.
6. Prior to the issuance of a permit to conduct archaeological research and excavations and the collection of specimens, the National Historic Parks and Sites Branch in Ottawa must be consulted and recommendations obtained.
7. Permits will not be issued until an acceptable outline of the proposed research program justifying the permit has been received from the applicant (see Appendices 5.20-3, 5.20-4) nor will permits authorizing collections be issued to a former permittee until all the conditions listed in Appendix 5.20-1 have been met to the satisfaction of the

du chef de ce département, tant que tous les rapports en question n'auront pas été reçus. On s'efforcera d'établir des relations avec les universités qui demandent régulièrement des permis de cueillette ou de prise de spécimens afin d'assurer la coordination des demandes de permis et de veiller à ce que les rapports soient reçus à temps.

3. Les conditions en vertu desquelles les permis ont été émis (Annexe 5.20-1) seront imprimées en français et en anglais à l'endos du permis.
4. Le permis imprimé en anglais et en français contiendra tous les renseignements voulus et portera la signature des autorités (voir annexe 5.20-2). Après avoir fait parvenir l'original au surintendant du parc, on avisera le candidat que le permis lui a été accordé et qu'il doit se le procurer au bureau du surintendant du parc avant d'entreprendre ses travaux de cueillette ou de prise de spécimens.
5. Si la cueillette ou la prise de spécimens doit s'effectuer dans plusieurs parcs, le candidat doit se procurer un permis pour chaque parc.
6. Les permis de recherches ou fouilles archéologiques ou de cueillette ou de prise de spécimens ne seront accordés qu'après consultation et recommandation de la Direction des parcs et des lieux historiques nationaux à Ottawa.
7. Aucun permis ne sera émis avant que le candidat n'ait soumis un résumé acceptable de son projet de recherche (voir annexes 5.20-3, 5.20-4) et, dans le cas d'un ancien permis, aucun renouvellement ne sera accordé à un ancien détenteur de permis tant que celui-ci n'aura pas rempli toutes les conditions qui figurent à l'annexe 5.20-1, à la satisfaction

Region Director.

8. No research or collection of specimens other than for recognized practical park or national purposes should be carried on in a National Park, if suitable areas for its conduct can be found elsewhere.
9. Permits authorizing collection of plants are subject to a restriction forbidding the collection under any circumstances of species included in the appended list of specially protected plants. These lists will be updated periodically by the addition or deletion of species to be protected. The proposed additions or deletions will be submitted by the Parks through the Regional Offices.
10. In the situation where a researcher has been engaged under contract by Parks Canada to carry out a specific study, a permit to collect required specimens will be issued by the originator of the contract, signed by the Region Director and attached to the contract. Copies of the permit will be immediately forwarded to the appropriate responsibility centres.
11. Parks Canada staff collecting in a National Park will require a permit to collect and must abide by the conditions listed in Appendix 5.20-1. The Superintendent may issue permits for collection by his staff.
12. A regional inventory of collections made in the National Parks should be completed and updated as necessary to avoid duplication of collection efforts.

314

du directeur régional.

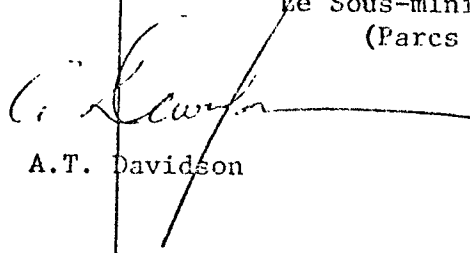
8. Aucune forme de recherche, de cueillette ou de prise de spécimens qui ne s'inscrit pas dans le cadre des objectifs nationaux ou qui ne sert pas aux fins pratiques reconnues du parc, ne devra être effectuée dans un parc national s'il existe ailleurs des régions propices à ce genre de travaux.
9. Tout permis autorisant la cueillette de plantes est sujet aux restrictions relatives au prélèvement d'espèces qui figurent dans les listes de plantes protégées ci-annexées. Ces listes seront périodiquement mises à jour par l'adjonction ou le retrait d'espèces à protéger. Les adjonctions ou retraits proposés seront remis par les dirigeants des parcs par l'entremise des bureaux régionaux.
10. Dans le cas d'un chercheur dont Parcs Canada a retenu les services par contrat pour effectuer une recherche précise, un permis de cueillette ou de prise de spécimens nécessaires sera émis par l'auteur du contrat, signé par le directeur régional et joint audit contrat. Les doubles du permis devront être envoyés immédiatement aux centres de décision concernés.
11. Le personnel de Parcs Canada qui cueille ou prélève des spécimens dans un parc national devra posséder un permis de cueillette ou de prise de spécimens et se conformer aux conditions inscrites à l'annexe 5.20-1. Le surintendant peut émettre des permis de cueillette ou de prise de spécimens à son personnel.
12. On dressera, et mettra à jour au besoin, un inventaire régional des spécimens cueillis ou pris dans les parcs nationaux afin d'éviter toute duplication inutile.

13. The form letter (Appendix 5.20-5) including a copy of the conditions governing the issuance of the permit to collect (Appendix 5.20-1), the Project Description Form and the Guide to the Project Description Form (Appendices 5.20-3, 5.20-4) will be sent to the applicant.

13. On fera parvenir au candidat la lettre circulaire (annexe 5.20-5) accompagnée d'un double des conditions régissant l'émission du permis de cueillette et de prise de spécimens (annexe 5.20-1), la formule de description de projet et le guide de cette formule (annexes 5.20-3, 5.20-4).

Assistant Deputy Minister  
(Parks Canada)

Le Sous-ministre adjoint  
(Parcs Canada)

  
A.T. Davidson

Conditions Under Which This Permit  
To Collect is Issued

- 1) All specimens collected under authority of this permit remain the property of the Crown (Canada) and are considered on loan to the permittee.
- 2) This permit along with all specimens collected must be presented to the Superintendent for review before they are removed from the Park. The Region Director shall have the right to repossess or retain any specimen collected by the permittee if he considers such action is in the public interest.
- 3) Specimens shall not be offered for sale or trade.
- 4) Specimens shall not be transferred without written notice to the Region Director.
- 5) In view of National Parks concepts, permittees shall use discretion in their collecting activities.
- 6) Any damage resulting from activities of the permittee shall be repaired promptly by the permittee to the satisfaction of the Superintendent.
- 7) When vertebrate fossils or evidence of occupation by past human cultures are found, they should be left in place until inspected by a Parks Canada representative. Full details and, if possible, photographs regarding exact location should be given to the Superintendent.
- 8) This permit is subject to restriction(s) forbidding the collection, under any circumstances, of any specimen(s) appearing in the list(s) appended to this permit. (Applicable only if list attached).
- 9) The permittee will furnish the Region Director within 30 days of the expiry date of the permit with a detailed list of specimens collected including their number and location, a statement explaining their disposition and copies of the final report covering the study outlined in the Project Description Form. Even though specimens may not have been collected, copies of a short report must be submitted to the Region Director. All such reports will be in a scientific format including purpose, scope, methods, results, discussion. If the final report cannot be submitted within this time, then an interim progress report is required and a statement indicating when the final report may be expected. Three copies of all the above must be submitted.
- 10) If the collection is to be used in the formulation of a thesis, the permittee is required to submit a copy of the thesis to the Region Director and be willing to supply extra copies at cost.

Conditions attachées à l'émission du présent  
permis de cueillette et de prise de spécimens

- 1) Tous les spécimens recueillis en vertu du présent permis demeurent la propriété de la Couronne (Canada), celle-ci les laissant à titre de prêt au détenteur du permis.
- 2) Avant de quitter le parc, le détenteur du permis devra présenter son permis, tout en montrant au surintendant les spécimens recueillis. Le directeur régional aura le droit de saisir ou de retenir tout spécimen recueilli par le détenteur du permis, s'il juge que cela est dans l'intérêt du public.
- 3) Les spécimens ne feront pas l'objet de vente ou de troc.
- 4) Les spécimens ne seront pas cédés à qui que ce soit sans l'avis écrit du directeur régional.
- 5) Etant donné le caractère particulier des parcs nationaux, les détenteurs de permis devront faire preuve de discrétion au sujet de leurs travaux de prélèvement de spécimens.
- 6) Le détenteur de permis sera tenu de réparer sans délai et ce, à la satisfaction du surintendant du parc, toute détérioration résultant de son travail de cueillette ou de prise de spécimens.
- 7) Dans les cas de découvertes de fossiles de vertébrés ou vestiges d'anciennes cultures humaines, on devra les laisser sur place jusqu'à ce qu'un représentant de Parcs Canada les ait examinés. On fournira au surintendant du parc un compte rendu détaillé du leur emplacement, accompagné autant que possible de photographies.
- 8) Le présent permis est accordé sous réserve des restrictions pouvant aller jusqu'à l'interdiction absolue de prélever l'un ou l'autre des spécimens mentionnés dans la liste accompagnant le permis. (Cette condition ne s'applique que dans les cas où la liste est jointe au permis).
- 9) Le détenteur du permis est tenu de présenter au directeur régional, dans les 30 jours qui suivent la date à laquelle son permis prend fin, une liste détaillée des spécimens recueillis, leur nombre et l'emplacement, une déclaration précisant l'usage qui en a été fait, ainsi que des exemplaires du rapport final portant sur l'étude décrite dans la formule de description de projet. Même si l'on n'a pas recueilli de spécimens, on devra présenter au directeur régional les doubles d'un court rapport. Tous ces rapports auront la présentation d'un rapport scientifique et porteront sur le but, l'objectif, les méthodes, les résultats et comprendront une discussion. Si le rapport final ne peut être présenté à temps, il faudra alors rédiger un rapport provisoire et présenter une déclaration indiquant quand le rapport final pourra être prêt. On devra présenter tous les documents susmentionnés en triple exemplaire.

- 11) At the discretion of the Region Director, the applicant may be required to furnish to the Minister a bond in the sum of \$300.00 before a permit to collect will be issued.
- 12) The expiry date for all permits will be December 31 of the year of issue, unless sooner suspended or revoked.
- 13) Permits are not transferable and shall include the names of all authorized party members. Party members must have a copy of the permit in their possession when collecting in a National Park.
- 14) If requested by a park warden or naturalist, the permittee will identify himself and show his permit to collect.
- 15) Except in special cases approved by the Superintendent, the use of fixed or rotary wing aircraft for study purposes, camping in places other than public campgrounds and motor travel on roads other than those open to the public, will not be permitted.
- 16) The Superintendent may restrict the scope of this permit by reason of the conditions prevailing in the Park at the time.
- 17) This permit is subject to the restriction that, if migratory birds, their eggs, nests, or any parts thereof are involved, another permit must have been obtained previously from the federal government authorities responsible for the application of the Migratory Birds Convention Act. The original, or a good facsimile, of the permit to collect migratory birds, as issued by the agency responsible for the application of the Migratory Birds Convention Act, must be presented when applying for a permit to collect migratory birds within a National Park.

Note: Failure to comply with National Park Regulations and/or the conditions of this permit will constitute grounds to cancel the permit or to refuse to issue future permits.

- 10) Si les spécimens recueillis doivent servir à la rédaction d'une thèse, le détenteur du permis devra remettre un exemplaire de la thèse au directeur régional et consentir à fournir des exemplaires supplémentaires au prix coûtant.
- 11) A la discrétion du directeur régional, le candidat pourra être tenu de fournir au Ministre un cautionnement de \$300.00 avant qu'un permis de cueillette ne lui soit émis.
- 12) Tous les permis prendront fin le 31 décembre de l'année de l'émission, à moins d'annulation ou de suspension.
- 13) Les permis sont incessibles et doivent contenir les noms de tous les membres du groupe autorisé. Les membres d'un groupe doivent avoir en leur possession un exemplaire du permis lorsqu'ils font de la cueillette ou des prélèvements dans un parc national.
- 14) Sur demande d'un gardien ou naturaliste de parc, le détenteur du permis devra s'identifier et produire son permis de cueillette.
- 15) Sauf dans les cas spéciaux approuvés par le surintendant, on ne permettra pas d'utiliser, dans le cadre de l'étude, des aéronefs à voilure fixe ou mobile, de camper dans des endroits autres que les terrains de camping publics et de voyager en véhicule automobile sur les routes autres que celles qui sont ouvertes au public.
- 16) Si les conditions régnant dans le parc l'exigent, le surintendant peut restreindre l'extension du présent permis.
- 17) Le présent permis ne sera valide, s'il s'agit de la prise d'oiseaux migrateurs, de leurs oeufs, de leurs nids ou de l'une quelconque de leurs parties, que si l'on a obtenu auparavant un autre permis délivré par les autorités fédérales responsables de l'application de la Loi sur la Convention concernant les oiseaux migrateurs. Lorsque l'on demande un permis en vue de capturer des oiseaux migrateurs dans un parc national, il faut donc présenter l'original ou un fac-similé acceptable du permis de capture d'oiseaux migrateurs délivré par l'organisme responsable de l'application de la loi en question.

Note: Tout manquement aux règlements sur les parcs nationaux ou aux conditions du présent permis justifiera l'annulation du permis ou le refus d'un nouveau permis.



PERMIT NO. \_\_\_\_\_

320

PERMIT FORM

DEPARTMENT OF INDIAN AND NORTHERN AFFAIRS  
PARKS CANADA PROGRAM  
PERMIT TO COLLECT

UNDER THE NATIONAL PARKS ACT THIS PERMIT IS GRANTED TO \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

AND ASSISTANT \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

TO COLLECT \_\_\_\_\_ (LODGEPOLE PINE SEEDS)

AT \_\_\_\_\_ (JASPER NATIONAL PARK, IN THE ABC LAKE)

AREA

THIS PERMIT EXPIRES \_\_\_\_\_ (DECEMBER 31, 1974)

UNLESS SOONER SUSPENDED OR REVOKED.

ISSUED AT \_\_\_\_\_ (WESTERN REGIONAL OFFICE CALGARY)

ON

THE (11th) DAY OF (JUNE 1974).

\_\_\_\_\_  
REGION DIRECTOR

I HAVE READ THE CONDITIONS UNDER WHICH THIS PERMIT TO COLLECT IS ISSUED AND AGREE TO COMPLY WITH ALL THE CONDITIONS STATED THEREIN. I REALIZE THAT FAILURE TO DO SO WILL RESULT IN THE CANCELLATION OF THE PERMIT AND REFUSAL OF FUTURE REQUESTS FOR PERMITS TO COLLECT.

DATE \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
(JOHN DOE)  
PERMITTEE

SUPERINTENDENT STAMP AND INITIALS

NOT VALID UNLESS STAMPED AND INITIALED BY PARK SUPERINTENDENT

OCT 31 1974

PERMIS N° \_\_\_\_\_

MINISTÈRE DES AFFAIRES INDIENNES ET DU NORD  
PROGRAMME DE PARCS CANADA  
PERMIS DE CUEILLETTE ET DE PRISE DE SPÉCIMENS

EN VERTU DE LA LOI SUR LES PARCS NATIONAUX, LE PRÉSENT PERMIS EST ACCORDÉ

A \_\_\_\_\_

ET À SES ADJOINT(S) \_\_\_\_\_

AFIN DE RECUEILLIR DES \_\_\_\_\_ (GRAINES DE PIN DE MURRAY)

DANS LA RÉGION \_\_\_\_\_ (DU LAC ABC DANS LE PARC NATIONAL JASPER)

LE PRÉSENT PERMIS PREND FIN \_\_\_\_\_ (LE 31 DÉCEMBRE 1974)

À MOINS D'ANNULATION OU DE SUSPENSION.

ÉMIS À \_\_\_\_\_ (BUREAU RÉGIONAL DE LA RÉGION DE L'OUEST, À CALGARY)

LE \_\_\_\_\_ (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (JUIN 1974)

\_\_\_\_\_  
DIRECTEUR RÉGIONAL

J'AI LU LES CONDITIONS EN VERTU DESQUELLES LE PRÉSENT PERMIS DE CUEILLETTE ET DE PRISE M'EST ÉMIS ET JE M'ENGAGE À LES RESPECTER. JE SAIS QUE L'INOBSERVATION DE CES CONDITIONS ENTRAÎNERA L'ANNULATION DU PERMIS ET LE REFUS DE TOUTE NOUVELLE DEMANDE DE PERMIS DE CUEILLETTE OU DE PRISE DE SPÉCIMENS

DATE \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
(JOHN DOE)  
DÉTENTEUR DU PERMIS

SCEAU ET INITIALES DU SURINTENDANT

POUR ÊTRE VALABLE, LE PRÉSENT PERMIS DEVRA PORTER LE SCEAU ET LES INITIALES DU SURINTENDANT DU PARC

Project Description Form

Permittee -  
Subject Area -  
Permit No. -

Please complete the form below and  
send to \_\_\_\_\_

PLEASE TYPE OR PRINT      BE CONCISE

I      TITLE OF PROJECT

\_\_\_\_\_

II     SUBJECT DEFINITION AND SELECTION

A      SCOPE

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

B      OBJECTIVE

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

C      HYPOTHESIS

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

D      JUSTIFICATION

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Formulaire de description du projet

Détenteur du permis  
Région choisie  
Permis n°

Veillez remplir le formulaire suivant et le  
faire parvenir à \_\_\_\_\_

DACTYLOGRAPHIEZ OU ÉCRIVEZ EN CARACTÈRES D'IMPRIMERIE      SOYEZ CONCIS

I      TITRE DU PROJET

\_\_\_\_\_

II      DÉFINITION ET CHOIX DE SUJET

A      LIMITES

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

B      OBJECTIFS

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

C      HYPOTHÈSE

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

D      RAISONS

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

OCT 31 1974

III STUDY APPROACH AND SITUATION

A PAST COLLECTION EXPERIENCE

---



---



---



---



---

B ELEMENTS OF STUDY

---



---



---



---



---

C RESEARCH PROCEDURE(S)

---



---



---



---



---

D TYPE, NUMBER AND SIZE OR QUANTITY OF SPECIMENS TO BE REMOVED  
WHEN APPLICABLE

---



---



---

E DISPOSITION OF SPECIMENS

---



---

III MÉTHODE ET DOMAINE DE L'ÉTUDE

A EXPÉRIENCE PASSÉE DE CUEILLETTE OU DE PRISE DE SPÉCIMENS

---

---

---

---

---

---

B ÉLÉMENTS DE L'ÉTUDE

---

---

---

---

---

---

C MÉTHODES DE RECHERCHE

---

---

---

---

---

---

D GENRE, NOMBRE, DIMENSION OU QUANTITÉ DES SPÉCIMENS À RECUEILLIR  
(S'IL Y A LIEU)

---

---

---

---

E UTILISATION DES SPÉCIMENS

---

---

---

IV TIMING

A PROPOSED INITIATION DATE

\_\_\_\_\_

B DURATION

\_\_\_\_\_

V PARTICULARS

A NAME OF PERMITTEE \_\_\_\_\_

ADDRESS \_\_\_\_\_

TELEPHONE NO. \_\_\_\_\_

B NAMES OF OTHER PARTY MEMBERS

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

C SPONSOR OR SPONSORING AGENCY

\_\_\_\_\_

D APPROVAL

\_\_\_\_\_

E SPECIFIC LOCATION OF REQUESTED COLLECTION AREA

\_\_\_\_\_

F HAVE YOU PREVIOUSLY APPLIED FOR A PERMIT TO COLLECT IN A NATIONAL PARK?

IF YES, YEAR \_\_\_\_\_

AREA \_\_\_\_\_

SUBJECT \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
SIGNATURE OF APPLICANT

\_\_\_\_\_  
SIGNATURE OF UNIVERSITY  
DEPARTMENT HEAD

IV CALENDRIER

A DATE PRÉVUE DU DÉBUT DE L'ÉTUDE

B DURÉE

V RENSEIGNEMENTS PARTICULIERS

A NOM DU DÉTENTEUR DU PERMIS

ADRESSE

N° DE TÉLÉPHONE

B NOM DES AUTRES MEMBRES DU GROUPE

C PERSONNE OU ORGANISME QUI PARRAINE L'ÉTUDE

D APPROUVÉ PAR

E EMPLACEMENT PRÉCIS DE LA RÉGION CHOISIE POUR LA CUEILLETTE OU LE PRÉLÈVEMENT

F AVEZ-VOUS DÉJÀ DEMANDÉ UN PERMIS DE CUEILLETTE OU DE PRISE DANS UN PARC NATIONAL?

DANS L'AFFIRMATIVE, ANNÉE \_\_\_\_\_

RÉGION \_\_\_\_\_

SUJET \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
CANDIDAT

34E/34F

\_\_\_\_\_  
CHEF DU DÉPARTEMENT DE  
L'UNIVERSITÉ (s'il y a lieu)

OCT 3 1974



## GUIDE TO PROJECT DESCRIPTION FORM

II SUBJECT DEFINITION AND SELECTION

- (A) SCOPE: A brief statement of the subject and/or problem and the context in which it exists;
- (B) OBJECTIVE: A precise statement of the purposes and goals of the study;
- (C) HYPOTHESIS: Major hypothesis compatible with the objectives;
- (D) JUSTIFICATION: State the reasons for the necessity of this collection. Include such things as the possible implications, potential benefit and application. Can the research and collection be carried on outside National Parks?

III STUDY APPROACH AND SITUATION

- (A) PAST COLLECTION EXPERIENCE: A summary of past related work experiences and work in progress (including year, area and subject);
- (B) ELEMENTS OF STUDY: Components and subtopics to be studied;
- (C) RESEARCH PROCEDURE(S): Designs and method to be used, with specifications for each element or component.

IV TIMING

- (B) DURATION: State if this collection will be incorporated into a long term or short term research project and approximate termination date.

V PARTICULARS

- (D) State if the research project has been approved and by whom.

GUIDE POUR FACILITER LA RÉDACTION DE LA  
DESCRIPTION DU PROJET

II DÉFINITION ET CHOIX DU SUJET

- (A) LIMITES: Un exposé succinct sur le sujet, les problèmes et le contexte dans lequel il se situe;
- (B) OBJECTIFS: Donner les buts et objectifs précis de l'étude;
- (C) HYPOTHÈSE: L'hypothèse principale qui correspond aux objectifs;
- (D) RAISONS: Donner les raisons qui justifient la cueillette ou le prélèvement, notamment les conséquences possibles, les avantages éventuels et l'utilisation. Cette recherche et cette cueillette ou prise pourrait-elle se faire à l'extérieur des parcs nationaux?

III MÉTHODE ET DOMAINE DE L'ÉTUDE

- (A) EXPÉRIENCE PASSÉE DE CUEILLETTE OU DE PRÉLÈVEMENT: Résumer les expériences passées dans un travail connexe et le travail en cours (donner l'année, la région et le sujet);
- (B) ÉLÉMENTS DE L'ÉTUDE: Les composantes et les sujets subsidiaires qui seront étudiés;
- (C) MÉTHODES DE RECHERCHE: Plan et méthodes utilisés, accompagnés des précisions pour chaque élément ou composante.

IV CALENDRIER

- (B) DURÉE: Indiquer si cette cueillette ou prise fera partie d'un projet de recherche à long terme ou à court terme et donner la date approximative à laquelle le travail sera terminé.

V RENSEIGNEMENTS PARTICULIERS

- (D) Indiquer si le projet de recherche a été approuvé et par qui.

## Form Letter

Dear :

Before issuing you a permit to collect in a National Park, we will require more information about your project.

Attached is a copy of the conditions governing the issuance of a permit to collect. If you agree to comply with these conditions, please complete the Project Description Form using the Guide to the Project Description Form and return it to the following address:

You will be notified shortly whether or not your application for a permit to collect has been accepted and where you can pick up your permit.

You should also note that applicants must be sponsored by a recognized institution. If you are a university student, your request for a permit to collect must be signed by your department head.

Yours sincerely,

Region Director,  
Parks Canada.

Attach.

## Lettre-circulaire

Madame  
Mademoiselle  
Monsieur

Avant de vous délivrer un permis de cueillette et de prélèvement dans un parc national, il nous faudra obtenir d'autres renseignements sur votre projet.

Vous trouverez ci-joint copie des conditions régissant la délivrance des permis de cueillette et de prélèvement. Si vous vous engagez à respecter ces conditions, nous vous demandons de remplir la formule de description du projet à l'aide du guide pour en faciliter la rédaction, et de la faire parvenir à l'adresse suivante:

Nous vous aviserons, dans le plus bref délai possible, de notre décision quant à votre demande de permis de cueillette et de prélèvement, et s'il y a lieu, de l'endroit où vous pourrez vous procurer ce permis.

Nous tenons également à vous signaler que les candidats doivent être parrainés par un établissement reconnu. Si vous êtes étudiant, votre demande de permis de cueillette et de prélèvement devra en plus être signée par votre chef de département.

Madame

Veuillez agréer, Mademoiselle, l'expression de mes sentiments distingués.

Monsieur

Le Directeur régional,  
Parcs Canada

Pièces jointes

PART 5

RESOURCE CONSERVATION

Section 5.21 - Reintroduction of  
Native Animal  
Species

5.21.1 PURPOSE

To define the conditions applicable to the reintroduction of Native Animal Species which were previously present but now absent in the national parks.

5.21.2 GENERAL

1. No direct reference is made to the reintroduction of animals into the national parks in the National Parks Policy Statement. However, Section II (3) states: "It is part of National Parks purpose to maintain the quality and beauty of wildlife in National Parks, i.e., to maintain healthy populations of native animals in balance with their environment." This statement clearly recognizes and supports the perpetuation of native species of animals within the National Parks.

2. The Policy also clearly recognizes the importance of suitable habitat, as it states: "National Park planning should give full consideration to character, size, shape and location of park areas in order to provide for,

- (1) year-round ecological requirements for the indigenous animal species, especially those with migratory habits and..."

332

PARTIE 5

CONSERVATION DES RESSOURCES  
NATURELLES

Section 5.21 - Réintroduction  
d'espèces d'animaux  
indigènes

5.21.1 OBJET

Préciser les conditions à respecter lors de la réintroduction, dans un parc national, d'espèces animales indigènes actuellement absentes de leur ancien habitat naturel.

5.21.2 GENERAL

1. Dans l'exposé de la Politique des parcs nationaux, on ne fait aucune mention de la réintroduction des animaux dans les parcs nationaux. Toutefois, à l'article trois de la Section deux, il est dit, en substance, que l'un des objectifs des parcs nationaux consiste à préserver la qualité et la beauté de leur faune sauvage, ce qui revient à maintenir en bonne santé toute une population d'animaux indigènes adaptés à leur milieu. Cette déclaration reconnaît nettement et pose sans équivoque la nécessité de perpétuer les espèces animales indigènes dans les parcs nationaux.

2. Le document admet clairement l'importance d'un habitat convenable quand il ajoute que la planification des parcs nationaux doit tenir compte du caractère, de la superficie, de la forme et de la situation des zones de parcs, de façon à prévoir:

- i) les besoins écologiques des espèces animales indigènes, en particulier de celles qui ont des habitudes migratrices.

3. Precedent for the reintroduction of wildlife species has been established in several national parks. In 1917 elk were released into Banff National Park and bison have been established in several western parks. More recently woodland caribou have been released in Cape Breton Highlands National Park in hopes of re-establishing caribou herds in this area.

4. As the introduction and reintroduction of fish in national parks is covered in Section 5.7 - Fish Management, the term animal, for the purpose of this section, will exclude fish.

#### 5.21.3 DEFINITIONS

1. In this section:

- a. Native Animal Species are species which formerly were naturally established in the park, i.e., indigenous to the park area
- b. Reintroduction means the release of Native Animal Species for the purpose of establishing a viable population.
- c. Established means able to maintain a viable population in a given location.
- d. Expert means one whose special knowledge or skill causes him to be an authority recognized by the Director.

3. Dans plusieurs parcs on a créé des précédents en réintroduisant des espèces fauniques. Au parc national de Banff, en 1917, on a relâché des wapitis et dans plusieurs parcs de l'Ouest on a installé des bisons. A une époque encore récente, on a relâché des caribous des bois dans le parc national du Cap-Breton, avec l'espoir de reconstituer des troupeaux de caribous dans cette région.

4. Comme l'introduction et la réintroduction du poisson dans les parcs nationaux font déjà l'objet de la section 5.7 - Conservation du poisson, le terme "animal" exclut le poisson pour l'interprétation de la présente section.

#### 5.21.3 DEFINITIONS

1. Dans la présente section:

- a. L'expression Espèces animales indigènes signifie des espèces qui vivaient autrefois à l'état naturel dans la région du parc.
- b. Réintroduction signifie la mise en liberté d'animaux d'espèces indigènes en vue d'établir une population viable.
- c. Le terme établi signifie: capable de maintenir une population viable dans un emplacement déterminé.
- d. Spécialiste désigne une personne que ses connaissances ou compétences particulières placent au rang d'une autorité aux yeux du Directeur.

5.21.4 POLICY

Native animal species once present but now absent are to be reintroduced into a National Park.

5.21.5 GUIDELINES

1. A historical review of the species and sub-species concerned must be made by experts and satisfactory proof must be documented that the species and sub-species were indeed indigenous to the National Park concerned.

2. The availability of the exact sub-species must be determined by experts and documented. In the event that the exact sub-species is not available, the closest alternatives to the sub-species should be documented.

3. The availability of suitable and adequate year-round habitat must be established through detailed research and habitat evaluation. Details such as the carrying capacity of the habitat must be assessed.

4. The ecological consequences of the re-establishment of the species concerned, must be thoroughly investigated. The probability of detrimental effects to the flora and fauna already established in the parks, to the species being introduced, and to the human element must be anticipated. An expert opinion of the consequences must be clearly presented. Such factors as predator-prey relationships will be an important consideration and should be documented.

5.21.4 LIGNE DE CONDUITE

Réintroduire dans un parc national les espèces animales indigènes actuellement absentes de leur ancien habitat naturel.

5.21.5 PRINCIPES GENERAUX

1. On demandera à des spécialistes de faire une étude historique des espèces et sous-espèces animales en cause et d'établir d'une manière convaincante que les espèces et les sous-espèces mentionnées étaient réellement indigènes dans ce parc national.

2. Le spécialiste doit déterminer, avec précision et preuves à l'appui, que les sous-espèces véritables sont réellement disponibles. Si tel n'est pas le cas, on doit rechercher la sous-espèce la plus rapprochée, avec preuves à l'appui, afin de la relâcher dans le parc.

3. On doit prouver, par une étude fouillée et une appréciation de l'habitat, qu'il existe, à longueur d'année, un habitat convenable et suffisant. On portera un jugement motivé sur des points importants, notamment les possibilités de l'habitat quant à la subsistance.

4. On doit envisager à fond toutes les conséquences écologiques de la réapparition des espèces en cause. On doit prévoir la possibilité d'effets pernicioeux, tant sur la flore et la faune déjà en place que sur les espèces introduites et l'élément humain. On exigera l'avis catégorique d'un spécialiste sur les conséquences possibles de ce geste. On se renseignera sérieusement sur le facteur

5. The prerequisites referred to in guidelines 1, 2, 3 and 4 must be properly documented as part of the submission to the Director for his approval.

6. Animals to be introduced are to receive a thorough inspection for disease and parasites by a qualified veterinarian. Only animals certified as healthy and free from disease and parasites which may endanger other animal species in a park are to be released into a park.

important des relations entre prédateurs et proies.

5. Les conditions exigibles dont il est fait état aux principes généraux 1, 2, 3 et 4 devront être solidement documentées et intégrées dans la demande présentée au Directeur en vue d'obtenir son consentement.

6. Avant leur introduction dans le parc, les animaux seront examinés minutieusement par un vétérinaire du double point de vue de la maladie et des parasites. On n'acceptera que les sujets sains et libres de toute maladie ou parasites pouvant nuire aux animaux déjà installés dans le parc.



